

# User Guide

# FOMA<sup>®</sup>

# SO902i wp+

Easy Search/Contents/  
Safety Precautions

Before Using the  
FOMA Terminal

Placing/  
Receiving Calls

Placing/Receiving  
Videophone Calls

PushTalk

Phonebook

Sound/Display/  
Light Settings

Security Settings

Camera

i-mode/  
i-motion

Mail

i-appli

i-Channel

Osaifu-Keitai/  
ToruCa

Displaying/Editing/  
Managing Data

Other Useful Functions

Network Services

Data Communication

Entering Text

Appendix/External Device Interface/  
Troubleshooting

**Index/  
Quick Manual**

# NTT DoCoMo W-CDMA System Mobile Phone

Thank you for your purchase of the new "FOMA SO902iWP +" mobile phone. For proper and effective use of the FOMA SO902iWP + , read the User Guide (this manual) carefully before and while you use the FOMA SO902iWP + .

## Before using the FOMA terminal

Because a FOMA terminal operates using radio frequencies, it cannot be used inside a tunnel, underground, in a building or other locations where radio waves do not reach the FOMA terminal, in locations with weak radio wave condition, or outside of the FOMA's service area. The FOMA services may not be available on high upper floors of high-rise apartments or buildings, even if you can see no obstructions around you. On occasion, your calls may become disconnected even in areas with strong radio wave condition, even if you are not moving, or even if there are 3-antenna marks in the FOMA terminal's display.

Please use discretion and mind your manners when using the FOMA terminal in public areas or crowded/quiet places to keep from bothering others.

Note that because the FOMA terminal operates on radio frequencies, your calls are at risk of being intercepted by the third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically scrambles all calls through a private call feature. Therefore, even if the third party successfully intercepts your call, they will only hear noise.

The FOMA terminal operates on radio frequencies by converting voice into digital signals. If the caller moves into an area of adverse radio wave condition, the digital signal may not be restored accurately, and the voice received in the call may differ slightly from the actual voice.

Always keep the information you save in the FOMA terminal in a separate note. Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the FOMA terminal.

The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifiers as listed herein make any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifiers shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.

Certifiers: VeriSign Japan K.K.  
Betruusted Japan Co., Ltd.  
GeoTrust Japan, Inc.

The FOMA terminal has FOMA Plus-Area support.

The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

## To the first-time users of the FOMA terminal

If you are the first-time user of the FOMA terminal, please read this manual in the order indicated below so that you can make preparations to use the FOMA terminal and learn the basic operations.

1. Attach the battery pack and start charging (P.37, 38).
2. Power on, perform initial settings, and confirm your phone number (P.43, 45).
3. Learn the functions of the FOMA terminal parts, such as the keys (P.28).
4. Learn the meaning of the information on the display, such as icons (P.30).
5. Learn how to operate the menus (P.33).
6. Learn how to place/receive a call (P.48, 58).

The latest information on this manual is ready for download at the NTT DoCoMo's website.

- "User's Manual Download"  
(<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>)  
The URL and contents of the website are subject to change without notice.

## Information on Using the Manual and How to Look up in the Manual

This manual guides you through the operating instructions with step-by-step screen examples for each operating procedure to ensure that you operate the FOMA terminal properly.

### How To Look up in the Manual

This manual employs several search methods so that it can provide the most appropriate way to find a page relating to your desired function or service flexibly according to your need or situation.

For details, see the next page.

#### Index (P.338)

Search by a function or service name known to you or a function name to be displayed on the FOMA terminal's display.

#### Easy Search (P.4)

Search a function that you want to know or you consider useful to know from a listing sorted by purpose or by a function name.

#### Headings on the cover (Cover page)

Search the description page of a desired function in the order of "Cover page" "Chapter opening page (the first page of a chapter)" "Description page". The opening page of each chapter contains detailed contents of the chapter.

#### Contents (P.6)

Search by purpose or a function name starting from chapters that are categorized by functions.

#### Features (P.8)

Search for characteristic functions of SO902IWP + , such as new and useful functions.

#### List of menus (P.296)

Search a desired function from the menu items of SO902IWP + .

#### Quick Manual (P.348)

The basic operations of the FOMA terminal are explained briefly. Cut and fold these pages into a booklet and take it with you for convenient reference.

### Before Reading This Manual

Please note that "FOMA SO902IWP + " is called the "FOMA terminal" in this manual.

This manual describes the functions that can be performed using the "Memory Stick Duo". To use these functions, you need the optional "Memory Stick Duo".

- About the "Memory Stick Duo" (P.251)

Reproduction or reprint of all or part of this manual without prior permission is forbidden.

The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.

### Default Settings

The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

A function, referred to as "Notify caller ID" here, can be searched in diverse ways as follows.

## Index (P.338)

Search by a function or service name known to you or a function name to be displayed on the FOMA terminal's display.



Save additional service (USSD) ...	284	2-touch dial .....	
Service numbers .....	283	Acpt/Rjct call .....	
Voice Mail Service .....	280	Call image .....	
Notification display .....	32	Chara-den .....	
<b>Notify caller ID .....</b>	<b>44</b>	Copy to UIM .....	
Nuisance Call Blocking Service ...	281	Delete .....	
		Des phone tone .....	
		Display style .....	
		Edit .....	
		Font size .....	
On hold		Group setting .....	
On hold during a call .....	61	Infrared communicat .....	
On hold while receiving a call ...	62	Memory status .....	
On hold while receiving a call ....	62		

P.44  
To the description page of the "Notify caller ID".

## Easy Search (P.4)

Search a function that you want to know or you consider useful to know from a listing sorted by purpose or by a function name.

**Useful Functions for a Call**

- Sending **your phone number** or keeping it anonymous ... P.44 (Notify caller ID)
- Talking **hands-free** on the mobile phone ..... P.48 (Hands-free)
- Adjusting the **volume of a caller's voice** ..... P.105 (Volume)
- Allowing the recipient to hear your voice normally even if you speak **in a low voice** ..... P.61 (Whisper mode)
- Putting a current call **on hold** ..... P.61 (Holding)
- Switching to videophone** during a call ..... P.50 (Chg. to videophone)

P.44  
To the description page of the "Notify caller ID".

Purpose  
Function name

## Headings on the cover (Cover page)

Search the description page of a desired function in the order of "Cover page" "Chapter opening page (the first page of a chapter)" "Description page". The opening page of each chapter contains detailed contents of the chapter.

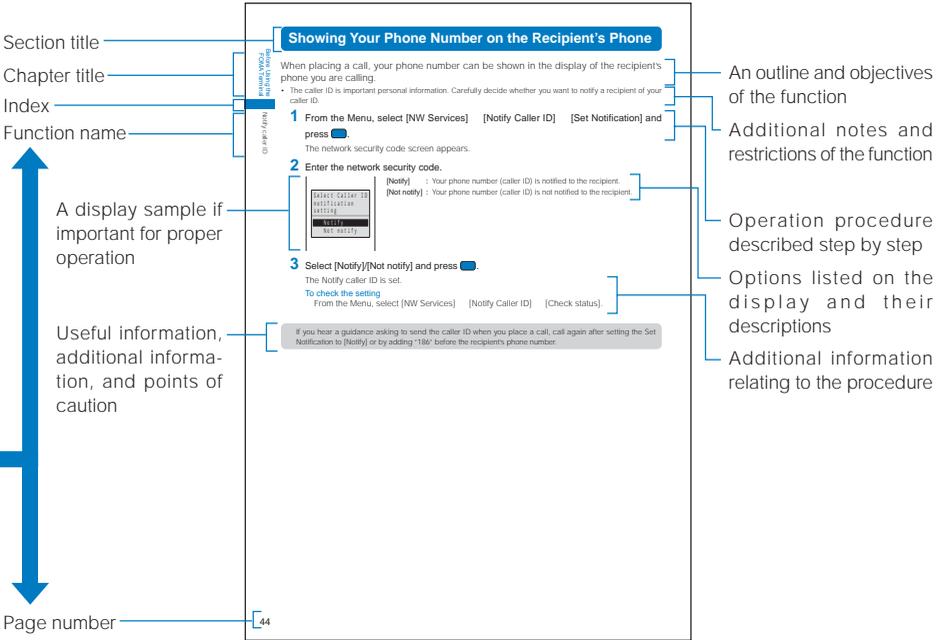
- Easy Search/Contents/Safety Precautions
- Before Using the FOMA Terminal**
- Placing/Receiving Calls
- Placing/Receiving Videophone Calls
- PushTalk
- Phonebook

**Before Using the FOMA Terminal**

Part Names and Functions .....	28
Using the Display .....	30
Selecting the Menu .....	33
Using the UIM .....	35
Attaching and Removing the Battery Pack .....	37
Charging the FOMA Terminal .....	39
Checking the Battery Level .....	41
Attaching and Removing the Active Holder .....	42
Powering On/Off .....	43
Setting the Basic Functions .....	43
Setting the Date and Time .....	44
Showing Your Phone Number on the Recipient's Phone .....	44
Checking Your Own Phone Number .....	45

P.44  
To the description page of the "Notify caller ID".

## Typical layout of the operating instructions page

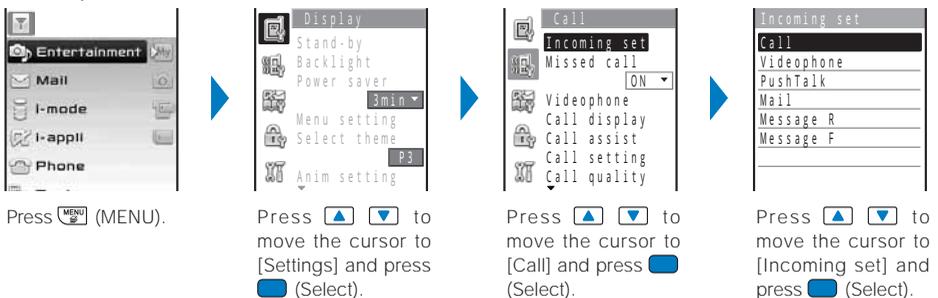


Please note the above page is only for explanation purpose and is partly different from the actual page.

### About the menu operation

Throughout this manual the operations for selecting from the menu are described as follows.

#### Actual operations



#### Typical description of the operations

From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Incoming set] and press [Select].

Display examples and illustrations used in this manual are just images for explanations and may be different from actual ones.

Display examples assume that [P3:Universal] is set for the Select theme (P.112).

Some parts of the keys are deformed or omitted in the illustration in this manual.

The shorter form "Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli" is used for "Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software supporting IC card functions" in this manual.

## Easy Search

You can search a function that you want to know or you consider useful to know from a listing sorted by purpose or by a function name.



### Useful Functions for a Call

- Sending **your phone number** or keeping it anonymous ... P.44 (Notify caller ID)
- Talking **hands-free** on the mobile phone ..... P.48 (Hands-free)
- Adjusting the **volume of a caller's voice** ..... P.105 (Volume)
- Allowing the recipient to hear your voice normally even if you speak **in a low voice** ..... P.61 (Whisper mode)
- Putting a current call **on hold** ..... P.61 (Holding)
- Switching to videophone** during a call ..... P.50 (Chg. to videophone)



### When Being Unable to Answer a Call

- Recording** a message ..... P.65 (Record message/Videophone message)
- Recording a message using the **Voice Mail Service** .... P.280 (Voice Mail Service)
- Putting an incoming call **on hold** ..... P.62 (On hold)



### How to Customize the Melody and Indicator

- Muting the **keypad sound** ..... P.104 (Keypad sound)
- Changing a **ring tone** ..... P.102 (Ring tone)
- Using a **ring tone/indicator color** specific to individual callers ... P.93 (Des phone/mail tone/Select phone/mail illum.)
- Adjusting the **volume of the ring tone** ..... P.102 (Ring volume)
- Muting the **sound effect when canceling the Lock key** ... P.104 (Keyguard rel)
- Setting the **Manner mode** ..... P.107 (Manner mode)
- Setting the **vibrator** to notify incoming calls and mail ..... P.103 (Vibrator)
- Changing the **color of the indicator** ..... P.103 (Color)



### How to Customize the Display

- Changing the **stand-by display** ..... P.109 (Stand-by display)
- Setting the **clock** to the proper time ..... P.44 (Date/time)
- Changing the **font size** ..... P.114 (Font size)
- Learning what the **icons** in the display represent ..... P.30 (Use display)



## Useful Functions for Mail

Sending <b>Deco-mail</b> .....	P.195 (Compose and send Deco-mail)
Sending an <b>image</b> .....	P.199 (File attachment)
Broadcasting mail ( <b>up to five persons at a time</b> ) .....	P.217 (Mail list)
<b>Sorting</b> received mail <b>automatically</b> .....	P.214 (Sort inbox)
Adding a <b>signature</b> to mail messages .....	P.215 (Edit sign/Signature)



## Useful Functions for the Camera

Changing the <b>recording size</b> .....	P.142 (Select size)
Changing the <b>shutter sound</b> .....	P.147 (Shutter sound)
Turning on the <b>photo light</b> .....	P.141 (Photo light)
Saving an image directly to the <b>“Memory Stick Duo”</b> ...	P.148 (Select save to)
<b>Displaying</b> a recorded <b>image</b> .....	P.140 (Display images)



## For Secure Operations of the FOMA Terminal

Displaying saved <b>secret</b> contents .....	P.126 (Secret display)
<b>Rejecting</b> a call if no caller's phone number is presented ...	P.128 (Denied no ID)
<b>Rejecting</b> a call from a caller who is not saved in the Phonebook ...	P.129 (Reject unknown)
<b>Locking the key operation</b> of the missing FOMA terminal ...	P.121 (Remote lock)
Locking the keys to prevent an <b>accidental use</b> .....	P.125 (Lock key)



## Other Useful Functions

Using <b>quick access</b> to the often used functions .....	P.272 (My Selection)
<b>Improving the life</b> of the battery .....	P.112 (Power saver)
Using the FOMA terminal as a <b>calculator</b> .....	P.274 (Calculator)
Reading the <b>QR and bar codes</b> .....	P.149 (Bar code reader)
Exchanging information using <b>infrared communications</b> ....	P.260 (Infrared communications)
Using the FOMA terminal as an <b>alarm clock</b> .....	P.268 (Alarm)
Using the <b>“Memory Stick Duo”</b> .....	P.251 (“Memory Stick Duo”)
Upgrading to the latest <b>software</b> .....	P.329 (Software update)
Updating <b>security</b> to the latest safeguards .....	P.333 (Scan function)

- For information on how to search the other operations than described above, see “Information on Using the Manual and How to Look up in the Manual” (P.1).
- The Quick Manual is included for convenient reference, in which operating instructions on the most commonly used functions are summarized (P.348).

# Contents

Before using the FOMA terminal  
To the first-time users of the FOMA terminal  
Information on Using the Manual and How to Look up in the Manual ..... 1  
Easy Search ..... 4  
Features of the FOMA SO902iWP + ..... 8  
Making Full Use of SO902iWP + ! ..... 10  
Safety Precautions (Observe Strictly) ..... 12  
Handling Precautions ..... 20  
Waterproof Feature ..... 22  
Intellectual Property Right ..... 26  
Supplied and Optional Accessories ..... 28

## Before Using the FOMA Terminal 27

Part names and functions, Use display, Select menu, UIM, Attach and remove battery pack, Charge the FOMA terminal, Battery level, Active Holder, Power on/off, Initial setting, Date/time, Notify caller ID, Own number

## Placing/Receiving Calls 47

Place call, Chg. to videophone, Redial record, 186/184, Call conditions, Prefix setting, WORLD CALL, Sub-address, Reconnect alarm, Reduce noise, Hands-free mode, Receive call, Any key answer, Received record, Whisper mode, Holding, On hold, Public mode, Record message/Videophone message, and so on...

## Placing/Receiving Videophone Calls 69

Place videophone call, Receive videophone call, Call Chara-den, Videophone setting, and so on...

## PushTalk 79

What is PushTalk?, Originate PushTalk call, Receive PushTalk call, Add to PushTalk phonebook, Originate from the PushTalk phonebook, Delete a PushTalk phonebook entry, PushTalk setting, and so on...

## Phonebook 89

About phonebooks, Add to FOMA terminal phonebook, Add to UIM phonebook, Save record, Group setting, Display phonebook, Search phonebook, Phonebook setting, Edit phonebook, Delete phonebook, Memory status, 2-touch dial

## Sound/Display/Light Settings 101

Incoming set, Set basic tone, Volume, Sound effect, Quality alarm, Earphone, Manner mode, Manner mode setting, Stand-by display, Animation setting, Call display, Backlight, Power saver, Select theme, Menu setting, Missed call, Font size, Language

## Security Settings 115

About security codes, Change code, UIM setting, Cancel the PIN lock, Lock all, Self mode, PIM lock, Key dial lock, Lock key, Record display, Secret display, Accept/Reject call, Denied no ID, Set ring start time, Reject unknown, and so on...

## Camera 131

Record still images, Record movies, Display images, Change the camera settings, Adjust the camera, Set the camera operation, Bar code reader, and so on...

**i-mode/i-motion****151**

What is i-mode?, Display sites, Change i-mode password, Internet connection, Bookmark, Screen Memo, Save image, Download, i-mode setting, MessageR/MessageF, SSL certificate, User certificate, What is i-motion?, Download i-motion, and so on...

**Mail****185**

What is i-mode mail?, Compose and send mail, Compose and send Deco-mail, File attachment, Save mail, Check new messages, Play/save attached file, Mail setting, Compose and send SMS, and so on...

**i-αpli****223**

What is i-αpli?, Download, Run i-αpli, Auto start, i-αpli stand-by, Manage i-αpli, and so on...

**i-Channel****233**

What is i-Channel?, Display i-Channel

**Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa****237**

What is Osaifu-Keitai?, Start an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αpli, What is ToruCa?, Obtain a ToruCa card, Display ToruCa(detail), ToruCa receive, Manage ToruCa cards, IC card lock

**Displaying/Editing/Managing Data****243**

My picture, Edit photo, i-motion, Edit movie, Chara-den, Melody, "Memory Stick Duo", UIM, Data box, Infrared communications, My document, and so on...

**Other Useful Functions****265**

Multiaccess, Multitask, Alarm, Schedule, My Selection, Voice memo, Call duration/cost, Cost limit notice, Calculator, Text memo, Application, EV-Link, Switched earphone mic, Auto answer, Reset, Delete all data, and so on...

**Network Services****279**

Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, Call Forwarding Service, Nuisance Call Blocking Service, Caller ID Display Request Service, Dual Network Service, English Guidance Service, Service Numbers, In-call Arrival Act, Remote Control, Multi Number Service, and so on...

**Data Communication****285**

About data communications, Preparations and flow of data communications, AT commands

**Entering Text****289**

Enter text, Enter common phrases, Pictographs/symbols, Edit common phrases, Quote data, Cut/Copy/Paste, Input kuten, Save prediction/user, Reset data, Download dictionary, and so on...

**Appendix/External Device Interface/Troubleshooting****295**

List of menus, Characters assigned to keys, Play music, Troubleshooting, Software update, Scan function, and so on...

**Index/Quick Manual****337**

Index, Quick Manual

## Features of the FOMA SO902iWP +

"FOMA" is the name of NTT DoCoMo's mobile service based on the W-CDMA (Wideband Code Division Multiple Access) system, which has been approved as a global standard of third generation (3G) wireless communications systems (IMT-2000 or International Mobile Telecommunications-2000).

### It's amazing because it's i-mode

i-mode is an online service that enables you to take advantage of valuable information from i-mode Menu sites (Program) and i-mode compatible sites on an i-mode terminal display. This service also enables you to exchange e-mail with great ease.

#### Deco-mail (decorative e-mail)

You can send e-mail created with richer expression by changing the font color and size and e-mail text background color. You can also insert a picture taken using the built-in camera. Deco-mail uses templates, which enables you to create your own easily by saving Deco-mail sent from other Deco-mail compatible FOMA terminals or Deco-mail formats downloaded from a related site (P.11).

#### i-Channel

You can receive graphics-based information such as news and weather.

You can run the latest information updates on the stand-by display as Telop text by automatically getting this information on a regular basis. You can also display a list of channels by pressing . Furthermore, you can access rich detailed information authored using Flash (P.162) by selecting a channel you want from the channel list. Even if you have not signed up for i-Channel, you can use the trial service free of charge for a specific period (P.234).

i-Channel is a paid service that requires a subscription.

#### Osaifu-Keitai i-mode FeliCa Compatible

Once you download the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-appli, you can use the FOMA terminal to deposit e-money to an IC card (installed in the terminal) from the relevant site or check your remaining balance or purchase history. You can also use the FOMA terminal as an airplane ticket or point card, which makes the Osaifu-Keitai an increasingly useful tool in real life (P.238).

#### Large-capacity i-appli/i-appli DX

You can play games with richer graphics and automatically update information about market shares and weather by downloading i-appli from i-appli compatible sites.

With i-appli, you can also experience high realism produced by the synergistic effect of 3-dimensional graphics (3D) and sound of 3Dx3D compatible contents in games such as car racing.

i-appli DX can be used to extend i-appli functions by using it in combination with information stored in an i-mode terminal, such as Phonebook and e-mail (P.224).

You can experience 3D sound only when you plug in a Flat-plug stereo earphone set.

#### ToruCa

ToruCa is an e-card that can be obtained by Osaifu-Keitai. ToruCa can be used conveniently as a flier, restaurant card, or coupon.

You can obtain ToruCa cards from a reader or site and exchange it with others easily using e-mail, infrared communications, or the "Memory Stick Duo" (P.240).

### Comprehensive Line-up of Network Services

- Voice Mail Service (Paid) (P.280)
- Call Forwarding Service (Free) (P.281)
- Caller ID Display Request Service (Free) (P.282)
- English Guidance Service (Free) (P.282)
- Call Waiting Service (Paid) (P.281)
- Nuisance Call Blocking Service (Free) (P.281)
- Dual Network Service (Paid) (P.282)
- Multi Number Service (Paid) (P.283)

\*To use the "Memory Stick Duo", you need to obtain it separately (P.251).

## Videophone

You can talk face-to-face with a person you are calling. You can switch to the Out-camera so that you can show the scenery around you to the person you are talking with, or use the Chara-den to display a cartoon character instead of your own image. You can switch to videophone without disconnecting a normal call while you are talking on the FOMA terminal. Since the initial setting enables you to hear the recipient's/caller's voice from the speaker, you can start a conversation right away (P.70).

## PushTalk

You can communicate among several persons (up to five persons including yourself) by simply selecting recipients from the Phonebook and pressing **(P)**. You can use this function effectively to exchange information within a group or make short calls to pass on required information (P.80).

## PDF-compatible Viewer

You can view PDF data on the FOMA terminal. In other words, you can easily use the i-mode terminal to check helpful information such as maps, catalogs, or timetable that you might otherwise carry in paper form (P.263).

## Waterproof Feature

The FOMA terminal features a waterproof performance compliant with IPX7 (equivalent to JIS waterproof specification grade 7), provided that the rear cover is attached and locked properly. You can talk or exchange mail on the FOMA terminal even in the rain and wash it lightly in tap water when it looks soiled (P.22).

## Active Holder

On business scene, the FOMA terminal plays an active role as a sophisticated designed FOMA terminal, and on weekends and holidays, placed in the supplied dedicated holder, enables you to enjoy an active life that can be obtained only with a water-proofed mobile phone (P.53).

## FeliCa Sign

When you use the FOMA terminal as an Osaifu-Keitai, the FeliCa Sign gives you clear signals on the communication status with the reader using light and vibration. When the FOMA terminal comes within the communication range with the reader, the FeliCa Sign lights, and once the communication starts, it changes to flashing, accompanied by a brief vibration of the FOMA terminal (P.288).

## Smart Layer Menu

You can easily display the menus and switch functions during multitasking by pressing **(MENU)**. The FOMA terminal uses the Floating Design that allows a menu to appear over the currently executed function (P.11).

## Lock Key

You can set the Lock key while running various functions to prevent an accidental use without quitting them (P.125).

## Multiaccess

You can use voice call and packet communications simultaneously. You can receive i-mode mail even when you are in a call and you can also make a call while you are using i-mode (P.266).

## Ring Tones

The FOMA terminal supports ring tones (ADPCM sound source) such as PCM sound source 128 chord, voice, and sound effects (P.102).

## Camera Function

You can record still images and movies using two cameras, Out- and In-camera. This FOMA terminal has a wide range of installed camera functions including the scene selection, Macro mode, and a maximum 8:1 zoom (P.132).

- Out-camera : Effective number of pixels -- About 1,300,000 (Maximum number of recording pixels -- About 1,200,000)
- In-camera : Effective number of pixels -- About 110,000 (Maximum number of recording pixels -- About 100,000)

## “Memory Stick Duo”

You can copy data including the FOMA terminal phonebook, e-mail, and images to the “Memory Stick Duo”. You can also display data saved in the “Memory Stick Duo” on the FOMA terminal (P.251).

## “POBox” and Convenient Text Input

The FOMA terminal is provided with the prediction conversion function “POBox” (Predictive Operation Based On eXample). Pressing **(V)** for over a second allows you to scroll through the “POBox” line-by-line, thus enabling the speedy selection of the target word. The FOMA terminal also allows you to continuously switch the Japanese alphabet letters assigned to keys on the keypad, in a manner like “あいうえおあ...”, by pressing down keys for over a second (P.290).

## Making Full Use of SO902iWP + !

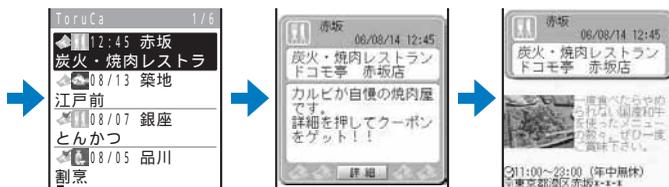
### PushTalk

You can communicate among several persons (up to five persons including yourself) with a simple operation of pressing **(P)** for over a second to invoke the PushTalk phonebook, selecting recipients, and pressing **(P)** (P.80).



### ToruCa

You can obtain ToruCa cards from a reader or site and exchange it with others easily using e-mail, infrared communications, or the "Memory Stick Duo". Obtained ToruCa cards are saved in [Tools] [ToruCa] (P.240).



Hold up the Osaifu-Keitai to a reader to obtain a ToruCa card.

When the FOMA terminal comes within the communication range with the reader, the FeliCa Sign lights, and once the communication starts, it changes to flashing, accompanied by a brief vibration of the FOMA terminal.

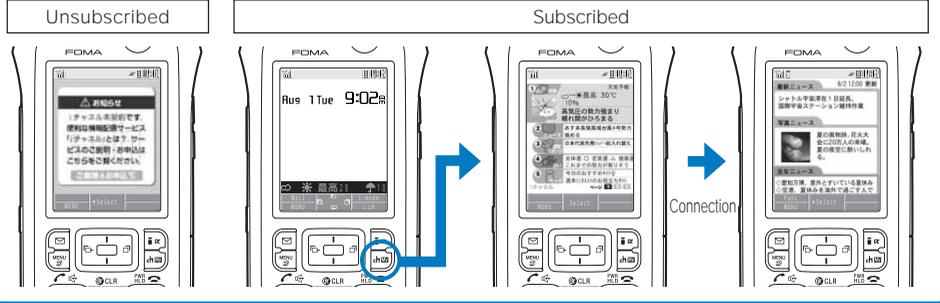
Select the ToruCa card you want from the ToruCa list. You can view more information by selecting **[詳細]** (Detail).

### Lock Key

You can lock the keys while running various functions, such as displaying i-mode map information, composing mail, and running i-appli without quitting them. This feature prevents keys from being accidentally pressed while you carry the FOMA terminal in your bag (P.125).

## i-Channel

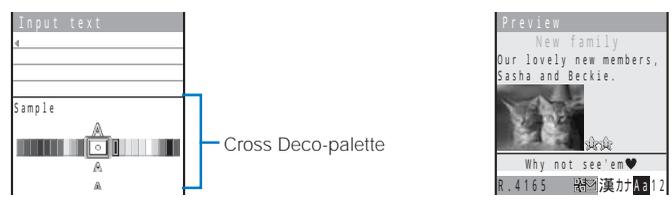
You can automatically receive a variety of information on a regular basis. You can also display a list of available channels by pressing **ch**. i-Channel provides you with information that is rich and detailed (P.234).



## Deco-mail

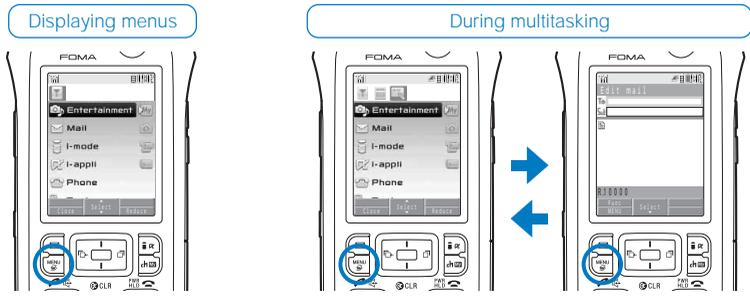
You can compose entertaining Deco-mail with ease using the Cross Deco-palette (P.195).

Example of a Deco-mail picture



## Smart Layer Menu

You can display the menus and switch functions during multitasking with ease by simply pressing **MENU**. The Floating Design is employed, which allows the menu to appear in a way that it comes up over the display of the current function (P.33, 267).



# Safety Precautions (Observe Strictly)

For safe and proper use of the FOMA terminal, please read the “Safety Precautions” prior to use. Keep the Manual in a safe place for future reference.

ALWAYS observe the safety precautions since they intend to prevent personal injury or property damage.

The following symbols indicate the different levels of injury or damage that may result if the guidelines are not observed and the FOMA terminal is used improperly.

 <b>DANGER</b>	Failure to observe these guidelines may immediately result in death or serious injury.
 <b>WARNING</b>	Failure to observe these guidelines may result in death or serious injury.
 <b>CAUTION</b>	Failure to observe these guidelines may result in injury and property damage.

The following symbols indicate specific directions.

 Don't	Indicates prohibited actions.
 No Disassembly	Indicates not to disassemble.
 No liquids	Indicates not to use where it could get wet.
 No wet hands	Indicates not to handle with wet hands.

 Do	Indicates compulsory actions in accordance with instructions.
 Unplug	Indicates to remove the power plug from the outlet.

“Safety Precautions” are described in the following categories:

Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the charger), and UIM .....	13
Handling the FOMA Terminal .....	14
Handling the Battery Pack .....	16
Handling the Adapter (including the charger) .....	17
Handling the UIM .....	19
Handling the FOMA Terminal Near Electronic Medical Equipment .....	19

## Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the charger), and UIM

### DANGER



Don't

Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter, or UIM in a place subject to high temperature such as close to fire or heater, under direct sunlight, or in a car on an extremely hot day.

Doing so may cause the device to be deformed or damaged, or the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, catch fire, or deteriorate in performance and longevity. Also, part of the case may heat up and cause burns.



No liquids

Do not get the FOMA terminal, battery pack, or adapter wet.

If liquids such as water or pet urine get into the device, it may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, or injury. Be careful where and how you use the device.



Do

Use the battery packs and adapters (including chargers) specified for the FOMA terminal by DoCoMo.

The use of products that are not specified may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack, or other device to leak, overheat, explode, catch fire, or malfunction.

Battery Pack S001, Desktop Holder S003, FOMA AC Adapter 01, FOMA DC Adapter 01, FOMA AC Adapter 01 for both domestic and overseas use, FOMA Battery-Powered Charger 01

Contact our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.) for information on other compatible products.



No Disassembly

Do not disassemble or modify the FOMA terminal, battery pack, or adapter and do not directly solder the battery pack to the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause accident such as fire, injury or electric shock, or malfunction. Also, it may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, or catch fire.

### WARNING



Don't

Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (including the charger), or UIM inside cooking appliance such as a microwave oven or high-pressure containers.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, or catch fire, or the FOMA terminal, adapter (including the charger), and UIM to overheat, smoke, catch fire, or damage the circuit parts.



Do

Power off the mobile phone before you step into a place where flammable gas can leak, such as gas stations.

Do not charge the battery as well because it may cause gas to ignite.

Keep the mobile phone powered off even when you use the Osaifu-Keitai in gas station premises or other similar place.

(When the IC card lock is set, cancel the lock and then power off the mobile phone.)



Don't

Do not subject the FOMA terminal, battery pack, or adapter to excessive force or throw it.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, or cause the device to malfunction or catch fire.



Do

If you notice anything unusual about the FOMA terminal, battery pack, or adapter such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during operation, charging or storage, immediately perform the following measures.

1. Remove the power plug from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Power off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Failure to do so may cause the device to overheat, explode or catch fire, or the battery pack to leak.



Don't

Do not allow the charge and external connection terminals to come in contact with conducting foreign substances (a piece of metal, pencil lead, etc.). Never allow these objects to get into the FOMA terminal, battery pack, or adapter.

Doing so may cause fire or malfunction due to short circuits.

## CAUTION



Don't

Do not place on an unstable or inclined platform.

Doing so may cause the device to fall and cause injury or malfunction.



Don't

Do not keep in a place that is very humid, dusty, or subject to high temperature.

Doing so may cause malfunction.



Do

If children use the FOMA terminal, parents or guardians should give them the proper instructions for use. Make sure that they use the FOMA terminal as instructed.

Failure to do so may cause injury.



Do

Keep the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter, and UIM out of the reach of babies and infants.

Failure to do so may cause accidental swallowing or injury.



Do

If you repeatedly or continuously charge, record/play back movies, place a videophone call, or use i-mode or i-appli for a long period of time, the temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack, and adapter (including the charger) may rise.

If you are directly in contact with hot parts for a long period of time, it may cause your skin to become red, itch, or develop a rash depending on your physical condition. Be careful especially when you use the FOMA terminal while it has been continuously connected to the adapter (including the charger) for a long period of time.

## Handling the FOMA Terminal

## WARNING



Don't

Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving a vehicle.

Mobile phone usage during driving is subject to punishment by law as of November 1st, 2004. Use the FOMA terminal after stopping the vehicle to park in a safe place even if you are using a hands-free kit. While driving a vehicle, use the Public mode or the Voice Mail Service.



Don't

Do not aim the infrared data port towards eyes when using the infrared communications.

Doing so may affect your eyes. Also, aiming it towards other infrared devices may interfere with the operation of these devices.



Don't

Do not turn up the headphone volume to a level where you cannot hear the sounds around you while you are walking. Also, look out for the surrounding traffic and road surface conditions.

Doing so may cause accident.



Don't

Do not turn on the photo light with the lighting part close to the eyes.

Doing so may cause vision impairment or accident by dazzling eyes or surprising.



Don't

Do not leave the FOMA terminal in a place such as the dashboard near the automobile air bag, which can have an adverse effect on the phone when it inflates.

Doing so may cause accidents such as an injury, malfunction, or breakage, in case the air bag inflates.



Don't

Do not put the FOMA terminal in your breast pocket or inside pocket if you are wearing any electronic medical equipment.

If the FOMA terminal is used close to electronic medical equipment, it may cause malfunction.

## WARNING



Do

**Power off the FOMA terminal in a place where the use is prohibited such as in airplane or hospital.**

The FOMA terminal may affect electronic equipment and electronic medical equipment. If you set the automatic power-on function, cancel it before powering off the FOMA terminal.

Follow the instructions of each medical facility for the use of mobile phones on their premises.

Prohibited acts such as mobile phone usage on board an airplane may be punished by law.



Do

**If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, power off immediately and take shelter in a safe place.**

Failure to do so may cause injury or electric shock from the lightning.



Do

**Always keep the FOMA terminal away from your ear when you talk using the hands-free function.**

Failure to do so may cause difficulty in hearing.



Do

**If you have a weak heart, set the vibrator or ring volume carefully.**

Failure to do so may affect your heart.



Do

**Power off the FOMA terminal near electronic devices or equipment operating on high precision control or weak signals.**

Failure to do so may interfere with the operation of electronic devices or equipment.

The following are some electronic devices or equipment that you should be careful of:

Hearing aids, implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter defibrillator, other electronic medical equipment, fire detector, automatic door, and other automatically controlled devices or equipment. If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter defibrillator, or other electronic medical equipment, check with the relevant medical electronic equipment manufacturer or vendor whether the operation can be affected by radio waves.

## CAUTION



Don't

**Do not swing the FOMA terminal around by holding the strap.**

The FOMA terminal may hit you or others or the strap gets cut away from the FOMA terminal. It may cause accident such as injury or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.



Don't

**Do not turn up the volume unnecessarily high when you use the headphones.**

If you use the headphones continuously for a long period of time with the sound turned up loud, it may cause hearing impairment, or your ears may be injured with the sudden emission of a loud sound.



Don't

**Do not place your ear too close to the speaker while the ring tone sounds or the melody is played back.**

Doing so may cause difficulty in hearing.



Don't

**Do not touch broken glasses if the display or the camera lens is broken.**

The display and the camera lens are designed not to be shattered when broken. But they may cause injury if you touch a cut surface mistakenly.

## CAUTION



Don't

Do not place a magnetic card, etc. near the FOMA terminal.

Magnetic data on bankcards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased. Also, confirm whether a metal object such as a pin is not attached to the speaker before using the FOMA terminal because it may cause injury.



Don't

Do not allow a foreign substance such as water and other liquids, metal parts, or flammables to get in the UIM insertion slot on the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause fire, electric shock, or malfunction.



Do

In rare cases, using the FOMA terminal may interfere with the operation of electronic devices in some types of vehicle.

If there is any interference, do not use the FOMA terminal when driving for safety reasons.



Do

The use of the FOMA terminal may cause itching, rashes, eczema or other symptoms depending on the user's physical condition. Immediately stop using and get medical treatment in such a case.

Metals are used as listed below:

Where it is used	Material	Surface finishing
Screw lock	Die casting zinc alloy	Metal chrome plating
Charge terminal pins	Brass	Rolled gold

## Handling the Battery Pack

Check the type of the battery by the label on the battery pack.

Display	Type of Battery
Li-ion	Lithium Ion Battery

## DANGER



Don't

Do not touch the battery pack terminal with a metal object such as a wire. Also, do not carry or keep the battery pack together with metal objects such as a necklace.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, or catch fire.



Don't

Do not throw the battery pack into fire.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, or catch fire.



Don't

Do not stick a nail into the battery pack, hit it with a hammer or step on it.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, or catch fire.



Don't

Do not forcibly attach the battery pack to the FOMA terminal. Also, make sure to attach the battery pack in the correct direction.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, or catch fire.



Do

If the battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub, rinse with clean running water, and get medical treatment immediately.

Failure to do so may cause blindness.

## WARNING



Do

Stop charging if the FOMA terminal is not charged within the specified charging time.

Failure to do so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, or catch fire.



Do

If the battery pack leaks or hears an unusual odor, immediately stop using and move it away from fire.

The leaking liquid may ignite fire, catch fire, or explode.



Do

If the battery fluid gets on your skin or clothes, immediately stop using the battery pack and rinse with clean running water.

Failure to do so may cause injury on your skin.

## CAUTION



Don't

Do not dispose of the battery pack together with other garbage.

The battery pack may become the source of fire or environmental destruction. Take the used battery pack to our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.) after insulating it by affixing an adhesive tape on the terminal of it or follow the instructions of the local authorities in charge of collecting used battery packs.

### Handling the Adapter (including the charger)

## WARNING



Don't

Do not use the adapter (including the charger) if the cord of the adapter or the power cord is damaged.

Doing so may cause electric shock, overheating, or fire.



Don't

Do not short-circuit the charge terminal of the charger while the power plug is connected to the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the charge terminal with your hands, fingers, or any part of your body.

Doing so may cause fire, malfunction, electric shock, or injury.



Don't

Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a very humid or steamy place such as bathroom.

Doing so may cause electric shock.



Don't

Place the charger or the desktop holder on a stable platform while charging. Do not cover or wrap the charger or the desktop holder with a cloth or bedding.

The FOMA terminal may fall off the charger or heat up and cause fire or malfunction.



Don't

The DC adapter is for use in vehicles with a negative ground. Do not use them in vehicles with a positive ground.

Doing so may cause fire.



Don't

Do not touch the FOMA terminal and adapter (including the charger) if you hear thunder.

Doing so may cause injury or electric shock from the lightning.



No wet hands

Do not touch the cord of the adapter (including the charger) or the power outlet with wet hands.

Doing so may cause electric shock.

## WARNING



Do

Use the adapter only on the specified power supply and voltage.

Failure to do so may cause fire or malfunction. Always use the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for both domestic and overseas use, especially when you use the phone overseas.

AC adapter: AC 100 V  
FOMA AC Adapter for both domestic and overseas use:

AC 100 to 240 V

(Be sure to connect the adapter to a household AC power outlet.)

DC adapter: DC 12 V/24 V  
(exclusively used for vehicles with a negative ground)



Do

Clean dust from the plug.

Failure to do so may cause fire.



Do

When you connect the AC adapter to the power outlet, make sure that it does not come in contact with a metal object such as a metal strap and insert it firmly.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock, short circuit, or fire.



Unplug

Remove the power plug from the power outlet when not used for a long period of time.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock, fire, or malfunction.



Do

If the fuse of the DC adapter is blown, replace it with the specified fuse.

The use of an incorrect fuse may cause fire or malfunction. See the user's manual supplied with the adapter for the specified fuse.



Unplug

If liquid such as water get into the adapter, immediately remove it from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock, smoking, or fire.

## CAUTION



Don't

Do not place any heavy objects on the cord of the adapter (including the charger) or the power cord.

Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.



Do

Hold the plug, not the cord of the adapter (including the charger) or the power cord, when you remove the adapter (including the charger) from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Pulling the cord may damage it and cause electric shock or fire.



Unplug

Before cleaning, remove the power plug from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock.

## Handling the UIM

### CAUTION



Please be careful when you remove the UIM (IC portion).

Failure to do so may damage your hand or fingers.

## Handling the FOMA Terminal Near Electronic Medical Equipment

The following instructions observe the guidelines of the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, Japan to protect electronic medical equipment from radio waves from mobile phones.

### WARNING



Please observe the following guidelines in medical facilities.

- Do not take the FOMA terminal into the operating rooms, ICU (Intensive Care Unit), or CCU (Coronary Care Unit).
- Power off the FOMA terminal inside hospital wards.
- Power off the FOMA terminal in the lobby and other places if there are any electronic medical equipment operating in the vicinity.
- Follow the instructions of each medical facility when they specify areas forbidding to use and carrying a mobile phone.
- If you set the automatic power-on function, cancel it before powering off the FOMA terminal.



Do

If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator, keep the FOMA terminal more than 22 cm away from the implant at all times.

The radio waves from the FOMA terminal may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator.



Do

If you need to use electronic medical equipment other than implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator at home or outside medical facilities, check with the relevant medical electronic equipment manufacturer or vendor whether the operation may be affected by radio waves.

The radio waves from the FOMA terminal may affect the operation of electronic medical equipment.



Do

Power off the FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains. There may be a person with an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator near you.

The radio waves from the FOMA terminal may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator.

# Handling Precautions

## Common Precautions

### Do not expose to water.

- The FOMA terminal has a waterproof performance compliant with IPX7 (equivalent to JIS waterproof specification grade 7), provided that the rear cover is attached to it and locked properly. However, the FOMA terminal is not totally waterproof, so in the rain or when water droplets are still on the FOMA terminal, do not attach/remove the battery pack or open/close the cover of the external connection terminal or earphone mic jack or the rear cover. Doing so may cause corrosion of the internal parts because of water leaks. The supplied accessories are not waterproof. Note that if a problem is diagnosed as exposure to water or other liquid due to an improper handling as listed above, repairs may not be covered by the Warranty or even may not be available.

### Clean the FOMA terminal with a dry soft cloth (eyeglass cloth, etc.).

- The color liquid crystal display of the FOMA terminal has a special coating on it for better visibility. Do not use unnecessary force to wipe the display when you are cleaning it with a dry cloth. The display and its coating may be damaged. Handle the display with care and use a dry soft cloth (eyeglass cloth, etc.) to clean it. If the display is left with water drops or stains, stains may become permanent or the display coating may be peeled off.
- Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene, cleaning detergent, etc. to clean the FOMA terminal. These chemicals may erase the printing on the FOMA terminal or cause discoloration.

### Clean the terminals occasionally with a dry cotton swab.

- Soiled terminals may cause poor connection and loss of power. If the terminals are dirty, use a dry cloth or cotton swab to wipe them clean.

### Do not leave the FOMA terminal near the air conditioning vent.

- Extreme temperature changes may produce condensation and corrode the internal parts of the FOMA terminal, causing it to malfunction.

### Do not leave the FOMA terminal in a place where it may be subject to excessive force.

- Do not put the FOMA terminal in a bag full of items or sit down with the FOMA terminal in your hip pocket. This may damage the LCD screen and internal circuit board and cause the FOMA terminal to malfunction. The Warranty will not apply in such a case.

Make sure to see the user's manuals supplied with the battery pack and adapter (including the charger).

## FOMA Terminal Precautions

Do not use the FOMA terminal in extremely hot or cold places.

Use the FOMA terminal within a temperature range of 0°C to 40°C and a humidity range of 45% to 90%.

When the FOMA terminal is suddenly taken from a cold outdoor environment into a warm room or when it is used in a high humidity place, water droplets may be formed inside the FOMA terminal (condensation). This may cause malfunction of the FOMA terminal. Please take care not to use the FOMA terminal under these conditions.

Using the FOMA terminal near ordinary phone, television or radio may cause interference in these electric appliances. Make sure to move far away from them when using the FOMA terminal.

Note down the information saved in the FOMA terminal in a separate note and keep it safely.

- Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the FOMA terminal.

Do not sit down with the FOMA terminal in the hip pocket of your trousers or skirt. Also, do not keep the FOMA terminal in a place where it may be subject to excessive force such as at the bottom of a bag.

- Failure to do so may cause malfunction to the FOMA terminal.

The FOMA terminal could become warm while in use and charging. This condition is not abnormal and you can continue using the FOMA terminal.

Do not leave the camera facing direct sunlight.

- If you do so, some of the phone parts may melt or become faded.

If you conduct any criminal behavior using the FOMA terminal that is a nuisance to the public, you may be subjected to punishment by authorities in accordance with related laws or ordinances (nuisance prevention act, etc.).

! Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

## Battery Pack Precautions

The battery pack is a consumable accessory.

- The operating time of the FOMA terminal varies depending on the operating conditions and other factor even if it is fully charged. When the length of time you can use the phone (operating time) on a charged battery becomes unusually short, it is time to replace the battery pack. Purchase the battery pack specified in this manual.

Charge the battery pack in an environment with the proper ambient temperature (5°C to 35°C).

Make sure to charge the battery pack before you use the FOMA terminal for the first time or when you have not been using it for a long period of time.

The operating time of the battery pack varies depending on the operating environment and the secular degradation of the battery pack.

Depending on the use condition, the battery pack may be inflated slightly as it comes to the end of its life. This is not a malfunction.

Store the battery pack in a well-ventilated and cool place where it is not exposed to direct sunlight.

- If you are not going to use the battery pack for a long period of time, remove it fully expended from the FOMA terminal and keep it in a container such as a plastic bag that wraps the battery pack.

## Adapter (including the charger) Precautions

Charge the battery pack in an environment with the proper ambient temperature (5°C to 35°C).

Do not charge in the following places.

- Places that are very humid, dusty or exposed to strong vibrations.
- Near ordinary phone, TV or radio.

The adapter (including the charger) could become warm while charging. This condition is not abnormal and you can continue charging the battery.

When you charge the battery pack using the DC adapter, keep the car engine running.

- Charging the battery with the engine turned off may drain your car battery.

When you use the power outlet with a mechanism to prevent the plug from being removed, follow the instructions on the outlet's user's manual.

Do not give a strong impact to the adapter. Also, do not bend or deform the charging pins or pin guide on the adapter.

- If you do so, the adapter may not work properly.

## UIM Precautions

Do not use unnecessary force to remove the UIM.

Do not use unnecessary force to insert the UIM into the FOMA terminal.

The UIM could become warm while it is in use. This condition is not abnormal and you can continue using the card.

Do not insert and use the UIM with another IC card reader/writer. Please note that you are wholly liable for any damage or malfunction as a result of such action.

Always keep the IC portion clean when you use the card.

Clean the UIM with a dry soft cloth (eyeglass cloth, etc.).

Note down the information saved in the UIM in a separate note and keep it safely.

- Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the UIM.

Take an expended UIM to our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.) for proper disposal in order to protect the environment.

Do not use the UIM in extremely high or low temperature.

Do not carelessly damage, contact, or short circuit an IC.

- Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.

Do not drop a UIM or subject it to impact.

- Doing so may cause malfunction.

Do not bend a UIM or place a heavy object on it.

- Doing so may cause malfunction.

## Waterproof Feature

The FOMA terminal features a waterproof performance compliant with IPX7 (equivalent to JIS waterproof specification grade 7), provided that the rear cover is attached and locked properly.

### IPX7 (equivalent to JIS waterproof specification grade 7)

Being IPX7 compliant means that the FOMA terminal should maintain functionality as a mobile phone after submersion in 1 m depth of static water for up to 30 minutes, provided that tap water of normal temperature is used.

The FOMA terminal is not designed for water pressure resistant usage. Do not use it in a place subject to high water pressure or do not submerge it in water for a long period of time.

### What specifically the FOMA terminal can do

**You can talk on the FOMA terminal in the rain without an umbrella (about 20 mm of rainfall per hour is assumed).**

In the rain or when your hands are wet or water droplets are still on the FOMA terminal, never attach/remove the rear cover or open/close the cover of the external connection terminal or earphone mic jack.

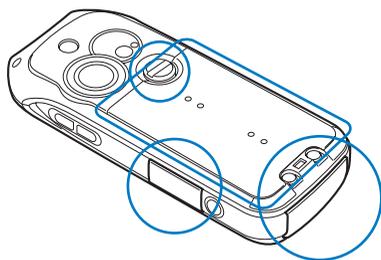
**You can wash the FOMA terminal with a gentle stream of tap water (6 little per min.) of 40°C or less while holding it away about 15 cm from a tap or shower head.**

If the FOMA terminal gets soiled, wash it with the rear cover locked by hands without using a brush while holding the covers of the external connection terminal and earphone mic jack to prevent them from opening.

**You can use it on the beach, at the side of a swimming pool, and in a bathroom.**

Never immerse the FOMA terminal in ocean water, swimming pool, hot spring water, and water that contains soap, detergent, or bath agent.

### Considerations before using the FOMA terminal



Make sure to close the covers of the external connection terminal and earphone mic jack and the rear cover tightly.

Check that each cover is closed completely to assure no gap between the cover and mating surface.

- Do not operate the FOMA terminal underwater.



Soap/detergent/  
bath agent



Ocean water



Swimming pool



Hot spring water



Sand/mud

To maintain the water proof performance, make sure to have parts replaced once every two years regardless of the existence of a malfunction. The replacement of parts is available at your expense under the condition that you leave the FOMA terminal with us. Take the FOMA terminal to our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.).

## Precautions

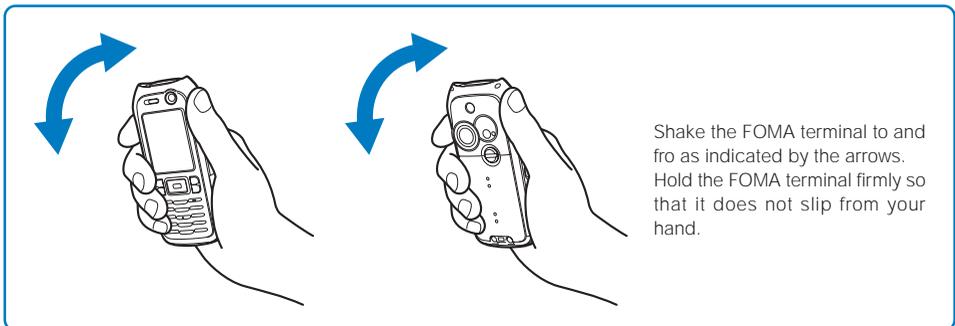
- Make sure to close the covers of the external connection terminal and earphone mic jack and the rear cover tightly. If any tiny foreign substance (such as a hair and a grain of sand) enters between the cover and mating surface, it may cause water leaks.
- If the FOMA terminal gets wet with any liquid, including water when the cover of the external connection terminal or earphone mic jack or the rear cover is open or the lock of the rear cover is released, it may cause liquid to leak into the inside, resulting in electric shock or malfunction. In this case, stop using the FOMA terminal, and contact the nearest repair handling service counter after powering off the FOMA terminal and removing the battery pack.
- The rubber packings of the external connection terminal cover, earphone mic jack cover, and rear cover play an important role in maintaining the water proof performance. Do not remove them and be careful not to damage them. Also, be careful that foreign particles do not adhere to the rubber packings.
- Do not leave the FOMA terminal with water droplets on it. In a cold place, water droplets may freeze and cause a malfunction.
- When ocean water, soap, detergent, sand, or mud gets on the FOMA terminal, wash it away by gently moving it to and fro in a basin or other container that is filled with tap water of 40° C or less. (Washing with water running directly from a tap or shower head may cause mud or sand to leak into the inside of the keypad, microphone, earpiece, or speaker, resulting in a malfunction.)
- Do not wash the FOMA terminal in a washing machine, etc.
- The supplied accessories are not waterproof.
- Do not wash the FOMA terminal with hot water, use it in a sauna, and dry it with hot air (with a dryer, etc.).
- When water or snow gets on the FOMA terminal, wipe it off with a dry cloth. Note that water left unwiped may leak out later and cause your clothes or the inside of your bag to get wet.
- Do not charge the battery when the FOMA terminal is wet.
- Do not pick the microphone, earpiece, or speaker, etc. with a pointed or sharp object.
- Do not leave the FOMA terminal wet with water because the battery contacts may be short circuited.
- The FOMA terminal does not float in water.

**The waterproof performance of the FOMA terminal is not guaranteed under all environments and conditions of actual use. If a problem is diagnosed as due to an improper handling, it may not be covered by the Warranty.**

### Draining water off the FOMA terminal when it gets wet

When the FOMA terminal gets wet, perform the following steps to drain water to prevent water left unwiped from leaking out later.

- 1 Wipe off any water on the surface of the FOMA terminal with a dry cloth, etc.
- 2 Hold the FOMA terminal firmly with your hand as illustrated below and shake it about 20 times until no water runs out. Repeat the same procedure for the other side.



- 3 Some water may persist inside the FOMA terminal even after being wiped off. Do not place an article that you want not to get wet near the FOMA terminal. Also note that remaining water may cause your clothes or the inside of your bag to get wet.

# Intellectual Property Right

## Copyright and Right of Portrait

Copyrighted contents you recorded or obtained from sites or Internet home pages using this product by downloading or other means, such as documents, images, music data, software, are prohibited from reproduction, transformation and transmission over public lines without consent of the copyright holders, unless intended for personal use or any other purpose permitted by law.

Note that some performances, shows, and exhibitions may not allow photography, movie shooting, or sound recording even for personal use.

You should also refrain from taking a picture of other people and disclosing it by such means as posting it on a site on the Internet without their consent because of possible infringement of their right of portrait.

## Trademarks

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-mode", "i-channel", "PushTalk", "PushTalkPlus", "ToruCa", "i-appli", "i-appli DX", "i-motion", "i-appli Search", "i-anime", "i-melody", "i-shot", "i-area", "Deco-mail", "Short Mail", "Pake-Houdai", "mopera U", "mopera", "DoPa", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "My DoCoMo", "Chaku-motion", "FirstPass", "Dual Network", "QUICKCAST", "Osai-fu-Keitai", "DCMX", "Public mode", "Security Scan", "sigmarion", "musea", "V-Live", "visualnet", "FOMA" logo, "i-mode" logo, "i-appli" logo, and "DCMX" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo.
- The Call Waiting Service is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- The service name and logo mark of Freedial are trademarks of NTT Communications.
- Java and Java-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of the U.S. Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of the U.S. Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries. Other system names and/or product names mentioned in this manual are generally trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners. The trademark symbol ™ and registered trademark symbol ® are omitted hereafter in this manual.
- "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- Mascot Capsule® is a trademark of the HI Corporation.
- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE Incorporated.
- Macromedia, Flash and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.
- McAfee® and VirusScan® are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.

All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners.

© 2004 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

- Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated. Adobe and Reader are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the U.S. and other countries.
- Gガイド®, G-GUIDE, Gガイド モバイル®, G-GUIDE MOBILE, and the Gガイド® related logos are registered trademarks of the U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and its affiliated companies in Japan.
- © VOOZ  
© BVIG  
PUCCA, GARU and MIO are trademarks of VOOZ Co., Ltd. All other marks and logos are trademarks or service marks of Buena Vista Internet Group (BVIG). All rights reserved.
- Powered by JBlend™, Copyright © 2002-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved. JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.



- ImageStar is a registered trademark of Ainix Corporation.
- This product incorporates NetFront of ACCESS CO., LTD to perform Internet functions. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD in Japan and other countries. Copyright © 1996-2006 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- QuickTime is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.
- “” is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- POBox is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- “MagicGate”, “MagicGate Memory Stick”, “Memory Stick”, “Memory Stick Duo”, “Memory Stick PRO Duo”, “”, “**MEMORY STICK DUO**”, and “**MAGICGATE**” are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sony Corporation.
- Other system names and/or product names mentioned in this manual are generally trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners. The trademark symbol ™ and registered trademark symbol ® are omitted hereafter in this manual.

## Others

- Powered by Mascot Capsule®
- IrDA Protocol Stack “DeepCore™” © ITX E-Globaledge Corp. All rights reserved.
- This product incorporates Macromedia® Flash® player technology by Macromedia, Inc. Copyright © 1995-2006 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.
- This product incorporates Adobe Reader of Adobe Systems Inc. Copyright © 2006 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Patents pending.
- Part of this product also incorporates a program module developed by Independent JPEG Group.
- This product is under the licensing agreement of the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and is approved for private and non-profit uses, such as those indicated below.
  - For recording MPEG-4 Visual standards-compliant movie (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Movie).
  - For playing back MPEG-4 Movie recorded by a consumer who uses the product for private and non-profit activities.
  - For playing back MPEG-4 Movie recorded by a provider who owns an MPEG-4 license.To use this product for other applications, such as promotional activities, company use, or profit-making endeavor, contact U.S. MPEG LA, LLC.
- This product includes software licensed from Symbian Software Ltd. Symbian, Symbian OS, and all Symbian-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Symbian Software Ltd. © 1998-2006 Symbian Software Ltd. All rights reserved.



## Windows Title Conventions

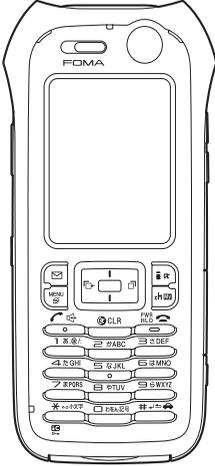
- Windows® 98 is an abbreviation of the Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.
- Windows® 98SE is an abbreviation of the Microsoft® Windows® 98 Second Edition operating system.
- Windows® Me is an abbreviation of the Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.
- Windows® 2000 Professional is an abbreviation of the Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows® XP is an abbreviation of the Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.

# Supplied and Optional Accessories

## Supplied accessories

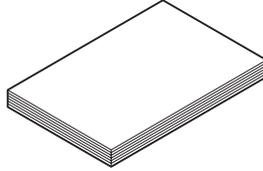
### FOMA SO902iWP +

(w/warranty and Rear Cover SO03)



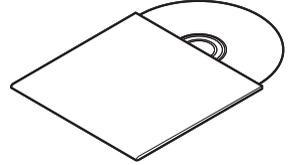
### User Guide (this manual)

(w/Quick Manual P.348)



### FOMA SO902iWP + CD-ROM

(\*Manual for Data Communication\* (PDF format) is included)

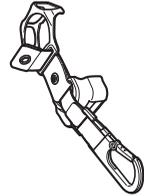


### Rear Cover Opener



### Active Holder SO01

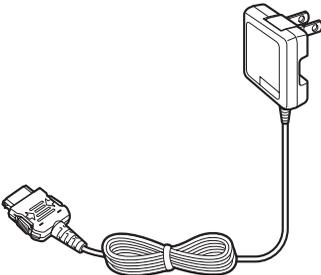
(w/user's manual)



## Optional accessories

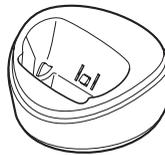
### FOMA AC Adapter 01

(w/warranty and user's manual)



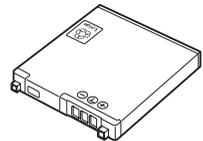
### Desktop Holder SO03

(w/user's manual)



### Battery Pack SO01

(w/user's manual)



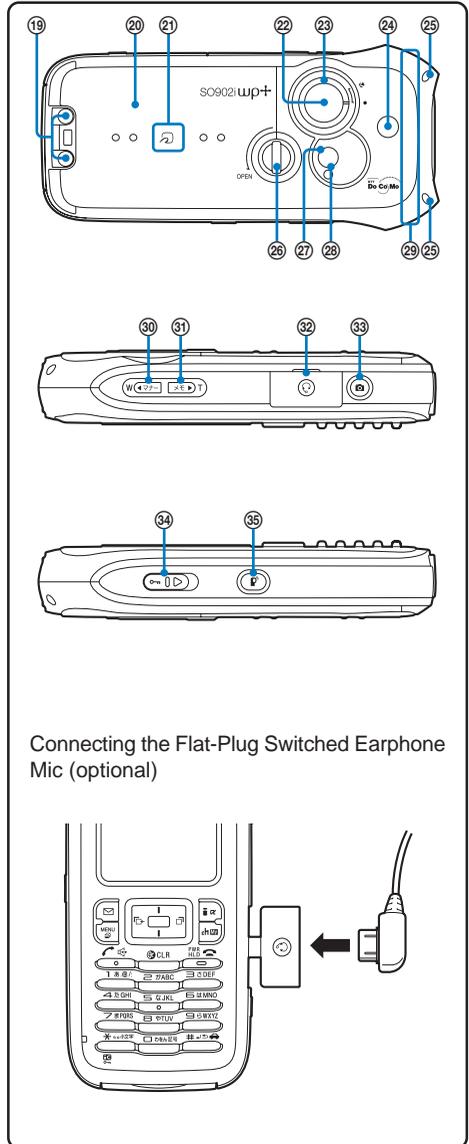
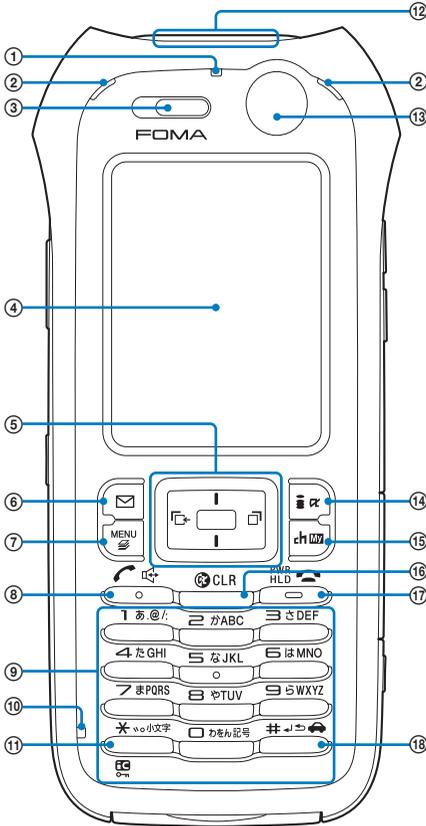
- Other optional accessories (P.316)

# Before Using the FOMA Terminal

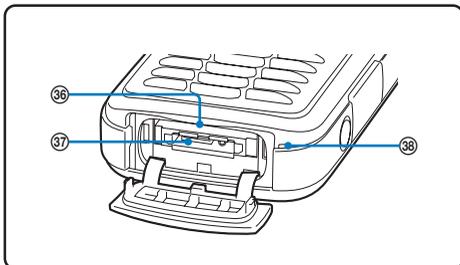
Part Names and Functions .....	28
Using the Display .....	30
Selecting the Menu .....	33
Using the UIM .....	35
Attaching and Removing the Battery Pack .....	37
Charging the FOMA Terminal .....	39
Checking the Battery Level .....	<Battery level> 41
Attaching and Removing the Active Holder .....	42
Powering On/Off .....	<Power on/off> 43
Setting the Basic Functions .....	<Initial setting> 43
Setting the Date and Time .....	<Date/time> 44
Showing Your Phone Number on the Recipient's Phone .....	<Notify caller ID> 44
Checking Your Own Phone Number .....	<Own number> 45

The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

# Part Names and Functions



Connecting the Flat-Plug Switched Earphone Mic (optional)



## FOMA SO902iWP +

Dimensions (mm) : 114 × 49 × 21 (H × W × D)  
 Weight (g) : About 120 (with battery pack attached)

### ① Incoming Indicator

Flashes when receiving a call/mail. It flashes when there is a missed call or new mail/unread message (P.103, 113).

### ② FeliCa Sign

Flashes when the FOMA terminal comes within the communication range with the reading device (reader/writer) (P.239).

### ③ Earpiece

The caller's voice is heard from here.

### ④ Display (P.30)

### ⑤ Four-way Keys and Enter Key (P.30)

### ⑥ Mail Key

In the stand-by display, press to display the Mail menu (P.193) and press for over a second to perform the Check new messages (P.178, 203).

Press to select an item in the guide display (P.32).

### ⑦ MENU Key

Press to display the menu (P.33, 267).

Press to select an item in the guide display (P.32).

### ⑧ Call/Hands-free Switch Key

Press to place a voice call or receive a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call.

Press during a call to switch ON/OFF of the hands-free function (P.48).

### ⑨ Keypad

Enter phone numbers or text (P.303).

### ⑩ Charge Indicator

Lights in red while charging the battery (P.39).

### ⑪ \* /IC Card Lock Key

In the stand-by display, press for over a second to lock the IC card function or cancel the lock. To cancel the lock, enter the Security code (P.242).

### ⑫ Infrared Data Port

When you perform infrared communications (P.260) or use the FOMA terminal as a remote control (P.263), point this port to the target device or equipment.

### ⑬ In-Camera

Use to record a still image or movie (P.141) or send the image at your side during a videophone call (P.71).

### ⑭ i-mode Key

In the stand-by display, press to display the i-mode menu (P.158) and press for over a second to display the i-αppli folder list display (P.226).

Press to select an item in the guide display (P.32).

### ⑮ i-Channel/My Selection Key

Press to place or receive a videophone call (P.71, 74).

In the stand-by display, press to display the Channel list display (P.235) and press for over a second to display My Selection (P.272).

Press to select an item in the guide display (P.32).

### ⑯ Clear Key

Press to cancel the current operation.

In the i-αppli stand-by display, press to operate the software (P.230).

In the stand-by display, press for over a second to turn off the notification icon (P.32).

### ⑰ Power/End/Hold Key

Press to power on/off the FOMA terminal (P.43).

Press to hang up or end the multitask functions.

Press while receiving a voice or videophone call to put a call on hold (P.62).

### ⑱ # /Public Mode (Driving Mode) Key

In the stand-by display, press for over a second to set/cancel the Public mode (Driving mode) (P.62).

### ⑲ Charge Terminal Pins (P.40)

### ⑳ Rear Cover (P.37)

### ㉑ FeliCa Mark

Indication of a built-in IC card.

Hold this mark to the reading device (reader/writer) to use the Osaifu-Keitai. You cannot remove the IC card (P.239).

### ㉒ Out-Camera

Use to record a still image or movie (P.136, 139) or send the surrounding image during a videophone call (P.71).

### ㉓ Macro Switch

Rotate this switch to the  position when recording in the Macro mode (P.137).

### ㉔ Speaker

Sounds including the ring tone are heard from here.

### ㉕ Strap Attachment

Attach the strap here.

### ㉖ Screw Lock (P.37)

### ㉗ Photo Light

Turn this light on when you use the Out-camera (P.141).

### ㉘ Auto Timer Indicator

Lights during the Camera mode. Flashes while recording a movie or taking an image with the Auto timer (P.139, 142).

### ㉙ Antenna (built-in antenna)

Do not cover the antenna with your hand for use in better radio wave condition.

### ㉚ Manner/W Key

In the stand-by display, press to display the Manner mode display (P.108) and press for over a second to set/cancel the Manner mode (P.107).

Press to scroll a page to the previous display.

### ㉛ Memo/T Key

In the stand-by display, press to display the Record msg display (P.66) and press for over a second to set/cancel the Record message (P.65).

Press to scroll a page to the next display.

### ㉜ Earphone Mic Jack

Connect the Flat-Plug Switched Earphone Mic (optional), etc. Other traditional Switched Earphone Mic (optional) is also available by connecting it through the Earphone Jack Conversion Adapter (optional) (P.276). Do not pull the cover forcibly.

### ㉝ Shutter

In the stand-by display, press for over a second to activate the Camera mode (P.132).

Press to record using the camera (P.136, 139).

### ㉞ Lock Key

Slide to lock the keypad or cancel the lock (P.125).

### ㉟ PushTalk Key

Press to originate or receive a PushTalk call (P.82, 83).

In the stand-by display, press for over a second to display the PushTalk phonebook (P.83).

### ㊱ "Memory Stick Duo" Slot

Insert the "Memory Stick Duo" into this slot (P.251). Do not pull the cover forcibly.

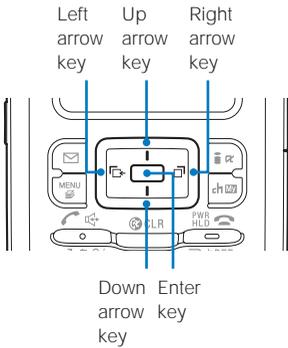
### ㊲ External Connection Terminal

The terminal to connect the AC adapter (optional) or other devices (P.40). Do not pull the cover forcibly.

### ㊳ Microphone

Picks up the sound of your voice. Do not cover it with your hand.

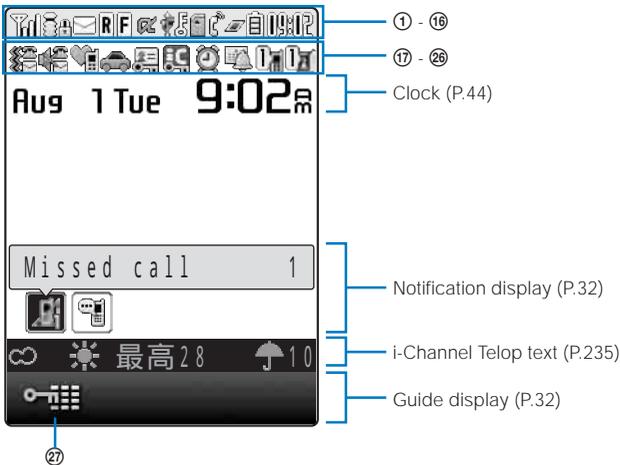
## Four-way Keys and Enter Key



Operation	Symbols in this manual	Description
Enter key		Set a selected item.
Up arrow key		Move the cursor upward. Press for over a second to move the cursor continuously. Press in the stand-by display to display the Data box.
Down arrow key		Move the cursor downward. Press for over a second to move the cursor continuously. Press in the stand-by display to display the Phonebook.
Left arrow key		Move the cursor to the left. Press for over a second to move the cursor continuously. Or, press to return to the previous display. Press in the stand-by display to display the Received record.
Right arrow key		Move the cursor to the right. Press for over a second to move the cursor continuously. Or, press to go to the next display. Press in the stand-by display to display the Redial record.

## Using the Display

- For details on the icons in the Camera mode, see P.135.



- ①  Radio wave condition
- ②  During i-mode (P.159)
- ③  During i-mode communications
- ④  During packet communications (P.286)
- ⑤  While sending/receiving packet communication data (P.286)
- ⑥  Outside of the service area
- ⑦  Self mode is set (P.123)
- ⑧  A card other than the UIM is inserted
- ⑨  While using the infrared communications function (P.262)
- ⑩  While an SSL site is displayed (P.159)/While i-appli software downloaded from an SSL site is running (P.226)/While the software update is using SSL communications (P.330)
- ⑪  Unread i-mode mail (P.201)/Unread SMS (P.221)/Unread i-mode mail and unread SMS
- ⑫  The FOMA terminal is full of received i-mode mail and SMS/The UIM is full of SMS
- ⑬  Mail at the i-mode center/The i-mode center is full
- ⑭  Unread Message R (P.177)/The FOMA terminal is full of Message R
- ⑮  Message R at the i-mode center/The i-mode center is full
- ⑯  Unread Message F (P.177)/The FOMA terminal is full of Message F
- ⑰  Message F at the i-mode center/The i-mode center is full
- ⑱  While running i-appli (i-appli stand-by display)/While running i-appli DX
- ⑲  i-appli stand-by display is set/i-appli DX stand-by display is set (P.230)
- ⑳  While being connected to an external device with a USB cable
- ㉑  While being connected to a hands-free device (P.57)
- ㉒  Secret display is [ON] (P.126)
- ㉓  While the "Memory Stick Duo" is inserted (P.251)
- ㉔  While the infrared remote control is being used (P.263)
- ㉕  During a voice call
- ㉖  During a videophone call (64K)/(32K) (P.70)
- ㉗  During PushTalk communications (P.81)
- ㉘  While using PushTalkPlus (P.87)
- ㉙  During 64K data communications (P.286)
- ㉚  1/2/3 or more tasks are being executed (P.267)
- ㉛  Battery level (P.41)
- ㉜  Current time (24-hour format)
- ㉝  The vibrator is set for incoming calls (P.103)
- ㉞  The vibrator is set for incoming mail (P.103)
- ㉟  The vibrator is set for incoming calls and mail (P.103)
- ㊱  Incoming call ring volume OFF (P.102)
- ㊲  Incoming mail ring volume OFF (P.102)
- ㊳  Incoming call and mail ring volume OFF (P.102)
- ㊴  Manner mode is set (♥ is pink) (P.107)
- ㊵  Silent mode is set (P.107)
- ㊶  Original manner mode is set (♥ is blue) (P.107)
- ㊷  Public mode (Driving mode) is set (P.62)
- ㊸  PIM lock is set (P.123)
- ㊹  Key dial lock is set (P.124)
- ㊺  PIM lock and Key dial lock are set (P.123, 124)
- ㊻  IC card lock is set (P.242)
- ㊼  Alarm is set (P.268)
- ㊽  Schedule alarm is set (P.269)
- ㊾  Record message is set (☐ is white) (P.65)
- ㊿  There are non-played back record messages (☐ is light blue)
- 1  There is no non-played back record message (☐ is blue)
- 2  Record message is OFF (there are record messages) (☐ is gray)
- 3  There are non-played back record messages (☐ is light blue)
- 4  There is no non-played back record message (☐ is blue)
- 5  The number of recorded messages is displayed at ☐. When the number of recorded messages becomes full, "F" appears.
- 6  Videophone message is set (☐ is green) (P.65)
- 7  There are non-played back videophone messages (☐ is light blue)
- 8  There is no non-played back videophone message (☐ is blue)
- 9  Videophone message is OFF (there are videophone messages) (☐ is gray)
- 10  There are non-played back videophone messages (☐ is light blue)
- 11  There is no non-played back videophone message (☐ is blue)
- 12  The number of recorded videophone messages is displayed at ☐. When the number of recorded videophone messages becomes full, "F" appears.
- 13  Lock key is set (P.125)

The FOMA terminal's display is manufactured based on the leading edge technologies, and some pixels unlit or lit may appear constantly on the display. This is not a malfunction.

## Notification Display

An icon is displayed in the notification display to alert you, for example, when you cannot answer a call. The icon is displayed from the left in the order of the latest event.

Move the cursor to the icon to display the text information and select the icon to check the notification information. The icon is turned off by checking the notification information or pressing  for over a second.

Icon	Text information	Description
	Missed call X	There is a missed call of a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call, or 64K data communications (P.65).
	New mail X	i-mode mail/SMS is received (P.201, 221).
	Mail at center	Mail is held at the i-mode center (P.202).
	New ToruCa X	A ToruCa card is obtained (P.240).
	New Record msg	A record message is recorded (P.66).
	New V.phone msg	A videophone message is recorded (P.66).
	Exceed cost limit <sup>1</sup>	The total call cost has exceeded the upper limit (P.274).
	Voice Mail X	A record message is saved at the Voice Mail Service Center (P.280).
	Stand-by SW error	i-appli stand-by display security error has occurred (P.232).
	Update complete	The software update is completed (P.331).
	Check for update	There is confirmation of a software update (P.331).
	Update completed <sup>1</sup>	The pattern definition auto-update was completed successfully (P.334).
	Update definitions <sup>1</sup>	The pattern definition auto-update was failed. The update is still required (P.334).
	SW not terminated <sup>1 2</sup>	There is an active function (excluding the i-appli stand-by display) (P.267).

1 Even when you press  for over a second, the icon is not turned off.

2 The icon appears at the rightmost location in the icons list when multiple icons are displayed.

## Guide Display

To utilize the FOMA terminal's functions, use the four-way keys (Up/Down/Left/Right arrow keys), the enter key, the Mail key, the i-mode key, the MENU key, and the i-Channel/My Selection key according to the instructions shown in the guide display.

- For details on the guide display in the Camera mode, see P.136.

Display	Operation	Display	Operation
	Press  .		Press  .
	Press  .		Press  .
	Press  .		Press  .
	Press  .		Press  .
	Press  .		

The display may differ from the above depending on websites and i-appli software.

## Selecting the Menu

The FOMA terminal provides various functions.

Press  (MENU) to display the menu display. You can switch the menu display between [Normal] and [Simple mode] as well as change menu icons to be displayed in the Normal mode (P.113).

For the list of menus in the Normal mode, see P.296.

Normal mode



Icon	Menu name	Description
	Entertainment	Used to access functions such as My Selection, camera, and Memory Stick.
	Mail	Used to access an i-mode mail and SMS functions.
	i-mode	Used to access an i-mode function.
	i-appli	Used to access an i-appli function.
	Phone	Used to access functions mainly related to placing and receiving a call such as the Own number, Phonebook, Call record, PushTalk phonebook, and Record message.
	Tools	Used to access tools such as the Bar code reader, Receive infrared data, ToruCa, IC card content, Alarm, Schedule, Text memo, and Calculator.
	Data box	Used to access data such as those saved in My picture, i-motion, Melody, Chara-den, and My document.
	Settings	Used to set items such as Display, Call, Application, Lock/Security, and Management.
	NW Services	Used to access Network Services such as the Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, Call Forwarding Service, Notify Caller ID, Call Cost/Duration, Multi Number Service, and Videophone switch notice.

For the list of menus in the Simple mode, see P.302.

Simple mode



Menu name	Description
Phone	Used to access functions such as Phonebook, Call record, Record message, and Own number.
Mail	Used to access functions such as Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Compose message, and Check new message.
i-mode	Used to access functions such as i Menu, Bookmarks, Screen Memo, and i-Channel.
Camera	Used to record an image with the camera and display recorded images.
Settings/Tools	Used to access functions such as Stand-by display, Incoming set, Alarm, Calculator, Call Cost/Duration, and Voice Mail.
Main menu	Displays the Normal mode menu.

While in the Normal mode menu, you can enlarge/reduce the font size to be displayed by pressing  (Enlarge) /  (Reduce).

Functions displayed in gray are not available.

## Selecting a Function from the Menu Display

A function can be executed easily by going through the menus.

- 1 Press  (MENU).  
The menu display appears.
- 2 Press   to select a menu and press .

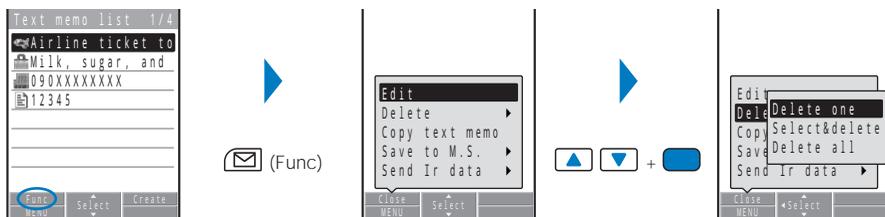
You can execute a function in the menu display by pressing a key on the keypad. For the functions that can be executed using a number key, see the list of menus (P.296).

## Selecting a Function from the Function Menu

The Function menu is a menu that plays an auxiliary role for each function.

Whenever the Function menu is available, [Func] appears in the guide display. Press  to display a list of available Function menus.

- The contents of the Function menu vary depending on the functions and displays. For details, see the description of operation for the individual option.



# Using the UIM

The UIM (FOMA card) records user information such as your phone number. Insert a UIM in a FOMA-compatible terminal to use it.

## Inserting/Removing the UIM

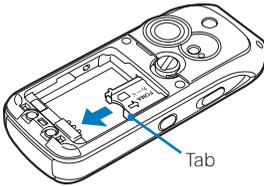
When inserting/removing the UIM (FOMA card), make sure to power off the FOMA terminal, remove the battery pack, and perform the operation with the FOMA terminal held with your hand.

- If you use force to insert the UIM, the card could break.

### Inserting the UIM

- 1** Pull the tab and then pull out the tray.

Pull out the tray until it stops.



Tab

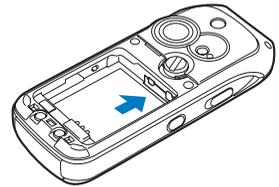
- 2** Place the UIM on the tray with the IC side facing up.

Align the notches of the tray and UIM and firmly push the UIM into the tray.



IC side

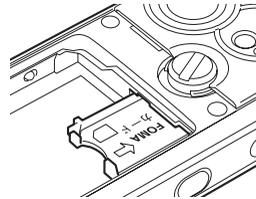
- 3** Push the tray until it stops.



### Removing the UIM

- 1** Pull the tab and then pull out the tray.
- 2** Take out the UIM with your fingertips.

#### If the UIM tray is displaced



Hold the UIM tray with the characters on the tray facing up and push it straight until it stops.

- Perform this operation after removing the UIM.

Make sure to keep a removed UIM safely.

When you attach the battery pack, make sure that the UIM tray is not extended. If the UIM tray is extended, you cannot attach the battery pack. If you use force to attach the battery pack, the UIM or tray could break.

## About the UIM Security Code

You can set two Security codes, namely "PIN1" and "PIN2", for the UIM (FOMA card). These codes are set to "0000" at the time of subscription. You can change them to any 4- to 8-digit number you want (P.118).

## About the Function for Restricting UIM Operation

The FOMA terminal provides a function for restricting UIM (FOMA card) operation in order to protect your data and files. If you record a videophone message or download files or data from sites or mail while the UIM is inserted in the FOMA terminal, the UIM operation restriction function is automatically set for these data and files.

- When you switch a UIM to another UIM or if you do not have a UIM inserted in the FOMA terminal, you are unable to display or play back the data or files for which the UIM operation restriction function is set or if they are sent using infrared communications or attached to mail.
- The target data for operation restriction is as follows:
  - Still images (including animation and Flash)
  - Movie/i-motion
  - File attached to i-mode mail
  - Videophone message
  - Image inserted in Deco-mail main body
  - Chara-den
  - Image trimmed from PDF data (downloaded PDF data only)
  - Screen Memo (if target for restriction is included)
  - Melody
  - File attached to Message R/F
  - i-appli (including i-appli stand-by display)
  - Image inserted in a ToruCa(detail) card
  - PDF data
- "🔒" appears for the data with UIM operation restriction. Depending on the data, "🔒" may not appear and a message may appear instead when you select the data.

If you switch a UIM to another UIM or use the FOMA terminal without inserting a UIM when data targeted by the UIM operation restriction function is set for the stand-by display, call image, and ring tone, then the sound and image settings are reset to the default settings. In this case, the sound and image you have set and the actual sound and image may be different.

You cannot set the UIM operation restriction function for data received using the infrared communications, the "Memory Stick Duo", or Data Link Software or images recorded with the built-in camera.

## Setting Saved in the UIM

The following settings are saved in the UIM (FOMA card). If you replace the UIM with another one, the settings in the new UIM come into effect.

- Language
- SSL certificate
- SMS setting
- UIM setting

## About the Differences in UIM Functions

There are two types of UIM (FOMA card), namely green and blue cards. The functions of each card are different as indicated in the table below.

Item	UIM (green)	UIM (blue)	Page
Number of digits that can be saved for a phone number in the UIM phonebook	Maximum 26 digits	Maximum 20 digits	P.94
User certificate operation for using FirstPass	Available	Unavailable	P.180
Use of WORLD WING service	Available	Unavailable	P.37
Service Numbers	Available	Unavailable	P.282

## WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the DoCoMo's FOMA international roaming service that enables you to place or receive a call using the same mobile phone number even when you are overseas, just by replacing the UIM (green) with a card for a WORLD WING service-compatible FOMA terminal or overseas-use mobile phone (W-CDMA or GSM system). You can use WORLD WING without an application procedure.

If you are a user who started subscribing to the FOMA services before August 31, 2005 and did not subscribe to WORLD WING, you need to perform the application procedure separately in order to use WORLD WING.

- This service is not available in some service charge plans.
- If you should lose your UIM (green) or have it stolen abroad, please report it to DoCoMo and take steps to cancel the use of the UIM as soon as possible. For information on where to call, see the "General Contact" on the backcover of this manual. Note that you are still liable for the call and communications charge incurred after the loss or theft occurred.

## Attaching and Removing the Battery Pack

When attaching/removing the battery pack, make sure to power off the FOMA terminal.

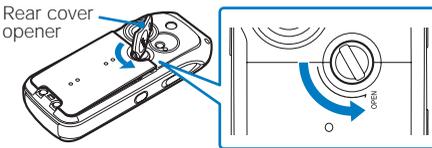
- The terminal on the FOMA terminal may be damaged if you attach the battery pack forcibly.
- Holding too hard or attaching/removing the rear cover in a manner other than described below may damage it.
- Make sure only to use the supplied rear cover opener to attach/remove the rear cover. Do not use any other tool or object.
- If children use the rear cover opener, parents or guardians should give them the proper instructions for use. Make sure that they use the rear cover opener as instructed. Failure to do so may cause injury.
- Keep the rear cover opener out of the reach of babies and infants. Failure to do so may cause accidental swallowing or injury.

### Attaching the battery pack

- 1 Rotate the screw lock with the rear cover opener in the direction of the arrow.

Rotate the screw lock until it stops at the "OPEN" position.

- If you use force to rotate the dial, it may be damaged.



- 2 Raise the rear cover to remove it.

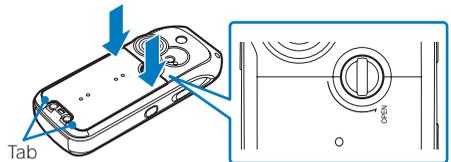


- 3 Attach the battery pack as illustrated below, align the terminal of it with that of the FOMA terminal, and slide it into place.



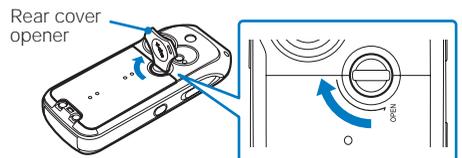
- 4 Attach the rear cover so that the tabs on the rear cover align with the grooves on the FOMA terminal and press it tightly with both hands.

Press the rear cover until it is closed completely to assure no gap between the cover and mating surface, and check that the screw lock is at the vertical position.



- 5 While holding the rear cover, rotate the screw lock with the rear cover opener in the direction of the arrow to lock it.

Rotate the screw lock until it stops at the horizontal position as illustrated below.

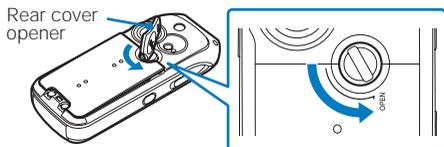


## Removing the battery pack

- 1 Rotate the screw lock with the rear cover opener in the direction of the arrow.

Rotate the screw lock until it stops at the "OPEN" position.

- If you use force to rotate the dial, it may be damaged.



- 2 Raise the rear cover to remove it.



- 3 Raise to remove the battery pack in the direction of the arrow by holding it by the tab.



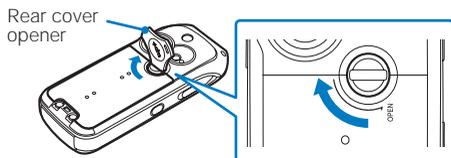
- 4 Attach the rear cover so that the tabs on the rear cover align with the grooves on the FOMA terminal and press it tightly with both hands.

Press the rear cover until it is closed completely to assure no gap between the cover and mating surface, and check that the screw lock is at the vertical position.



- 5 While holding the rear cover, rotate the screw lock with the rear cover opener in the direction of the arrow to lock it.

Rotate the screw lock until it stops at the horizontal position as illustrated below.



## Battery Pack

To make full use of the FOMA terminal, make sure to use the Battery Pack SO01.

### Life of the battery pack

The battery pack is a consumable part. The life of any rechargeable battery decreases each time it is recharged.

When the duration of operation becomes less than half in comparison with a new battery pack, the life of the battery pack can be considered over.

(The average life of a battery pack is about one year. However, depending on the frequency of use, the life may become shorter.)

Return all spent battery packs to NTT DoCoMo or a dealer, or a recycling shop to protect the environment.



Li-ion

# Charging the FOMA Terminal

At the time of purchase, the battery pack is not fully charged. Make sure to fully charge the battery pack before using the FOMA terminal for the first time.

## About Charging the FOMA Terminal

- Be sure to attach the battery pack in the FOMA terminal before connecting it to the optional AC Adapter, Desktop Holder, or DC Adapter. If the battery pack is not attached, the FOMA terminal cannot be charged.
- If you use a function such as the videophone, data communications, and i-αppli while charging the battery, the charging may stop because of high temperature of the FOMA terminal. The charging may not even start if the FOMA terminal is in high temperature. Wait until the temperature of the FOMA terminal falls and restart charging.
- If the charge indicator of the FOMA terminal flashes in red, wait until the temperature of the FOMA terminal falls or remove the battery pack and attach it back again.  
If it continues to flash in red, the battery pack may be defective. Stop charging immediately and contact our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.).
- Do not charge the battery pack for a long period of time (more than 24 hours) with the FOMA terminal powered on. If the FOMA terminal is powered on when charging is completed, the battery level decreases. This causes the FOMA terminal to restart charging. If you remove the FOMA terminal while it is recharging, the following conditions may occur.
  - The battery level is low.
  - The battery alarm sounds.
  - The operation time is short.

### Estimated charging time/Battery time

Charging time (AC adapter)	Continuous call (communication) time	Continuous stand-by time
About 130 minutes	Voice call : About 140 minutes Videophone call : About 90 minutes	Stationary state : About 500 hours Moving state : About 390 hours

- The charging time is an estimated time for charging when the battery pack is empty and the FOMA terminal is powered off. When charging with the FOMA terminal powered on, the charging time becomes longer.
- The continuous call time is an estimated time for a call when the FOMA terminal can send/receive radio waves properly.
- The continuous stand-by time is an estimated time for use when the FOMA terminal can receive radio waves properly. The continuous stand-by time during the stationary state indicates the average battery running time when the FOMA terminal receives a call in this state. The continuous stand-by time during the moving state indicates the average battery running time during a combination of "stationary state", "moving state", and "outside of the service area" conditions within an area where the FOMA terminal can receive calls in a normal manner.
- Note that the call (communication) time and stand-by time may be reduced to about half of the time indicated above depending on the battery charge condition, function settings, operating environment such as temperature, and radio wave condition in the area where a call is made (outside of the service area or area with weak radio wave condition). Similarly, the call (communication) time and stand-by time become shorter than the above when you use i-mode communications. Besides calls and i-mode communications, the battery time is also reduced when you are composing i-mode mail, starting a downloaded i-αppli or i-αppli stand-by display, performing data communications, executing multiaccess, and using the camera.

## How to Charge the FOMA Terminal

Below is the procedure to charge the battery pack using the optional Desktop Holder SO03 with the FOMA AC Adapter 01 connected. Make sure to see the user's manuals of the Desktop Holder and AC Adapter.

The battery pack cannot be charged alone.

- 1** Insert the connector of the AC adapter horizontally with the engraved side facing up into the terminal of the desktop holder.
- 2** Lift the power plug of the AC adapter and plug it into an AC 100 V outlet.
- 3** Attach the FOMA terminal to the desktop holder and push it into place.

When charging starts, the red charge indicator is turned on. The indicator is turned off when charging is completed.

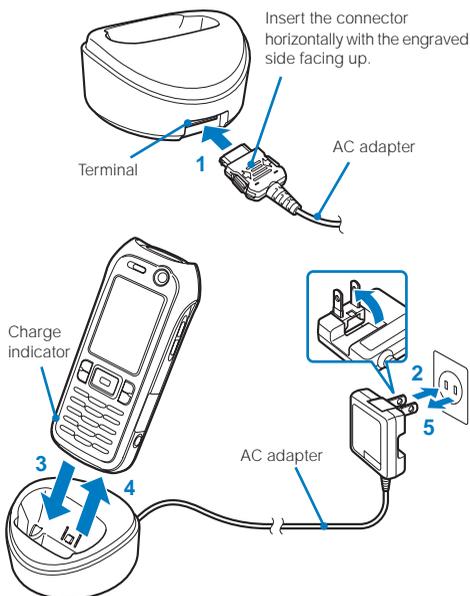
### When you charge while the FOMA terminal is powered on

The battery level icon flashes and the Charge sound is heard. When charging is completed, the battery level icon changes from flashing to lighting and the Charge sound is heard.

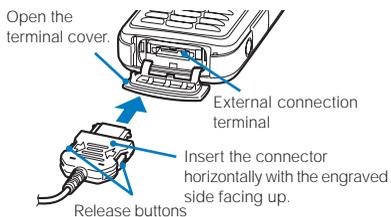
- You can set to mute the Charge sound with the Set basic tone (P.104).

When the battery level is 0 at the start of charging, the indicator may not be turned on immediately. But the charging is in progress.

- 4** When charging is completed, lift to remove the FOMA terminal.
- 5** Remove the power plug of the AC adapter from the AC 100 V outlet.



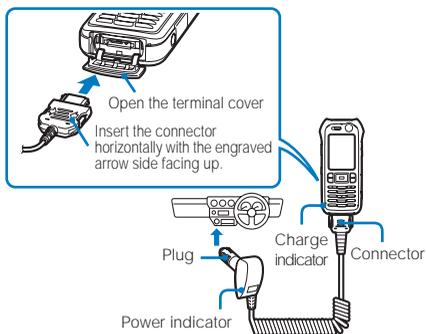
### Charging with the AC adapter only



- To remove the AC adapter, make sure to pull it horizontally while holding the release buttons pressed. Pulling it forcibly may cause malfunction.

### Charging with the DC adapter

The optional FOMA DC Adapter 01 also allows charging of the battery pack by using the cigarette lighter socket of a vehicle (12 V/24 V) as a power source. For details, see the user's manual of the DC adapter.



When not using the AC adapter for a long period of time, remove the power plug of the AC adapter from the AC outlet.

Make sure that the phone strap does not get caught in between the FOMA terminal and the desktop holder.

The fuse (2.0 A) of the DC adapter is a consumable part. Purchase an equivalent fuse from an automobile parts store when it is necessary to replace the fuse.

## Checking the Battery Level

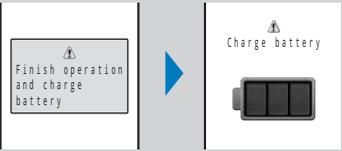
The estimated battery level is indicated in the display.

- Use this level only as estimated.



Display	Charge level
	Sufficiently charged.
	Slightly low.
	Very low. Charge.
	The battery level is 0. Charge.

When the battery level becomes 0, the screen shown to the right appears and warning sound is heard. The warning sound may be suppressed by other sound, etc in operation. During a call, warning sound is heard from the earpiece. The warning sound is heard again after about 20 seconds and the function you are performing is terminated. If you are in a call, the call is also terminated. If you do not charge the battery, the FOMA terminal is automatically powered off after about 60 seconds.



## Checking the Battery Level with the Sound and Display

- The confirmation beep does not sound when the volume of the keypad sound is [OFF] (P.104).

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] [Management] [Battery level] and press

The current battery level is displayed using bars in the display and the confirmation beep sounds according to the remaining battery level.



Sufficiently charged.  
(three beeps)



Slightly low.  
(two beeps)



Very low. Charge.  
(one beep)



Battery level 0.  
Charge. (no beeps)

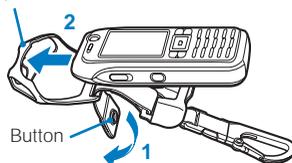
# Attaching and Removing the Active Holder

- For more information on the Active Holder, see the user's manual of the supplied Active Holder SO01.

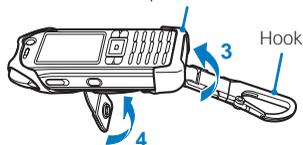
## Attaching the Active Holder

- 1** Unhook the buttons on the Active Holder.
- 2** Insert the top of the FOMA terminal into the upper part of the holder in the correct orientation.
- 3** Attach the lower part of the holder onto the bottom of the FOMA terminal.
- 4** Hook the buttons tightly until they click into place.
  - You can use the holder by attaching the hook of it through the belt loop on your clothes, etc.

Upper part of the holder

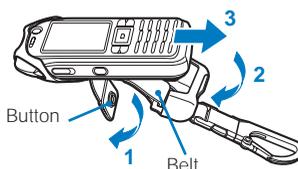


Lower part of the holder



## Removing the Active Holder

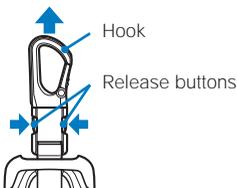
- 1** While holding the FOMA terminal, unhook the buttons and release the belt on the Active Holder.
- 2** Remove the lower part of the holder from the FOMA terminal.
- 3** While holding the upper part of the holder, pull the FOMA terminal in the direction of the arrow to remove it from the holder.



### Using the holder with the holder section removed from the hook

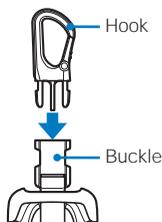
#### Removing the holder section

While holding the FOMA terminal and the hook, pull the hook in the direction of the arrow to remove it while holding the release buttons on the buckle pressed.



#### Attaching the holder section

Insert the hook into the buckle until it clicks into place.



# Powering On/Off

- The screen for confirming whether to execute the SW Update may appear when you power on the FOMA terminal (P.329).

**1** Press  for over two seconds.



The FOMA terminal is powered on, the display and the keypad lights are turned on, and the Wake-up image (animation) is displayed. After a while, the stand-by display appears.

- If you have set the PIN1 code setting to [ON], the PIN1 code input screen appears. Enter the PIN1 code and press  (OK) (P.118).

### To power off

Press  for over two seconds. The FOMA terminal is powered off after the Power off image appears.

# Setting the Basic Functions

The Initial setting can be used to make basic settings such as the Date/time and Security code. See the respective pages for details about the settings.

### Available setting items

Item	Description
Date/time	Set the date and time of the FOMA terminal (P.44).
Change code	Change the Security code (P.118).
Keypad sound	Set the volume of the tone to sound when you press the key (P.104).
Font size	Set the size of fonts to be used individually for displaying the Phonebook, Call record, Mail, i-mode sites, etc. (P.114).
PushTalk caller ID	Set whether to send the FOMA terminal's phone number when you originate a PushTalk call (P.88).

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] [Management] [Init. Setting] and press .



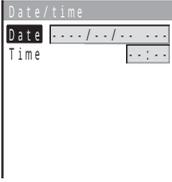
**2** Set each item.

After you execute Delete all data or if the date and time and the Security code are not set, the message "Initial setting is incomplete. Execute?" appears when the FOMA terminal is powered on. The display in step 1 appears when selecting [Yes] and you can set items for the Initial setting.

## Setting the Date and Time

Set the date and time of the FOMA terminal.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Management] [Date/time] and press .



- 2 Enter the year, date, and time.

Enter the year and date within the range from 2000/01/01 to 2050/12/31.

Enter the time in 24-hour format (00:00 to 23:59).

- 3 Press  (Complete).

The date and time are set.

To set the date and time during a call, from the Function menu, select [Date/time].

The date and time settings are retained even when you replace the battery pack. However, if you leave the FOMA terminal without a battery pack or with a fully expended battery pack for a long period of time, the date and time may be reset to "----/-- -- --:--". In this case, set the date and time once again.

If the date and time are not set, functions that use the clock, such as the current time icon, Schedule, Alarm, i-appli Auto start, and calendar/clock display cannot be used. The date and time for the Redial/Received record and the date and time on images shot with the camera are also not recorded.

## Showing Your Phone Number on the Recipient's Phone

When placing a call, your phone number can be shown in the display of the recipient's phone you are calling.

- The caller ID is important personal information. Carefully decide whether you want to notify a recipient of your caller ID.

- 1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Notify Caller ID] [Set Notification] and press .

The network security code screen appears.

- 2 Enter the network security code.

- 3 Select [Notify]/[Not notify] and press .

The Notify caller ID is set.

### To check the setting

From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Notify Caller ID] [Check status].

If you hear a guidance asking to send the caller ID when you place a call, call again after setting the Set Notification to [Notify] or by adding "186" before the recipient's phone number.

## Checking Your Own Phone Number

Your phone number can be checked. You can also save your name, mail address, etc.

- If the Own number is saved as Secret, the data other than your phone number, mail address, and Additional No. is not displayed. Set the Secret display to [ON] to display all data.

- 1 Press  (MENU) in the stand-by display and press .



Your phone number appears at . If the data other than a phone number is saved, that data also appears.

### To place a call

Move the cursor to a phone number and press .

### To place a videophone call

Move the cursor to a phone number and press .

### To originate a PushTalk call

Move the cursor to a phone number and press .

### To send i-mode mail

Move the cursor to a mail address and press  (Mail).

### To check the image

Move the cursor to the image and press  (Play).

## Saving Your Personal Data

Your personal data such as your name, postal address, and mail address can be saved and displayed at any time.

- 1 Press  (Edit) in the Own number display.



- 2 Enter your mail address at .

Enter a mail address within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters.

- 3 Enter your name at .

Enter a name within 16 full-width or 32 half-width characters.

- 4 Check  (reading).

When you enter a name (in Japanese), the relevant reading is automatically input.

### To correct a reading

Select  and enter a reading within 32 half-width characters.

- 5 Enter your home postal code at .

Enter a postal code within seven half-width digits.

- 6** Enter your home postal address at .

Enter an address within 64 full-width or 128 half-width characters.
- 7** Enter your home phone number at .

Enter a number within 26 digits.
- 8** Enter your home mail address at .

Enter a mail address within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters.
- 9** Enter your office name at .

Enter a name within 64 full-width or 128 half-width characters.
- 10** Enter your office postal code at .

Enter a postal code within seven half-width digits.
- 11** Enter your office postal address at .

Enter an address within 64 full-width or 128 half-width characters.
- 12** Enter your office phone number at .

Enter a number within 26 digits.
- 13** Enter your office mail address at .

Enter a mail address within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters.
- 14** Enter your birthday at .

Enter the year and date within the range from 1900/01/01 to 2050/12/31.
- 15** Select an image from My picture of the Data box at .

  - You can set a GIF or JPEG image not exceeding 100K bytes in file size and [Stby(320 × 240)] in image size.

**To specify no image**  
Select [None].

**To check the image**  
Move the cursor to the image and press  (Play).
- 16** Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Secret at .

**To display data saved as Secret**  
Set the Secret display to [ON].
- 17** Press  (Complete).

Your personal data is saved.

**To reset to the default settings**  
From the Function menu in the Own number display, select [Reset all] [Yes].

At  your phone number is displayed and at  and  Additional Nos. set for the Multi Number Service are displayed. These numbers cannot be edited or deleted.

At the time of purchase, your mail address does not appear. Check your mail address by selecting  (i-mode) [i Menu] **オプション設定** (Options) **メール設定** (Mail Settings) **アドレス確認** (Confirm Mail Address). When you change your mail address, edit the Own number display accordingly.

# Placing/Receiving Calls

## Placing Calls

Placing a Call .....	48
Switching from Voice Call to Videophone Call .....	<Chg. to videophone> 50
Redialing Previously Dialed Numbers .....	<Redial record> 51
Changing the Caller ID Setting ON/OFF for an Individual Call .....	<186/184> 52
Placing a Call by Specifying a Condition .....	53
Setting a Prefix .....	<Prefix setting> 54
Placing an International Call .....	<WORLD CALL> 54
Placing a Call by Specifying a Sub-address .....	<Sub-address> 56
Setting the Alarm When Reconnecting a Dropped Call .....	<Reconnect alarm> 57
Improving Voice Clarity by Suppressing Background Noise .....	<Reduce noise> 57
Talking Hands-free While Driving .....	<Hands-free mode> 57

## Receiving Calls

Receiving a Call .....	58
Pressing the Keypad to Receive a Call .....	<Any key answer> 59
Using the Received Record .....	<Received record> 60
Using the Low Voice Feature .....	<Whisper mode> 61
Putting a Call on Hold during a Call .....	<Holding> 61

## When You Are/Were Unable to Answer a Call

Putting a Call on Hold .....	<On hold> 62
Using the Public Mode (Driving Mode) .....	<Public mode (Driving mode)> 62
Using the Public Mode (Power off) .....	<Public mode (Power off)> 64
Checking the Missed Calls .....	<Missed call> 65
Recording Caller's Voice/Video Messages When Unable to Answer Calls ....	<Record message/Videophone message> 65
Playing Back/Deleting a Record Message/Voice Memo .....	68

The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

## Placing a Call

Check the radio wave condition and enter a phone number.

- Do not cover the antenna with your hands for a call in better radio wave condition.

### 1 Enter a phone number in the stand-by display.



- You can enter a phone number of up to 80 digits.
- Remember to include the area code, even for a local call.

#### When you press the wrong number

Press to delete the entered digits one by one from the right. Press for over a second to delete all digits.

### 2 Press .



A ringing sound is heard when the call is connected.

#### When a busy tone sounds

The line is busy. Press to hang up and call again after a while.

#### When you hear a guidance

Call again according to the guidance.

### 3 Press to hang up.

You can also place a call in the order of step 2 → step 1. Press and enter a phone number, and the call is placed automatically after about five seconds.

## Using the Hands-free Function

When you switch to the hands-free operation during a call, you can hear the caller's voice from the speaker and talk hands-free.

### 1 Press during a call.



The call is switched to the hands-free operation and appears.

#### To cancel the hands-free function

Press again.

- When you finish the call, the hands-free operation is automatically canceled.

Talk into the FOMA terminal from a distance of 30 cm or less.

## Entering a Pause, Timer, or +

You can include a pause, timer, or + in a phone number (within 80 digits in all) to place a call.

The phone number and pause, timer, or + can be saved together in the Phonebook.

- Pause and timer are valid only for a voice call.

### Entering a pause “P”

If you enter “P” (pause) between the phone number and touch-tones when you book a ticket, touch back your home answering machine, or send a message to a DoCoMo pager\*, the touch-tones are sent by separating the numbers at the pause (P).

- 1 Press  in the phone number input display.

To send touch-tones saved in the Phonebook

When the touch-tones are displayed after you place a call from the Phonebook, press  (Call).

Some receiver devices may not be able to accept touch-tones.

### Entering a timer “T”

To dial an inside line number following an outside line number, enter “T” (timer) between the outside and inside line numbers. After a preset interval in seconds, the inside line number is dialed following the outside line number. An interval of about one second is added for every timer (T) entry. You can enter “T” consecutively to make the interval longer.

- 1 Press  for over a second in the phone number input display.

### Entering a “+”

If you enter “+” at the beginning of a phone number when the Auto assist of the Int'l dial setting is set to [Auto], a call is dialed by automatically adding the set international access number (set to “009130010” at the time of purchase).

- 1 Press  for over a second in the phone number input display.

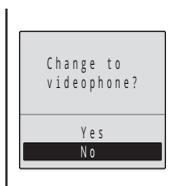
You may not be able to place the call if you enter other than a phone number after “+” or enter only “+”.

# Switching from Voice Call to Videophone Call

A caller can switch to videophone call during a voice call.

- This function can be used only between terminals that can switch between voice and videophone calls. A recipient must preset the V.ph switch notice to [Activate] (P.78).

**1** Press  (Func) during a voice call, select [Chg. to videophone], and press .



[Yes] : Switch the call from voice call to videophone call.

[No] : Return to the voice call without switching the call.

**2** Select [Yes] and press .



The recipient's image  
A substitute image may appear according to the setting on the recipient's terminal.

While the call is switched, an animation is displayed and you hear a guidance notifying you that a call is switched.

When the call is switched to the videophone call, your image is sent to the recipient and the call is switched to the hands-free operation that allows you to hear the recipient's voice from the speaker. Even if the Manner mode is set, the hands-free operation is activated.

If packet communications is in progress, it is disconnected and the FOMA terminal is switched to videophone.

While the recipient is performing packet communications, you cannot switch to videophone.

The switching operation takes about five seconds. It may take time depending on the radio wave condition.

The voice call may not be able to be switched to the videophone call in some radio wave condition, and the phone may be disconnected.

You are not charged while "Chg. to videophone" is displayed.

Every time you switch, the call duration starts from 0 seconds.

You can also switch the call from videophone call to voice call. The call can be switched repeatedly between voice and videophone calls.

## Redialing Previously Dialed Numbers

Up to 30 previously dialed calls are saved in the Redial record with their dates/times, phone numbers, and names. The redial records can also be listed in the order of phone numbers you most frequently dial (Dial frequency record).

- 1 Press  () in the stand-by display.



Phone type  
Call type

The phone numbers or names appear in descending order from the most recent call. For a PushTalk call, the group name or the first member's name appears. The following icons show the type of the originated call.

### Call type

	Voice call
	Videophone
	PushTalk
	PushTalk type (to one person)/(to multiple persons)/(PushTalkPlus)
	Multi Number (Basic Number)/(Additional No. 1)/(Additional No. 2)
	International call

### Phone type

	Mobile1		Mobile2		Public phone
	Videophone		Home phone		Office phone
	Home FAX		Office FAX		QUICKCAST

### To display the Dial frequency record

Press  in the Redial record display.

### To display phone numbers

When saved in the Phonebook, the name and phone type of a recipient are displayed instead of the phone number. Press  to switch the display temporarily between names and phone numbers. The display is not switched when a group name for a PushTalk call is displayed.

### To send mail

You can use EV-Link to send mail to a person whose phone number and mail address are saved in the Phonebook.

### To display detailed information of the PushTalk call

Move the cursor to a redial record of the PushTalk call () and press  (Detail).

- 2 Select a redial record and press .

The call is connected with the selected recipient.

### To place a videophone call

Move the cursor to a redial record and press  (V.phone).

### To originate a PushTalk call

Move the cursor to a redial record and press .

- 3 Press  to hang up.

If the same phone number has been repeatedly called, only the most recent call is saved in the Redial record. Note, however, that when you originate a PushTalk call, individual PushTalk communications among several persons are recorded.

If you switch the call between voice and videophone during a call, the call you placed first is saved in the Redial record.

## Deleting the Redial Record

The Redial and Dial frequency records are retained even if the FOMA terminal is powered off. If you do not wish others to know the previously dialed records, delete one or all of the redial/dial frequency records.

- If you delete either a redial record or a dial frequency record, both records are deleted.

Example: Deleting a redial record

### 1 From the Redial record display, select the redial record and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

#### To delete several redial records

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete], select redial records, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].

#### To delete all redial records

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### 2 Select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes] and press .

The selected redial record is deleted.

## Changing the Caller ID Setting ON/OFF for an Individual Call

You can choose whether to notify a recipient of your phone number (caller ID) every time you place a call.

- The caller ID is important personal information. Carefully decide whether you want to notify a recipient of your caller ID.

You can use the following methods to notify or not notify your caller ID.

Presetting for all calls	Use the Set Notification to set [Notify]/[Not notify] (P.44).
Setting in the Phonebook	Add "186/184" to the recipient's phone number when you save it in the Phonebook (P.92).
Setting when you place a call	Set [Call with ID]/[Call with no ID] from the Call menu after dialing a recipient's phone number (P.53). Enter "186/184" before dialing a recipient's phone number (P.48).

[Prefix], [Int'l call], or [Country code] of the Call menu cannot be selected if a phone number you dialed exceeds 80 digits when the call method is added.

The caller ID is displayed on the recipient's phone if it is equipped with the function for displaying this ID, such as a digital mobile phone.

When you place a call by pressing  after dialing a phone number with "186/184", the phone number is saved in the Redial record with "186/184".

## Placing a Call by Specifying a Condition

When you place a call, you can select a call type and call condition from the Call menu, for example, whether to notify a recipient of your phone number.

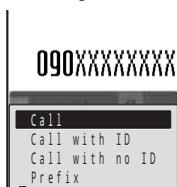
Example: Placing a voice call

- 1** Enter a phone number in the stand-by display and press  (Call).



- [Voice call] : Select a call condition for a voice call.
- [Videophone] : Select an image to be sent (My side/Substitute image/Select sub image), the communication speed (64K/32K) to be used, and a call condition when you place a videophone call.
- [PushTalk] : Select whether to notify your phone number when you originate a PushTalk call.

- 2** Select [Voice call] and press .



- [Call] : The voice and videophone calls follow the setting of the Set Notification. The PushTalk call follows the setting of the Caller ID.
- [Call with ID] : Your phone number (caller ID) is notified to the recipient.
- [Call with no ID] : Your phone number (caller ID) is not notified to the recipient.
- [Prefix] : Place the voice call with the saved prefix selected (this item appears only when a prefix is saved) (P.54).
- [Int'l call] : Place the voice or videophone call with the saved international access number selected (P.55).
- [Country code] : Place the voice or videophone call with a registered country code selected (P.56).

- 3** Select a call condition and press .

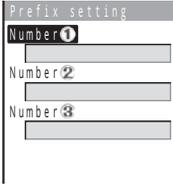
The call is made according to the selected call condition.

If the Multi Number call for Multi Number is set to [ON], the Additional No. selection menu appears after step 1. Select an Additional No. to be used and then go to step 2.

## Setting a Prefix

You can save up to three specific numbers (prefixes) to be added at the beginning of a phone number when you place a call.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Call assist] [Prefix setting] and press .



- 2 Select a number and press .
- The number input display appears.

- 3 Enter a prefix and press  (OK).  
Enter a prefix within 26 digits.

## Placing an International Call

With WORLD CALL, you can place an international call from a DoCoMo mobile phone.

- The users who subscribe to the FOMA services are automatically signed up for the "WORLD CALL" service when the agreement is concluded. (Excluding users who choose to refuse the WORLD CALL service.)
- How to place an international call

+  +  +  +  

You can save the above procedure in the Phonebook of the FOMA terminal.

If an area code begins with "0", omit the "0" when dialing (except when calling ordinary phones, etc. in Italy).

- You can place calls to about 220 countries and regions in the world.
- Charges for this service are billed together with the monthly call charges.
- No application fees or monthly basic charges are required.
- Some charging plans may not be available.
- Change in the dial procedure for international calls.  
Since mobile communications such as mobile phones are beyond the scope of the "MYLINE" service, "MYLINE" service is not available also for WORLD CALL. With the introduction of "MYLINE" service, however, the dial procedure for international calls on mobile phones has been changed. Note that the old dial procedure (excluding "010" from the above mentioned dial procedure) is not available.
- For the WORLD CALL details, call the "General Contact" on the backcover of this manual.
- To use an international call service company other than DoCoMo, contact them directly.
- If you have an overseas specific 3G mobile phone, you can connect to an international videophone by selecting videophone after the above dialing method.

See the NTT DoCoMo website for information about countries to which a videophone call can be connected and telecommunication companies.

A recipient's image displayed on the FOMA terminal may be fuzzy or a call may not be connected successfully depending on the terminal to which the international videophone is connected.

## Setting a Number Other Than WORLD CALL

You can save up to three prefixes or country codes to be added at the beginning of a phone number in order to place an international call. You can also automatically add the number by entering “+” when you place a call.

- At the time of purchase, DoCoMo's “WORLD CALL 009130010” and “Japan +81” are preset as the IDD prefix and Country code, respectively.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Call assist] [Int'l dial] and press .



[Auto assist] : Set whether a number saved as the IDD prefix is automatically added if a phone number begins with a “+” when you place a voice or videophone call.

[IDD prefix] : Save an international access number to be added to the phone number when the Auto assist is set to [Auto]. You can also add an international access number by selecting [Int'l call] from the Call menu.

[Country code] : Save a country code to be added when [Country code] is selected from the Call menu.

**2** Select [Auto]/[OFF] at [Auto assist].

[Auto] : Automatically add an international access number that is preset as the IDD prefix.

[OFF] : Do not automatically add an international access number preset as the IDD prefix.

**3** Select [IDD prefix] and press .

The IDD prefix setting display appears.

**4** Select an input field and press .



**5** Enter a name in the name field and an international access number in the number field.

Enter a name within eight full-width characters or 17 half-width characters and an international access number within 26 digits.

**6** Press  (Complete) and press .

The international access number is saved.

**To set the Auto assist number**

Move the cursor to the input field and press  (Auto). “+” appears to the left of the Auto assist number.

**7** Select [Country code] and press .

The Set country code display appears.

- 8 Select an input field and press .

Country code1
Country Name
日本
Country code
+81

- 9 Enter a country name in the country name field and a country code in the country code field.

Enter a country name within eight full-width characters or 17 half-width characters and a country code within 26 digits.

- 10 Press  (Complete).  
The country code is saved.

## Placing a Call by Specifying a Sub-address

You can set to place a call to a specific phone or communication device by specifying a sub-address.

- The sub-address is also used when you select a content in "V-Live".

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Call assist] [Sub-address] and press .

[ON] : Recognize the numbers after "\*" as a sub-address.

[OFF] : Do not recognize the numbers after "\*" as a sub-address.

- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Sub-address is set.

### To place a call by specifying a sub-address

In the stand-by display, enter a phone number +  + sub-address and press either  or  (V.phone).

Even if the Sub-address is set to ON, "\*" is not recognized as the sub-address separator but as part of a phone number in the following cases: where it is at the beginning of a phone number and immediately after a number entered using Prefix/Int'l call/Country code of the Call menu.

## Setting the Alarm When Reconnecting a Dropped Call

This function automatically reconnects the call interrupted during a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call due to the radio wave condition, such as in a tunnel or between buildings, right after the radio wave condition is recovered. You can set an alarm tone when a call is reconnected.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Call setting] [Recnct ALM] and press .

[High] : Sound the high alarm tone.

[Low] : Sound the low alarm tone.

[OFF] : Do not sound the alarm tone.

- 2 Select the type of the alarm tone and press .

The alarm tone during reconnection is set.

The recipient does not hear any sound while the radio wave is interrupted.

The time required for reconnection depends on the usage and radio wave condition. The average reconnection time is about 10 seconds.

The caller is charged for the time spent for reconnection (max. 10 seconds).

## Improving Voice Clarity by Suppressing Background Noise

You can suppress background noise during a voice or videophone call or during playing back an answering message set for the record message (Reduce noise).

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Call quality] [Reduce noise] and press .

- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Reduce noise is set.

## Talking Hands-free While Driving

You can place or receive a voice call using a hands-free device by connecting the FOMA terminal to a device such as the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) or car navigation system. For details about the operation of the hands-free device, see the user's manual of the device. When you use the In-car Hands-free Kit, you need the FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional).

The incoming call display and ring tone operation follow the FOMA terminal settings.

When a setting is made for hearing sound from the hands-free device, a ring tone sounds from the hands-free device even if the FOMA terminal is set to the Manner mode or its Ring volume is set to [OFF].

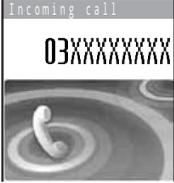
Even if you connect the FOMA terminal to a hands-free device, the Public mode (Driving mode) and Record message function operate normally.

If you connect a commercially available car adapter instead of the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01, "☎" may appear.

# Receiving a Call

When you receive a call, you are notified by flashing indicator, ring tone, vibrator, etc. The operation for an incoming call varies depending on the settings of the Incoming set, Manner mode, etc.

## 1 When receiving a call, press .



A phone number appears in the display when a caller sends it.

### When the caller's information is saved in the Phonebook

The name and phone number of a caller are displayed. If you saved the same phone number for several names in the Phonebook, the name stored using the smallest memory number is displayed. The Des phone tone, Call image, and Select phone Illum. saved in the Phonebook are used.

### When the caller's phone number is not displayed

The reason appears when the caller's phone number is not displayed.

Non-display reason	Description
User unset	When a call is received from a caller who does not notify the caller's phone number intentionally.
PublicPhone	When a call is received from a public phone, etc.
Unavailable	When a call is received from a caller that cannot notify the caller's phone number, such as from overseas and from an ordinary phone through call forwarding services (however, the caller's phone number may be displayed depending on the intermediary telephone company).

### To connect a call to the Voice Mail Service Center

From the Function menu, select [FWD to Voice Mail].

### To forward a call to a forwarding number

From the Function menu, select [Call Forwarding].

### To reject a call

From the Function menu, select [Call Rejection].

## 2 Press to hang up.

You can answer a call by pressing  (Call) instead of . When you set the Any key answer to [ON], you can also press  to , , or  to answer a call (P.59).

You may hear beeps (ring tone during a call) while talking on the FOMA terminal. If [Answer] is set for the Arrival Call Act with the Voice Mail Service, the Call Forwarding Service, or the Call Waiting Service subscribed, the beeps (the ring tone during a call) sound and the following operations are available when there is another incoming call during a call:

- <Contents of subscription>
- The Voice Mail Service: Forward a call to the Voice Mail Service Center.
- The Call Forwarding Service: Forward a call to a forwarding number.
- The Call Waiting Service: Put the active call on hold and answer the incoming call.

## Receiving a Call by Switching from Voice Call to Videophone

When a caller switches from a voice call to a videophone call, a recipient can select the image to be sent.

- This function can be used only between terminals that can switch between voice and videophone calls. Preset the V.ph switch notice to [Activate] (P.78).

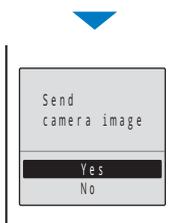
- When the screen for confirming whether to send your own image appears during a voice call, select [Yes] and press .



While the call is switched, an animation is displayed and you hear a guidance notifying you that a call is switched.

[Yes] : Send a camera image to the caller's phone display.

[No] : Send a preinstalled image “テレビ電話 代替” to the caller.



When the call is switched to the videophone call, your image is sent to the caller and the call is switched to the hands-free operation that allows you to hear the caller's voice from the speaker. Even if the Manner mode is set, the hands-free operation is activated.

## Pressing the Keypad to Receive a Call

You can set to answer a call by pressing a keypad key instead of pressing  when you receive a voice or PushTalk call.

- From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Call assist] [Any key ans] and press .

[ON] : Enable to answer a voice or PushTalk call also by pressing  to , , or .

[OFF] : Disable to answer a voice or PushTalk call by pressing  to , , or . To answer a voice call, press  or  (Call) , , or  (Answer) for a PushTalk call).

- Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Any key answer is set.

# Using the Received Record

Up to 30 previously received calls are saved in the Received record with their dates/times, phone numbers, and names. A ring time for a missed call can be checked.

1 Press ( ) in the stand-by display.



Call type  
Phone type

The phone numbers or names appear in descending order from the most recent call. For a PushTalk call, a group name or the first member's name appears. The following icons show the type of the incoming call.

## Call type

	Voice call/voice call (with record message)
	Missed voice call/missed voice call (with record message)
	Videophone/videophone (with videophone message)
	Missed videophone call/missed videophone call (with videophone message)
	64K data communications
	Missed 64K data communications
	PushTalk
	Missed PushTalk
	PushTalk type (to one person)/(to multiple persons)/(PushTalkPlus)
	Multi Number (Basic Number)/(Additional No. 1)/(Additional No. 2)
	International call

## Phone type

	Mobile1		Mobile2		Public phone
	Videophone		Home phone		Office phone
	Home FAX		Office FAX		QUICKCAST

## To display phone numbers

When saved in the Phonebook, the name and phone type of a recipient are displayed instead of the phone number. Press to switch the display temporarily between names and phone numbers. The display is not switched when a group name for a PushTalk call is displayed.

## To place a voice call

Move the cursor to a received record and press .

## To place a videophone call

Move the cursor to a received record and press (V.phone).

## To originate a PushTalk call

Move the cursor to a received record and press .

## To send mail

You can use EV-Link to send mail to a person whose phone number and mail address are saved in the Phonebook.

## To display detailed information of the PushTalk call

Move the cursor to a received record of the PushTalk call () and press (Detail).

## To check a ring time for a missed call

Move the cursor to the received record of a missed call and from the Function menu, select [Ring time].

## To save in a group of the PushTalk phonebook

When you perform PushTalk communications among several persons saved in the PushTalk phonebook, move the cursor to a received record of the PushTalk call () , press (Save), select a group, and press (Complete).

When a caller uses a "Dial-in" phone number, the phone number displayed may be different from the caller's dial-in number.

If the caller switches the call between voice and videophone during a call, the call you received first is saved in the Received record.

A ring time cannot be checked for a missed call with a record message.

You can set not to start the ringing operation immediately for a call from a caller who is not saved in the Phonebook (P.128).

## Deleting the Received Record

The received record is retained even if the FOMA terminal is powered off. If you do not wish others to know the previously received records, delete one or all of the received records.

Example: Deleting a received record

- 1 From the Received record display, select the received record and press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.

### To delete several received records

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete], select received records, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].

### To delete all received records

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2 Select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes] and press .  
The selected received record is deleted.

## Using the Low Voice Feature

You can set the FOMA terminal so that the recipient can hear your voice at a normal volume level even if you speak in low voice during a voice call.

- 1 Press  during a call.



The call is switched to the Whisper mode and the message "Whisper mode" is displayed.

### To cancel the Whisper mode

Press  again.

- When you finish a call, the Whisper mode is canceled automatically.

## Putting a Call on Hold during a Call

The call can be put on hold during a voice or videophone call so that your voice cannot be heard by the recipient.

- Even if the call is put on hold, the caller is charged for the call.

- 1 Press  (Func) during a call, select [Holding], and press .

Both you and the recipient hear the melody "Hamabe no uta". During a videophone call, a preinstalled image "テレビ電話動作中" is sent to the recipient.

### To cancel the Holding

Press .

## Putting a Call on Hold

If you cannot answer a voice or videophone call immediately, you can put the call on hold.

- Even if the answer is put on hold, the caller is charged for the calling charge.

Example: Putting a voice call on hold

### 1 When receiving a call, press .



The beeps sound and the answer is put on hold. While the answer is put on hold, the beeps sound about every 30 seconds.

- The guidance to inform the caller that you are currently unable to answer the call is played back. During a videophone call, a preinstalled image “テレビ電話動作中” is sent to the recipient.
- If you press  while the call is put on hold, the call on hold is disconnected.
- When the Phone volume is [OFF], the beeps do not sound.

### 2 When ready to answer the call, press .

The On hold is canceled and you can talk.

If you have signed up for the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, you can select [FWD to Voice Mail] or [Call Forwarding] from the Function menu while you are receiving a call, in order to use those services.

## Using the Public Mode (Driving Mode)

The Public mode is an automated answering service which takes into account the manners in highly public places. When the Public mode is set, the guidance is played back to inform the caller that you are unable to answer the call because you are driving or in a place where talking on a mobile phone should be avoided (trains, buses, or movie theaters), and then the call is disconnected.

- The Public mode can be set or canceled even if “” is displayed.
- The Public mode cannot be used during data communications.

### 1 Press for over a second in the stand-by display.



The Public mode is set and “” appears.

- When the Manner mode and the Public mode are set simultaneously, the Public mode has priority.

#### To cancel the Public mode

Press  for over a second in the stand-by display. The Public mode is canceled and “” disappears.

## When the Public mode (Driving mode) is set

- Even if there is an incoming call, the ring tone does not sound and you cannot answer it. The notification icon of missed call appears and the call is saved in the Received record. The guidance for the Public mode is played back to inform the caller that you are unable to answer the call because you are driving or in a place where talking on a mobile phone should be avoided (trains, buses, or movie theaters), and then the call is disconnected.
- Even if there is an incoming PushTalk call, you cannot answer it. The notification icon of missed call appears and the call is saved in the Received record. If the received call is PushTalk communications among several persons, the message "Driving" appears in the On PushTalk display of the members.
- The call can be placed normally.
- The following tones do not sound:
  - Ring tone
  - Alarm
  - Schedule alarm
  - Battery alarm
  - Alarm for the Call cost limit
  - i-appli software sound
  - Charge sound

## Operation for an incoming call when Network Services and the Public mode (Driving mode) are set

FOMA terminal's operations for an incoming call while the Public mode is set depend on what Network Services are used, as follows.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
The Voice Mail Service	After the guidance for the Public mode is played back, the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center. 1	The video guidance for the Public mode is not played back and the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center. 2
The Call Forwarding Service 3	After the guidance for the Public mode is played back, the call is forwarded to a forwarding number. 1	The video guidance for the Public mode is not played back and the call is forwarded to a forwarding number. If the forwarding number of the phone does not support a videophone call, the call is disconnected. 4
The Call Waiting Service	After the guidance for the Public mode is played back, the call is disconnected.	After the video guidance for the Public mode is played back, the call is disconnected.
The Nuisance Call Blocking Service	After the guidance is played back to inform the caller that the call is not able to be connected, the call is disconnected if the caller is saved as a nuisance caller.	After the video guidance is played back to inform the caller that the call is not able to be connected, the call is disconnected if the caller is saved as a nuisance caller.
The Caller ID Display Request Service	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• After the caller ID request guidance is played back, the call is disconnected if the caller does not notify his phone number.</li> <li>• After the guidance for the Public mode is played back, the call is disconnected if the caller notifies his phone number.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• After the video guidance for the caller ID request is played back to the caller, the call is disconnected if the caller does not notify his phone number.</li> <li>• After the video guidance for the Public mode is played back to the caller, the call is disconnected if the caller notifies his phone number.</li> </ul>

1 If you set the ring time of the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, the guidance for the Public mode is not played back and the call is not saved in the Received record, either.

2 The received call is not connected to the Voice Mail Service Center but disconnected as of May 2006.

3 You can set whether the guidance is played back to a caller with the "1429" setting of the Call Forwarding Service.

4 If you set the ring time of the Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, a call is not saved in the Received record.

# Using the Public Mode (Power off)

The Public mode (Power off) is an automated answering service which takes into account the manners in highly public places. When the Public mode (Power off) is set, the guidance is played back to inform the caller that you are unable to answer the call because you are in a place where it is required to power off a mobile phone (such as in hospitals, airplanes, and near priority seats in trains), provided that there is an incoming call when the FOMA terminal is powered off, and then the call is disconnected.

**1** Press + .

The Public mode (Power off) is set. (No change appears on the stand-by display.)

**To cancel the Public mode (Power off)**

Press + .

**To check the setting**

Press + .

**When the Public mode (Power off) is set**

- If there is an incoming call when the FOMA terminal is powered off or you are outside of the service area or in a location without the radio wave, the guidance for the Public mode (Power off) is played back to inform the caller that you are unable to answer the call because you are in a place where it is required to power off a mobile phone, and then the call is disconnected.
- You cannot answer an incoming PushTalk call. When you perform PushTalk communications among several persons, "✕Disconnect" appears in the caller's On PushTalk display.

**Operation for an incoming call when Network Services and the Public mode (Power off) are set**

FOMA terminal's operations for an incoming call while the Public mode (Power off) is set depend on what Network Services are used, as follows.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
The Voice Mail Service	After the guidance for the Public mode (Power off) is played back, the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.	The video guidance for the Public mode (Power off) is not played back and the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center. 1
The Call Forwarding Service	After the guidance for the Public mode (Power off) is played back, the call is forwarded to a forwarding number. 2	The video guidance for the Public mode (Power off) is not played back and the call is forwarded to a forwarding number. If the forwarding number of the phone does not support a videophone call, the call is disconnected.
The Nuisance Call Blocking Service	After the guidance is played back to inform the caller that the call is not able to be connected, the call is disconnected if the caller is saved as a nuisance caller.	After the video guidance is played back to inform the caller that the call is not able to be connected, the call is disconnected if the caller is saved as a nuisance caller.
The Caller ID Display Request Service	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• After the caller ID request guidance is played back, the call is disconnected if the caller does not notify his phone number.</li> <li>• After the guidance for the Public mode (Power off) is played back, the call is disconnected if the caller notifies his phone number.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• After the video guidance for the caller ID request is played back to the caller, the call is disconnected if the caller does not notify his phone number.</li> <li>• After the video guidance for the Public mode (Power off) is played back to the caller, the call is disconnected if the caller notifies his phone number.</li> </ul>

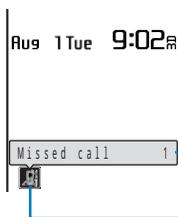
1 The received call is not connected to the Voice Mail Service Center but disconnected as of May 2006.  
 2 You can set whether the guidance is played back to a caller with the "1429" setting of the Call Forwarding Service.

## Checking the Missed Calls

When you are unable to answer an incoming call or receive new mail, the notification icon (P.32) appears in the stand-by display.

If a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call or 64K data communications is not answered, "☎" appears in the stand-by display. The received record shows the date/time and the person who called (P.60).

- 1 Press  (Link) in the stand-by display and select the notification icon.



The text information for the notification icon appears.

**To check the Received record**

Select "☎" (Missed call).

**To delete the notification icon**

Press  for over a second. "☎" also disappears when the Received record is displayed.

Text information  
Notification icon

## Recording Caller's Voice/Video Messages When Unable to Answer Calls

When the Record message is set, the FOMA terminal can play back an answering message and record a caller's voice message when you are unable to answer a call. When you are unable to answer a videophone call, the answering message and image is played back to the caller and the caller's voice message and image are recorded.

- The FOMA terminal can record up to three record messages and videophone messages, each for up to about 15 seconds. If three record messages have been recorded, the Record message does not function. Similarly, when three videophone messages have been recorded, the Videophone message does not function. Delete unnecessary record messages or videophone messages.
- When the Public mode (Driving mode) is set, the Record message/Videophone message does not operate.

- 1 Press  for over a second in the stand-by display.



The Record message/Videophone message is set and "☎"/"☎" appears.

**To cancel the Record message/Videophone message**

Press  for over a second in the stand-by display. The Record message/Videophone message is canceled.

It is recommended that you make a separate note of the recorded voice message.

The data may be lost as a result of malfunction, repair, change, or other handling of the FOMA terminal. Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the FOMA terminal.

When you are outside of the service area, the Record message does not function. Use the Voice Mail Service (Paid).

## When Receiving a Call



The answering message is played back to the caller after the ring tone sounds for the set duration.

### To talk to the caller

Press .

### When you receive a videophone call

The answering message is played back and the answering image is displayed to the caller. Press  (V.phone) to talk to the caller. If you press  (Sub), you can answer the call with a substitute image.



The notification icon "" (New Record msg) or "" (New V.phone msg) appears in the stand-by display.

### To display the text information

Press  (Link) in the stand-by display and move the cursor to "" or ".

### To play back a record message/videophone message

Press  (Link) in the stand-by display and select "" or ".

### To delete the notification icon

Press  for over a second. "" or "" also disappears by playing back the record message/videophone message.

Notification icon

Text information

## Setting the Operation of the Record Message

- 1 Press **[X/E▶]** in the stand-by display, select [Set rec msg], and press **[OK]**.



- 2 Enter the time before starting the answering message at [To answer].  
Enter from 000 to 120 seconds.
- 3 Select an image to be sent when answering a call from My picture of the Data box at [Answer img(V.phone)].
  - You can set a GIF or JPEG image not exceeding 500K bytes in file size and [QCIF(176 × 144)] in image size. You cannot set an image with file restrictions or a frame image.
- 4 Select an image to be sent when recording the caller's image from My picture of the Data box at [Record img(V.phone)].
  - You can set a GIF or JPEG image not exceeding 500K bytes in file size and [QCIF(176 × 144)] in image size. You cannot set an image with file restrictions or a frame image.
- 5 Press **[END]** (Complete).  
The operation of the Record message is set.

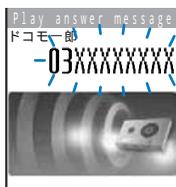
When the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service and the Record message are set simultaneously, and if you want to give priority to the Record message, set the time before starting the answering message for the Record message shorter than the ring time for the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service.

## Recording a Caller's Message When Unable to Answer a Call Just Receiving

You can start the Record message for temporary use when you receive a voice or videophone call even if the Record message is [OFF] (Quick record message).

- If three record messages are recorded when the FOMA terminal receives a voice call, the Quick record message function does not operate. Similarly, if three videophone messages are recorded when it receives a videophone call, the Quick record message function does not operate.

- 1 Press **[X/E▶]** while receiving a call.



The answering message is played back to the caller.

**To talk to a caller**

Press **[END]**.

**When you receive a videophone call**

The answering message is played back and the answering image is displayed to the caller. Press **[chwy]** (V.phone) to talk to the caller. If you press **[Sub]** (Sub), you can answer the call with a substitute image.

## Playing Back/Deleting a Record Message/Voice Memo

You can play back or delete a recorded record message/videophone message and voice memo (P.272).

### Playing Back a Record Message/Voice Memo

Example: Playing back a record message

- 1 Press **[xM▶]** in the stand-by display, select [Play rec msg], and press **[▶]**.



#### To play back a videophone message

Press **[xM▶]** in the stand-by display and select [Play Vphone msg].

#### To play back a voice memo

Press **[xM▶]** in the stand-by display and select [Play voice memo].

#### To display phone numbers

When saved in the Phonebook, the name and phone type of a caller are displayed instead of the phone number. Press **[#\*→]** to switch the display temporarily between names and phone numbers. The display is not switched when a voice memo is displayed.

- 2 Select a record message and press **[▶]** (Play).



The record message is played back.

#### To stop the playback

Press **[▶]** (Stop).

#### To play back the previous/next record message

Press **[◀]** during playback to play back the previous record message and **[▶]** during playback to play back the next record message.

### Deleting a Record Message/Voice Memo

You can record up to three record messages, three videophone messages, and three voice memos. Delete unnecessary record/videophone messages or voice memos.

Example: Deleting a record message

- 1 Press **[xM▶]** in the stand-by display, select [Play rec msg], and press **[▶]**.

#### To delete a videophone message

Press **[xM▶]** in the stand-by display and select [Play Vphone msg].

#### To delete a voice memo

Press **[xM▶]** in the stand-by display and select [Play voice memo].

#### To delete all record messages

From the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2 Select a record message and press **[☑]** (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 3 Select [Delete one] [Yes] and press **[▶]**.

The selected record message is deleted.

# Placing/Receiving Videophone Calls

What is Videophone? .....	70
Placing a Videophone Call .....	71
Receiving a Videophone Call .....	74
Using Chara-den .....	75
Setting the Videophone Operation .....	<Videophone setting> 76
Setting Notice for Switching between Voice and Videophone Calls ..	<Videophone switch notice> 78

The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

## What is Videophone?

You can use the videophone function between DoCoMo videophone compatible terminals. You can use videophone to talk to the recipient/caller while looking at each other's image. You can send a still image, substitute image, or Chara-den character instead of your own. DoCoMo's videophone complies with the 3G-324M <sup>2</sup> standard of the 3GPP <sup>1</sup> global standard. The FOMA terminal cannot be connected to a videophone that uses a different system.

### 1 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)

Local standardization committee set up for development of common technology specifications related to third-generation mobile wireless communication systems (IMT-2000).

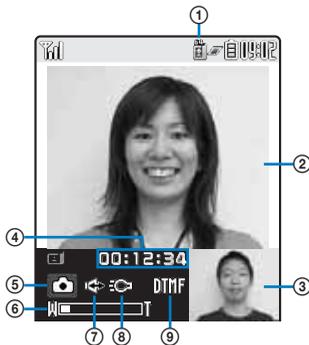
### 2 3G-324M

Global standard for third-generation mobile videophones.

### • Videophones use two types of communication speeds:

- 64K : Sends data at the speed of 64K bps.
- 32K : Sends data at the speed of 32K bps.

## Using the Display during a Videophone Call



### ① During a videophone call

: 64K    : 32K

### ② Videophone image (Large)

Display an image of a person you are talking to (default setting).

### ③ Videophone image (Small)

Display your image (default setting).

### ④ Call duration

Display the call duration in the hh:mm:ss format.

### ⑤ Outgoing image status

: Camera image is being sent.

: A still image is being sent.

: A Chara-den character is being sent.

### ⑥ Zoom magnification

Display the zoom magnification bar.

### ⑦ : Hands-free ON

### ⑧ : Photo light ON

### ⑨ Mode

: Mode for operating full-body actions

: Mode for operating parts actions

: Mode for sending touch-tones (DTMF)

## Operations during a Videophone Call

Operation	Key operation
Switch between camera image/substitute image	Press  (MySide/Sub). Every time you press the key, the display is switched between camera image/substitute image.
Switch cameras	Press  (In/Out). Every time you press the key, the camera is switched between the In-/Out-camera.
Switch ON/OFF of the hands-free operation	Press  . Every time you press the key, the ON/OFF setting is switched.
Zoom-in/-out image	Press  (Zoom in)/  (Zoom out).
Put a call on hold	From the Function menu, select [Holding]. To cancel this function, press  .
Switch the display	From the Function menu, select [Display setting].
Switch the quality of the outgoing image	From the Function menu, select [Visual preference]. When you finish a call, the image quality set for the Visual preference of the Videophone setting is restored.
Select a substitute image	From the Function menu, select [Select sub image].
Switch ON/OFF of the photo light	From the Function menu, select [Photo light] (when using the Out-camera only).
Display your phone number	From the Function menu, select [Own number].
Switch to a voice call	From the Function menu, select [Chg. to voice call] (when placing a videophone call only).

## Placing a Videophone Call

- 1 Enter a phone number in the stand-by display.
- 2 Press  (V.phone).



A ringing sound is heard when the call is connected.

When the call is answered, your image is sent to the recipient and the call is switched to the hands-free operation that allows you to hear the recipient's voice from the speaker.

- 3 Press  to hang up.

If you enter a phone number, press  (Call), and select [Videophone] from the Call menu, you can place a videophone call by specifying an image to be sent and communication speed.

You may not be able to place a videophone call while another function is being executed.

You are charged for digital communications even if you send a substitute image during a call.

If the videophone call is not connected, the following messages (text information) appear on the display and the stand-by display reappears automatically. The displayed message may not correctly represent the status of the recipient depending on the type of the phone of the recipient or whether the recipient has subscribed to any Network Service.

Message	Description
Check number, then redial	The phone number is no longer in use.
Busy	The recipient is talking on the phone or using packet communications.
Outside of service area/power off	The recipient is in a place where radio waves do not reach or the phone is powered off.
Set Caller ID to ON	This message appears when the call was connected without a Caller ID (When a call is made to V-Live, Visual Net, or other sites.).
Please try voice call	This message appears when the Call Forwarding Service is set on the recipient's phone and the terminal to which the call was forwarded is not equipped with the videophone function.
Connection failed	This message appears when none of the above reasons apply.

This message is also displayed when the Voice Mail Service is set on the recipient's phone as of May 2006.

Videophone at 32K is intended for connection to a device such as a PHS that cannot use videophone at 64K because of network restrictions. Even when you place a videophone call using 64K to a recipient who has a 32K communication environment, the FOMA terminal automatically switches to 32K and redial the call.

Even when you connect videophone using 32K, you are charged for 64K digital communications.

If a videophone call is not connected, the FOMA terminal automatically switches to 32K or voice call and redials the call.

	Auto redial(voice) [ON]	Auto redial(voice) [OFF]
No connection for videophone call using 64K	Redial using 32K.	Redial using 32K.
No connection for videophone call using 32K	Redial using voice call.	Do not redial a call.

If you use the FOMA terminal to place a videophone call to emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118), it automatically switches to voice call dialing.

You cannot place a voice call or another videophone call during a videophone call. You cannot receive i-mode mail and Message R/F, either. To receive these mail or messages, use the Check new messages function after you finish the videophone call.

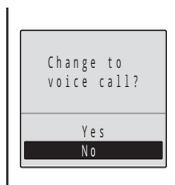
When you place a videophone call to a terminal that is not equipped with a videophone function, or when a recipient is outside of the service area or the phone is powered off (even if his terminal has the videophone function), your call is not connected. When you place a videophone call to a terminal that is not equipped with a videophone function and the Auto redial(voice) is set to [ON], the recipient's terminal disconnects your videophone call before it is connected, and the FOMA terminal redials the call as a voice call. If, however, you dial a wrong number such as an ISDN synchronous 64K bps or PIAFS access points, or ISDN videophone that is not 3G-324M (as of June 2006) compatible, the above operations may not take place. Note also that you may be charged for the call.

## Switching from Videophone Call to Voice Call

A videophone caller can switch to voice call during a videophone call.

- This function can be used only between terminals that can switch between voice and videophone calls. A recipient must preset the V.ph switch notice to [Activate] (P.78).

**1** Press  (Func) during a videophone call, select [Chg. to voice call], and press .



[Yes] : Switch the call from videophone call to voice call.

[No] : Return to the videophone call without switching the call.

**2** Select [Yes] and press .



While the call is switched, an animation is displayed and you hear a guidance notifying you that a call is switched.

When the call is switched to the voice call, the hands-free operation is switched to [OFF].

The switching operation takes about five seconds. It may take time depending on the radio wave condition.

The videophone call may not be able to be switched to the voice call in some radio wave condition, and the phone may be disconnected.

You are not charged while "Chg. to voice call" is displayed.

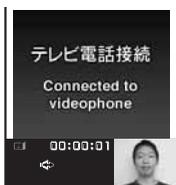
Every time you switch, the call duration starts from 0 seconds.

You can also switch the call from voice call to videophone call. The call can be switched repeatedly between videophone and voice calls.

## Receiving a Videophone Call

When you receive a videophone call, you are notified by flashing indicator, ring tone, vibrator, etc. The operation for an incoming call varies depending on the settings of the Incoming set, Manner mode, etc.

### 1 When you receive a videophone call, press or (V.phone).



When the call is answered, your image is sent to the caller and the call is switched to the hands-free operation that allows you to hear the caller's voice from the speaker.

A phone number appears in the display when a caller sends it.

#### When the caller's information is saved in the Phonebook

The name and phone number of a caller are displayed. If you saved the same phone number for several names in the Phonebook, the name stored using the smallest memory number is displayed. The Des phone tone, Call image, and Select phone Illum. saved in the Phonebook are used.

#### When the caller's phone number is not displayed

The reason appears when the caller's phone number is not displayed.

Non-display reason	Description
User unset	When a call is received from a caller who does not notify the caller's phone number intentionally.
PublicPhone	When a call is received from a public phone, etc.
Unavailable	When a call is received from a caller that cannot notify the caller's phone number, such as from overseas and from an ordinary phone through call forwarding services (however, the caller's phone number may be displayed depending on the intermediary telephone company).

#### To use a substitute image when you receive a videophone call

Press  (Sub).

#### To forward a call to a forwarding number

From the Function menu, select [Call Forwarding].

#### To reject a call

From the Function menu, select [Call Rejection].

### 2 Press to hang up.

If you receive a videophone call while the Manner mode is set, a screen appears to confirm whether the hands-free operation is set to ON. If you do not want to use the hands-free operation, select [No].

You can preset the hands-free function of a videophone call to [OFF] (P.77).

Depending on the Network Service you subscribe to, such as the Call Waiting Service, you can disconnect the current voice call to answer a videophone call when you receive it during a voice call.

## Receiving a Call after Switching from Videophone Call to Voice Call

When a videophone caller switches from a videophone call to voice call, the recipient's phone automatically switches to a voice call.

- This function can be used only between terminals that can switch between voice and videophone calls. Preset the V.ph switch notice to [Activate] (P.78).



While the call is switched, an animation is displayed and you hear a guidance notifying you that the call is switched.

When the call is switched to the voice call, the hands-free operation is switched to [OFF].

## Using Chara-den

When you place a videophone call, you can send a character instead of a camera image. You can press keys on the keypad to move a character or some character's mouth to correspond to the voice on the microphone.

- For details about the action lists of the preinstalled Chara-den characters, see P.249.

- 1 Press (▲) (⏏) in the stand-by display, select [Chara-den], and press (▶).  
The Chara-den list appears.
- 2 Select a Chara-den file, press (✉) (Func), select [Call Chara-den], and press (▶).  
The screen for selecting the method of entering the phone number appears.
- 3 Select the method, press (▶), and enter the phone number.
- 4 Press (V.ph) (V.phone).



©BVIG

The videophone call is placed with a Chara-den character set as the substitute image.

**To switch between the full-body action and parts action modes**

Press (Change).

**To display the action list**

Press (List).

**To switch to the mode for sending touch-tones (DTMF)**

From the Function menu, select [DTMF send mode].

**To switch to the Chara-den action operating mode**

From the Function menu, select [Action input mode].

# Setting the Videophone Operation

## Setting the Display to Be Used in a Videophone Call

You can set the image to be displayed on the videophone images (Large) and (Small) during a videophone call.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Videophone] [Display setting] and press .

[Main-Other side] : Display the recipient's/caller's image on the videophone image (Large) and your image on the videophone image (Small).

[Main-My side] : Display your image on the videophone image (Large) and the recipient's/caller's image on the videophone image (Small).

[Other side only] : Display the recipient's/caller's image only on the videophone image (Large).

[My side only] : Display your image only on the videophone image (Large).

- 2 Select a display method and press .

The Display setting is set.

## Setting a Video to Be Sent to the Recipient/Caller

You can set whether to send a camera image to the recipient when you place a videophone call. You can also set an image from either My picture or Chara-den as a substitute image if you do not want to send a camera image.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Videophone] [Set outgoing image] and press .



- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Camera image].

[ON] : Send a camera image to the recipient when you place a videophone call.

[OFF] : Send a substitute image to the recipient when you place a videophone call.

- 3 Select a substitute image from My picture/Chara-den of the Data box at [Substitute image].

- You can set a GIF or JPEG image not exceeding 500K bytes in file size and [QCIF(176 × 144)] in image size from My picture, or a Chara-den file from Chara-den. You cannot set an image with file restrictions or a frame image.

The Set outgoing image is set.

## Setting the Videophone Image Quality

You can set the quality of an image to be sent to the recipient.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Videophone] [Visual preference] and press .

[Prefer img qual] : Send an image with priority on image quality.

[Normal] : Send an image by keeping a balance between image quality and movement.

[Prefer motion] : Send an image with priority on movement.

- 2 Select the quality of an image to be sent and press .

The Visual preference is set.

## Redialing by Voice Call When the Videophone Is Not Connected

When the videophone call is not connected, the FOMA terminal automatically redials by voice call. When the videophone call is connected successfully, the FOMA terminal does not redial by voice call.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Videophone] [Auto redial(voice)] and press .

- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Auto redial(voice) is set.

You are charged for a call instead of digital communications when you redial by voice call.

## Using the Hands-free Function

You can set whether to use the hands-free function automatically when a videophone call is connected.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Videophone] [Hands-free] and press .

- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Hands-free is set.

When you connect the Flat-Plug Switched Earphone Mic (optional), you can talk on the phone using this Earphone Mic regardless of the setting of the hands-free function.

## Setting Notice for Switching between Voice and Videophone Calls

You can set whether to notify the recipient/caller that the FOMA terminal is capable of switching between voice and videophone calls.

- You cannot perform this setting when you are outside of the service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach, or during a voice or videophone call.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] [V.ph switch notice] and press .



**2** Select [Activate] [Yes] and press .

**When you do not want to notify**

Select [Deactivate] [Yes].

**To check the setting**

Select [Check setting].

# PushTalk

What is PushTalk? .....	80
Originating a PushTalk Call .....	82
Receiving a PushTalk Call .....	83
Saving Data in the PushTalk Phonebook .....	83
Originating a PushTalk Call Using the PushTalk Phonebook .....	85
Deleting a PushTalk Phonebook Entry .....	86
Using the PushTalk Phonebook .....	<PushTalkPlus> 87
Setting the PushTalk Operation .....	<PushTalk setting> 87

The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

# What is PushTalk?

You can communicate among several persons (up to five persons including yourself) with a simple operation of pressing **(P)** for over a second to display the PushTalk phonebook, selecting recipients, and pressing **(P)**. Every time you press **(P)** and speak, you are charged for PushTalk communications.

You can speak while you press and hold **(P)**, and the rest of the members can only listen while you are speaking.

You can confirm the status of members, such as who is now speaking, on the display. The PushTalk function is useful for exchanging brief information within a group.

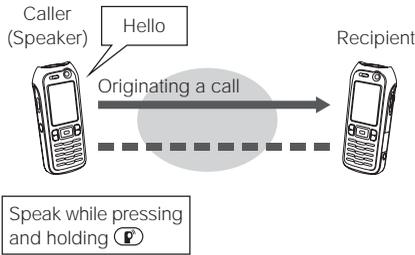
For details about the PushTalk Service, see the PushTalk Guide.

- Compatible models: 902i series, 902iS series, P702i

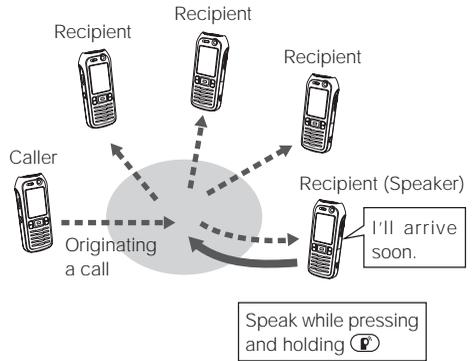
PushTalk

What is PushTalk?

## Conversation between two persons



## Conversation among several persons

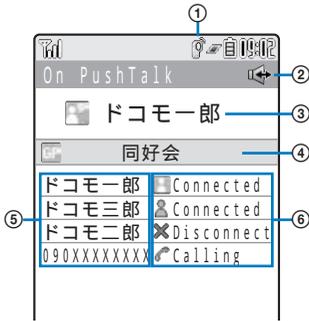


## PushTalkPlus

PushTalkPlus is a service that allows you to communicate simultaneously with up to 20 persons (including yourself) using the pre-saved phonebook on the network. This service also allows you to check the status of members and has made the PushTalk Service even more convenient. You need additional subscription to use PushTalkPlus.

For details about the PushTalkPlus operations, see the guidebook that is provided at the time of subscription to the service.

## Using the Display during PushTalk Communications



- ① : During PushTalk communications
  - ② : Hands-free ON
  - ③ Active speaker  
The phone number/name (when the speaker is saved in the Phonebook) appears  
[Myself] : You are currently the active speaker (you can speak)  
[User unset] : The Caller ID of the caller is set to [OFF]  
[?] : The active speaker is not identified  
(No indication) : There is no active speaker (open status)
  - ④ Group name  
Displayed only on the display of the caller who originated a call using a group
  - ⑤ Members  
The phone number/name (when the speaker is saved in the Phonebook) appears  
[User unset] : The Caller ID of the caller is set to [OFF]
  - ⑥ Communication status
    - Connected : The caller who originated a PushTalk call
    - Connected : Currently participating in the PushTalk communications
    - Calling : The recipient's terminal is ringing
    - Disconnect : The recipient ended the PushTalk session, does not answer the call, or is outside of the service area. Otherwise the recipient's terminal is powered off
    - Driving : Public mode (Driving mode) is set
- These icons appear only when PushTalk communications is performed among several persons.

## Operations during PushTalk Communications

Operation	Key operation
Speak	When the floor is open, press . You can speak only while you press and hold . While another member has the floor, you cannot get it even if you press .
Display other members	Press  (Member )/  (Member ).
Switch ON/OFF of the hands-free operation	Press . Every time you press the key, the ON/OFF setting is switched.
Adjust the volume of the caller's voice	Press  .
Terminate a PushTalk call	Press .
Receive a voice call	Press  (P.58). If you receive a voice call, the PushTalk communications is terminated. The operation for an incoming voice call while using PushTalk can be customized (P.88).

Each speech session granted by obtaining the floor is time limited. The obtained floor is released after the time limit. The PushTalk communications is terminated when the caller who originated it disconnects the call or if no other member takes over the floor within a certain interval.

When there is any change in PushTalk communications status or a member takes over the floor, the sound effect is heard.

You cannot use i-mode during PushTalk communications.

If you receive a voice call or the time set for the Alarm/Schedule alarm is reached while you are speaking in a PushTalk session, the floor you obtained is released.

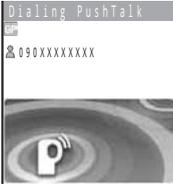
When you receive a videophone call, data communications, or a PushTalk call during PushTalk communications, a new call is saved in the Received record and the current PushTalk call is continued.

# Originating a PushTalk Call

- You cannot originate a PushTalk call during a voice call, a videophone call, or data communications.
- If you originate a PushTalk call during i-mode communications, the i-mode communications is terminated. Originating a PushTalk call while running i-αpli also stops the i-αpli.

**1** Enter a phone number in the stand-by display.

**2** Press **(P)**.



When a PushTalk call is originated, the sound effect is heard.



**To speak**

Press **(P)** while the floor is open. You can speak while you press and hold **(P)**.

**3** Press **(END)** to end the communications.

You cannot use PushTalk to place a call to emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118).

You can originate a PushTalk call after specifying whether the phone numbers are notified by entering a phone number, pressing **(CALL)**, and selecting [PushTalk] from the Call menu.

# Originating a PushTalk Call from the Call Record

You can originate a PushTalk call using the Redial and Received records.

Example: Originating a PushTalk call from the Received record

**1** Press **(←)** **(+)** in the stand-by display.

The Received record display appears.

**2** Select a received record and press **(P)**.



When a PushTalk call is originated, the sound effect is heard.

If a member other than the caller is disconnected during a PushTalk communications session among several persons, the disconnected member can come back to the session using the Received record as long as the other members continue it.

## Receiving a PushTalk Call

When you receive a PushTalk call, you are notified by flashing indicator, ring tone, vibrator, etc. The operation for an incoming PushTalk call varies depending on the settings of the Incoming set, Manner mode, etc.

- If you receive a PushTalk call during a voice call, the PushTalk call is not connected. The notification icon of missed call appears and the call is saved in the Received record. A PushTalk call received during a videophone call or data communications is not connected, either. The call is not saved in the Received record.
- When receiving a PushTalk call during i-mode communications, the setting for the i-mode Arrival Act is applied.

### 1 When you receive a PushTalk call, press or .



When you do not want to answer the call

Press .



The names of the members appear. If the member is not saved in the Phonebook, this member's phone number appears instead.

- When a PushTalk caller sets the caller ID to be notified, the names/phone numbers of all members are displayed. If the caller sets the caller ID not to be notified, all members are displayed as "User unset".

To speak

Press  while the floor is open. You can speak while you press and hold .

### 2 Press to end the communications.

You can answer a PushTalk call by pressing  (Answer) instead of  or . When you set the Any key answer to [ON], you can also press  to , , or  to answer a PushTalk call (P.59).

A PushTalk call cannot be put on hold.

When you receive a PushTalk call originated from a caller who is saved as a nuisance caller, the call is rejected. The notification icon of missed call appears and the call is saved in the Received record.

## Saving Data in the PushTalk Phonebook

You can save up to 1,000 members in the PushTalk phonebook.

Members you want to save in the PushTalk phonebook must be also saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook. You can save only one phone number in the PushTalk phonebook for each FOMA terminal phonebook entry. The name of a member displayed in the PushTalk phonebook is diverted from that saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

### 1 Press for over a second in the stand-by display and press (Create).

The screen for selecting the saving method appears.

[View phonebook] : Select from the FOMA terminal phonebook.

[Manually] : Save new data in the FOMA terminal phonebook and then save it in the PushTalk phonebook.

- Follow the same steps as in the Add to FOMA terminal phonebook (P.91, step 3 to 20).

- 2 Select [View phonebook] and press .

The FOMA terminal phonebook appears.

- 3 Select an entry a phone number and press .



The phone number is saved in the PushTalk phonebook and "☎" appears in the entry in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

When you save a person saved as Secret in the FOMA terminal phonebook in the PushTalk phonebook, the phone number is displayed instead of the name. To display the name, set the Secret display to [ON].

## Setting a Group

You can originate a PushTalk call to several recipients by saving them in a group as members beforehand.

You can save up to 20 groups in the PushTalk phonebook, 19 members for each group.

- 1 Press  for over a second in the stand-by display and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Group setting] and press .

The Group setting display appears.

### To display group numbers

When saved, group icons are displayed instead of group numbers. Press  to switch the display temporarily between group icons and group numbers.

- 3 Select a group and press .

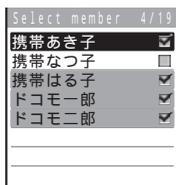


- 4 Enter a group name at [Group name].

Enter a group name within 10 full-width or 21 half-width characters.

- 5 Select a group icon at [Icon].

- 6 Select [Member list] and press .



To cancel all selections

Press  (Rel all).

- 7 Select a member, press , and then press  (Complete).

"✓" appears for the selected member.

- 8 Press  (Complete).

The group is saved in the PushTalk phonebook.

## Originating a PushTalk Call Using the PushTalk Phonebook

If you save persons as members in the PushTalk phonebook, you can originate a PushTalk call to several persons.

- 1 Press  for over a second in the stand-by display, select a member, and press .



"✓" appears for the selected member.

To display phone numbers

Press  to switch the display temporarily between names and phone numbers.

- 2 Press .



When a PushTalk call is originated, the sound effect is heard.



To speak

Press  while the floor is open. You can speak while you press and hold .

- 3 Press  to end the communications.

## Originating a PushTalk Call from the Group

- 1 Press **[P]** for over a second in the stand-by display and press **[▶]**.



### To display group numbers

When saved, group icons are displayed instead of group numbers. Press **[#][\*][▶]** to switch the display temporarily between group icons and group numbers.

- 2 Select a group and press **[P]**.



When a PushTalk call is originated, the sound effect is heard.

### To originate a call to specific members by selecting them from a group

Select a group members and press **[P]**.



### To speak

Press **[P]** while the floor is open. You can speak while you press and hold **[P]**.

- 3 Press **[#][\*][▶]** to end the communications.

When originating a PushTalk call to a group, you can originate a call to up to four members even if more than five members are saved in the group.

## Deleting a PushTalk Phonebook Entry

You can delete members saved in the PushTalk phonebook using three methods.

Example: Deleting a member

- 1 Press **[P]** for over a second in the stand-by display.

### To delete several members

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete], select members, press **[\*][▶]** (Delete), and select [Yes]. Select whether to delete the corresponding entries from the FOMA terminal phonebook.

### To delete all members

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes]. Select whether to delete the corresponding entries from the FOMA terminal phonebook.

### To reset a group to the default setting

Press **[▶]**, move the cursor to a group and from the Function menu, select [Group reset] [Yes].

**2** Select a member and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

**3** Select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes] and press .

The screen for confirming whether to delete the corresponding entry from the FOMA terminal phonebook appears.

**4** Select [Yes]/[No] and press .

The selected member is deleted.

## Using the PushTalk Phonebook

You can connect to the network and use the PushTalkPlus service (P.80).

- To use the PushTalkPlus service, you must subscribe to this service.

**1** Press  for over a second in the stand-by display and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

**2** Select [NW connection] [Yes] and press .

The call is connected to the network.

## Setting the PushTalk Operation

### Setting Whether to Answer a Call Automatically

You can set whether to answer an incoming PushTalk call automatically using the hands-free function.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] [Application] [PushTalk] [Auto answer setting] and press .

[ON] : A PushTalk call you receive is answered automatically using the hands-free function. When the Manner mode is set, the call is not answered automatically.

[OFF] : A PushTalk call you receive is answered by pressing , , etc.

**2** Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Auto answer setting is set.

## Setting the Ring Time

If you select [OFF] for the Auto answer setting, set the ring time of the PushTalk call.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Application] [PushTalk] [Set ring time] and press .

Enter the ring time within 01 to 60 seconds.

- 2 Enter the PushTalk ring time.

The Set ring time is set.

## Sending Your Own and Member's Caller IDs

When originating a PushTalk call, your own and all member's phone numbers can be shown on the recipient's display.

- A phone number is an important personal information. Carefully decide whether you want to notify members of your and member's caller ID.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Application] [PushTalk] [Caller ID] and press .

[ON] : When you originate a PushTalk call, the phone numbers of the caller (yourself) and all the other members are displayed in the incoming call and On PushTalk displays of all the members' terminals.

[OFF] : When you originate a PushTalk call, the caller (yourself) and members are displayed as "User unset".

- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Caller ID is set.

Even if you change the [Caller ID] setting, the [Set Notification] setting is not changed.

If you specify [Call with ID]/[Call with no ID] as a call condition from the Call menu when originating a PushTalk call, the phone numbers of all members including the caller (yourself) or none of the phone numbers are notified to all members depending on which call condition you select (P.53).

If several settings regarding sending the Caller ID are in conflict with each other when you originate a PushTalk call, the following priority is applied.

1. Call condition you selected when originating a call
2. Setting for [Caller ID]

## Setting Whether to Receive a Voice Call during a PushTalk Call

You can set the operation to be performed by the FOMA terminal when you receive a voice call during a PushTalk call.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Application] [PushTalk] [P-Talk Arrival Act] and press .

[Answer] : Receive a voice call. If you receive a voice call while you have the floor, you lose the floor.

[Call Rejection] : Reject an incoming call.

[Voice Mail] : Connect to the Voice Mail Service Center.

[Call Forwarding] : Connect to a forwarding number set in the Call Forwarding Service.

- 2 Select the operation to be performed when you receive a voice call during a PushTalk call and press .

The P-Talk Arrival Act is set.

# Phonebook

Phonebooks the FOMA Terminal Can Use .....	90
Saving an Entry in the FOMA Terminal Phonebook .....	<Add to FOMA terminal phonebook> 91
Saving an Entry in the UIM Phonebook .....	<Add to UIM phonebook> 94
Saving the Redial/Received Record in the Phonebook .....	95
Saving a Group .....	<Group setting> 96
Displaying the Phonebook .....	97
Searching the Phonebook .....	<Search phonebook> 98
Setting the Display of the Phonebook .....	<Phonebook setting> 98
Editing a Phonebook Entry .....	<Edit phonebook> 99
Deleting a Phonebook Entry .....	<Delete phonebook> 99
Checking the Number of Entries Saved .....	<Memory status> 100
Dialing Quickly to Frequently Called Numbers .....	<2-touch dial> 100

The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

## Phonebooks the FOMA Terminal Can Use

The FOMA terminal can use the FOMA terminal phonebook, UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, and PushTalk phonebook.

The tables below indicate the data you can save in each Phonebook.

### Saved data in the FOMA terminal and UIM phonebooks

: Can be saved    × : Cannot be saved

		FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM phonebook
Individual setting items	Name	(Required)	(Required)
	Reading (When a name is entered using Japanese letters.)		
	Group	0 to 19	0 to 10
	Memory number	0 to 999	×
	Phone number	3 entries	1 entry
	Phone number type icon		×
	E-mail address	3 entries	1 entry
	E-mail address type icon		×
	Secret code		×
	Other data (Postal code, Address, Birthday, Call image, Chara-den, Des phone tone, Des mail tone, Select phone Illum., Select mail Illum., and Secret)		×
Group setting items	Group name		
	Group icon		×
	Other data (Call image, Des phone tone, Des mail tone, Select phone Illum., and Select mail Illum.)		×

### Saved data in the PushTalk phonebook

When you save data in the PushTalk phonebook, it is also saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook. You can save only one phone number in the PushTalk phonebook for each FOMA terminal phonebook entry. The name of a member displayed in the PushTalk phonebook is diverted from that saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

The table below indicates the data you can save in the PushTalk phonebook only.

Individual setting items	Member name	(Shared with the FOMA terminal phonebook)
	Phone number	1 entry (Shared with the FOMA terminal phonebook)
	Secret	(Shared with the FOMA terminal phonebook)
Group setting items	Group name	
	Group icon	
	Member list	19 entries

When you receive a call to an Additional No. for the Multi Number, the ring tone set in the Number Setting (P.283) sounds. When the Des phone/mail tone, Call image, or Select phone/mail Illum. is set for both the Phonebook and Group setting, the setting for the Phonebook has higher priority. However, when you set an i-motion with video and sound tracks for the Des phone/mail tone for the Group setting, it may have priority.

When you receive a call or mail from a person saved as Secret, the regular ring tone, incoming image and illumination color are used, and a name of the caller/sender is not displayed. To enable the settings of a person saved as Secret or a group that includes a person saved as Secret, set the Secret display to [ON].

It is recommended that you make a separate note of the data saved in the Phonebook or make a backup copy of it using the "Memory Stick Duo" (P.251). If you have a PC, you can also save data in your PC using Data Link Software (P.317) and a USB cable (optional).

The saved data may be lost as a result of malfunction, repair, change, or other handling of the FOMA terminal. Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the Phonebook, etc.

The following data can be copied to a new mobile phone at our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.) when you change the models: "name", "reading", "1st phone number", "Group setting", "1st mail address", and "settings for the Secret". Note that some data of the FOMA terminal may not be copied depending on the specifications of the new model.

## Saving an Entry in the FOMA Terminal Phonebook

Up to 1,000 entries can be saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- 1 Press  () in the stand-by display and press  (Create).
- 2 Select [Main memory] and press .



To save an entry in the UIM phonebook  
 Select [UIM] (P.94).

- 3 Enter a name at [].  
 Enter a name within 16 full-width or 32 half-width characters.
- 4 Check the reading at [].  
 When entering a name, the reading is automatically entered.  
 To edit the reading  
 Select [] and enter the reading within 32 half-width characters.
- 5 Select a group at [].  
 When entering a name, phone number or mail address, group  is automatically entered.
- 6 Enter a memory number at [].  
 Enter from 000 to 999.  
 When entering a name, phone number or mail address, the smallest available memory number is automatically entered.

## 7 Enter a phone number at .

Up to three entries are available. Enter each entry within 26 digits.

- You can save the pause (P), timer (T), "+", "#", and sub-address separator (\*).
- If a phone number is saved with the "184" or "186" prefix, SMS cannot be sent to this phone number even if you select it.

## 8 Select a phone number type icon at .

When entering a phone number,  Public] is automatically entered.

## 9 Enter a mail address at .

Up to three entries are available. Enter each entry within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters.

- When sending mail to an i-mode terminal (including Mova), you need to specify only the mail address portion before the @ mark.

## 10 Select a mail address type icon at .

When you enter a mail address,  Mobile1] is automatically entered.

## 11 Enter the Secret code for the mail address at .

Enter the specified Secret code (P.188) when the recipient saves it. The Secret code is used when sending mail.

- When you save a mail address as "phone number + Secret code@docomo.ne.jp" in the Phonebook, if you save a Secret code, you cannot send mail or reply mail to this address. To avoid this problem, change the mail address to "phone number@docomo.ne.jp" and save a Secret code.
- The Secret code is masked by "\*\*\*\*". Only when the Secret display is set to [ON], it is displayed in numbers.

## 12 Enter a postal code at .

Enter a code within seven half-width digits.

## 13 Enter a postal address at .

Enter an address within 64 full-width or 128 half-width characters.

## 14 Enter a birthday at .

Enter a date within the range from 1900/01/01 to 2050/12/31.

## 15 Select an image for the Call image from My picture of the Data box at .

Select or shoot a call image to be displayed when placing/receiving a call, right after receiving mail and when displaying the individual Phonebook entry.

- You can set a GIF or JPEG image not exceeding 100K bytes in file size and [Stby(320×240)] in image size.
- It may take time to display an image large in size.

### To switch on the camera to record a still image

Select [Camera] and record an image (P.136).

- You can record a still image with an image size of less than or equal to [Stby(320×240)].

### To specify no image

Select [None]. The image saved in the Group setting appears when placing/receiving a call and right after receiving mail. If no image is saved in the Group setting, the image set in the Animation setting (P.110) or Incoming set (P.103) appears.

### To check the image

Move the cursor to an image and press  (Play).

## 16 Select a Chara-den file from Chara-den of the Data box at [ ].

Select a Chara-den character to be sent when placing a videophone call.

### To specify no Chara-den character

Select [None]. A substitute image or your own image set in the Set outgoing image (P.76) is sent.

## 17 Select a ring tone for the Des phone tone from Melody/i-motion of the Data box at [ ].

- You can set a melody in the SMF/MFI format from Melody and an i-motion with sound track only or with video and sound tracks of an image size of [sQCIF(128 × 96)]/[QCIF(176 × 144)] from i-motion.

### To save a ring tone for the Des mail tone

Select [  ] and select a ring tone from Melody/i-motion of the Data box.

### To specify no ring tone

Select [None]. The ring tone saved in the Group setting sounds. If no tone is saved in the Group setting, the ring tone set in the Incoming set (P.102) sounds.

### To mute the ring tone

Select [Silent].

### To check the ring tone

Move the cursor to the ring tone and press  (Play).

## 18 Select an illumination color for the Select phone Illum. at [ ].

When you move the cursor, the indicator flashes accordingly.

### To save an illumination color for the Select mail Illum.

Select [  ] and select an illumination color.

### To specify no illumination color

Select [None]. The indicator flashes in the way saved in the Group setting. If no color is set in the Group setting, the indicator flashes in an illumination color set in the Incoming set (P.103).

## 19 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Secret at [ ].

### To display the entry saved as Secret

Set the Secret display to [ON].

## 20 Press (Complete).

The entered data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

When you set an i-motion with video and sound tracks for the Des phone tone, this i-motion is displayed as the Call image. However, for an i-motion with sound track only (such as an i-motion of singer's sound without video track), the currently set image is displayed as the Call image.

When you set an i-motion with sound track only or a melody in the SMF/MFI format for the Des phone tone, and also set [None] for the Call image, the default image at the time of purchase is displayed as the Call image if you set the i-motion with video and sound tracks for the Ring tone or the Incoming image in the Incoming set.

When you set an i-motion with sound track only for the Des phone tone, and also set [None] for the Call image, the default image at the time of purchase is displayed as the Call image if you set a Flash movie or i-motion with video track only for the Incoming image in the Incoming set.

When you set [None] for the Des phone tone, and also set a GIF/JPEG image for the Call image, the Incoming image set in the Incoming set is displayed as the Call image if you set the i-motion with video and sound tracks for the Ring tone or the Incoming image in the Incoming set.

## Saving an Entry in the UIM Phonebook

Up to 50 entries can be saved in the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook.

**1** Press  () in the stand-by display and press  (Create).

**2** Select [UIM] and press .



To save an entry in the FOMA terminal phonebook  
Select [Main memory] (P.91).

**3** Enter a name at [**NA**].

Enter a name within 10 full-width or 21 half-width characters. If you use a mixture of full-width and half-width characters or half-width katakana characters for the name, the number of characters that you can save is limited to 10 characters.

**4** Check the reading at [**PH**].

When you enter a name, the reading is automatically entered.

To edit the reading

Select [**PH**] and enter the reading within 12 full-width katakana characters or 25 half-width alphanumeric characters. If you use a mixture of full-width and half-width characters for the reading, the number of characters that you can save is limited to 12 characters.

**5** Select a group at [**GP**].

When you enter a name, phone number, or mail address, group [ No Group] is automatically entered.

**6** Enter a phone number at [**PH**].

Enter a phone number within 26 digits (20 digits for some types of UIM).

**7** Enter a mail address at [**MA**].

Enter a mail address within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters. If you use symbols for the mail address, you may not be able to save up to the maximum allowable number of characters.

- When sending mail to an i-mode terminal (including Mova), you need to specify only the mail address portion before the @ mark.

**8** Press  (Complete).

The entered data is saved in the UIM phonebook.

Data copied from the FOMA terminal phonebook or received using a function such as the infrared communications may not be saved correctly.

## Saving the Redial/Received Record in the Phonebook

A phone number saved in the record can be directly added to the Phonebook.

Example: Saving a received record in the FOMA terminal phonebook as a new entry

**1** Press  () in the stand-by display.

To save a number from the redial record

Press  () in the stand-by display.

**2** Select a received record and press  (Save).

The screen for selecting where to save appears.

**3** Select [Ordinary PB] and press .

The screen for selecting how to save to the Phonebook appears.

To save data in the PushTalk phonebook

Select [PushTalk PB] a PushTalk phone number.

**4** Select [New] and press .

The screen for selecting where to save appears.

When you select [Add]

Select an entry to which you want to add from the Phonebook.

**5** Select [Main memory] and press .

The Edit phonebook display appears.

To save to the UIM phonebook

Select [UIM].

**6** Save other items.

- Follow the same steps as in the Add to FOMA terminal phonebook (P.91, step 3 to 19) or in the Add to UIM phonebook (P.94, step 3 to 7).

**7** Press  (Complete).

The entry is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

## Saving a Group

Up to 20 groups can be saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook, and up to 10 groups can be saved in the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook.

- You cannot change [No Group] in the UIM phonebook.

Example: Saving a group in the FOMA terminal phonebook

### 1 Press (Func) in the Phonebook.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Group setting] and press .



#### To display group numbers

When saved, group icons are displayed instead of group numbers. Press  to switch the display temporarily between group icons and group numbers.

### 3 Select a group and press .



### 4 Enter a group name at [].

Enter a group name within 10 full-width or 21 half-width characters. For data in the UIM phonebook, if you use a mixture of full-width and half-width characters or half-width katakana characters for the group name, the number of characters that you can save is limited to 10 characters.

- For data in the UIM phonebook, go to step 7.

### 5 Select a group icon at [.

### 6 Save the Call image, Des phone tone, and Select phone illum.

- Follow the same steps as in the Add to FOMA terminal phonebook (P.92, step 15, 17, and 18).

### 7 Press (Complete).

The group is set.

For information on the priority among ring tones, call images, and incoming indicator colors, see P.104.

# Displaying the Phonebook

You can use the Phonebook to perform various operations.

Example: Displaying the FOMA terminal phonebook

**1** Press  () in the stand-by display.



**To display the UIM phonebook**

Press  (UIM). Every time you press the key, the display switches between the FOMA terminal and UIM phonebooks. “” appears in the UIM phonebook.

**2** Select an entry and press .



**To place a voice call**

Move the cursor to a phone number and press .

**To place a videophone call**

Move the cursor to a phone number and press  (V.phone).

**To originate a PushTalk call**

Move the cursor to a phone number and press .

**To send mail**

Move the cursor to a mail address and press  (Mail).

**To check the Call image**

Move the cursor to the Call image and press  (Play).

**To check a Chara-den character**

Move the cursor to a Chara-den file and press  (Play).

**To check a ring tone**

Move the cursor to a ring tone and press  (Play).

**To check an incoming indicator**

Move the cursor to an incoming indicator and press  (Check).

**To turn on/off the image display**

Press  to temporarily turn on/off an image.

When data is displayed in the Japanese alphabetical order of readings (あかさたな) or in the order of group numbers, you can use the relevant keypad keys to move to each tab page (“あ” to “わ”) or to the beginning of each alphabet page. For example, to go to the “は” tab page, press the key  marked “は”. By pressing  repeatedly, you can move within the “は” tab page in the following order: “は ひ ふ …”. To switch to the “A” or “ETC” tab page, press .

## Searching the Phonebook

The Phonebook can be searched to display up to 100 entries temporarily.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Phonebook.

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Search] and press .



The screenshot shows a menu titled "Search phonebook" with the following options: Name, Memory no., Group, and Phone number. Each option is followed by a blank line for input.

[Name] : Enter the first part of a reading within 32 half-width characters.

For the UIM phonebook, enter within 25 half-width characters.

[Memory no.] : Enter a memory number.

[Group] : Select a group.

[Phone number] : Enter part of a phone number within 26 digits.

To search data in the UIM phonebook

Press  (UIM).

- 3 Select a search method and press , then enter a search key.

The searching result is displayed.

## Setting the Display of the Phonebook

You can set the display style to be used for the Phonebook, font size, and image display ON/OFF setting when a single entry of the Phonebook is displayed.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Phonebook.

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [PB setting] and press .



The screenshot shows a menu titled "Phonebook setting" with the following options: Display style (Alphabet), Font size (L), Set image display (ON), and Save image to M.S. (ON). Each option is followed by a dropdown menu or a selection button.

[Display style] : Select a display style for Phonebook entries when you display the Phonebook.

[Font size] : Select the font size of the Phonebook (P.114).

[Set image display] : Select whether to display the Call image that was saved when a single entry of the Phonebook is displayed.

[Save image to M.S.] : Select whether to save an image that is set to the Call image when all entries are saved in the "Memory Stick Duo".

- 3 Select a display style at [Display style].

[Alphabet] : Display entries in the Japanese alphabetical order (in the order of the Japanese syllabary) of readings () of a name that was saved.

[Group] : Display entries in the order of group numbers.

[Number] : Display entries in the order of memory numbers.

- 4 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Set image display].

- 5 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Save image to M.S.].

The Phonebook setting is set.

## Editing a Phonebook Entry

- 1 From the Phonebook, select an entry and press .
- 2 Press  (Edit).  
The Edit phonebook display appears.
- 3 Edit each item.
  - Follow the same steps as in the Add to FOMA terminal phonebook (P.91, step 3 to 19) or in the Add to UIM phonebook (P.94, step 3 to 7).
- 4 Press  (Complete).  
The edited data is saved in the Phonebook.

## Deleting a Phonebook Entry

You can delete Phonebook entries using three methods.

Example: Deleting an entry

- 1 Press  () in the stand-by display.



### To delete several entries

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete], select entries, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].

### To delete all Phonebook entries

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- [Delete all] must be performed separately for the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook.

- 2 Select an entry and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### When the display style is set to [Group]

Select a group, move the cursor to an entry, and press  (Func).

- 3 Select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes] and press .

The selected entry is deleted.

When an entry to be deleted is also saved in the PushTalk phonebook, it is automatically deleted from the PushTalk phonebook. When you perform [Delete all], the Group setting of the PushTalk phonebook is reset to the default setting.

## Checking the Number of Entries Saved

You can check the number of entries saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM (FOMA card) phonebook and the number of locations still available or entries saved as Secret.

### 1 Press (Func) in the Phonebook.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Memory status] and press .

Memory status	
Remained	550
Used	450
Secret	5
Remained(UIM)	30
Used(UIM)	20

[Remained] : Display the number of entries still available for the FOMA terminal phonebook.

[Used] : Display the number of entries saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook (including entries saved as Secret).

[Secret] : Display the number of entries saved as Secret in the FOMA terminal phonebook (this data is displayed only when the Secret display is set to [ON]).

[Remained(UIM)] : Display the number of entries still available for the UIM phonebook.

[Used(UIM)] : Display the number of entries saved in the UIM phonebook.

## Dialing Quickly to Frequently Called Numbers

A call can be placed easily to the recipients saved in memory numbers from 000 to 009 by using a shortcut (2-touch dial).

It is useful to save frequently used phone numbers in memory numbers from 000 to 009.

- When the Secret display is set to [OFF], the 2-touch dial cannot be used to place a call to a phone number saved as Secret.

Example: Placing a call to the recipient saved in the memory number 001

### 1 Enter the last one digit of the memory number (0 to 9) in the stand-by display.



#### To check a recipient's data saved in a memory number

Enter the memory number (one or two digits) and press  or . A Phonebook entry associated with the entered memory number appears.

### 2 Press .

The call is connected to the first phone number of the recipient saved in memory number 001 after about five seconds.

#### To place a videophone call

Press  (V.phone).

The call can be placed to the recipients saved in memory numbers from 010 to 099 by entering the last two digits (10 to 99) of the memory numbers.

# Sound/Display/ Light Settings

Setting the Ring Tone/Image/Indicator Color for Incoming Call and Mail ..... <Incoming set> 102

## **Setting the Ringer**

Setting the Sounds of the FOMA Terminal ..... <Set basic tone> 104

Adjusting the Volume of Caller's Voice ..... <Volume> 105

Adjusting the Volume While Playing Flash Movie ..... <Sound effect> 105

Setting the Poor Signal Quality Alert ..... <Quality alarm> 106

Setting Earphone Only for the Ring Tone ..... <Earphone> 106

Muting the Ring Tone ..... <Manner mode> 107

Changing the Manner Mode Settings ..... <Manner mode settings> 108

## **Setting the Display/Display Light**

Setting the Stand-by Display ..... <Stand-by display> 109

Setting Images for Placing a Call/Sending Mail ..... <Animation setting> 110

Setting the Display for Incoming and Outgoing Calls ..... <Call display> 111

Setting the Display and Keypad Illumination ..... <Backlight> 111

Saving Power for the Display ..... <Power saver> 112

Setting the Theme of the Menu ..... <Select theme> 112

Changing the Appearance of the Menu ..... <Menu setting> 113

Informing Missed Call/New Mail with Indicator ..... <Missed call> 113

Setting the Font Size ..... <Font size> 114

Changing the Screen Display to English ..... <Language> 114

The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

## Setting the Ring Tone/Image/Indicator Color for Incoming Call and Mail

You can set a ring tone, ring volume, incoming image, vibration pattern, and incoming indicator color for each type of incoming transmission (voice, videophone, or PushTalk call, or mail, etc.).

Example: Performing incoming mail settings

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Incoming set] and press .



- 2 Select [Mail] and press .



To perform the settings for an incoming videophone call

If you set [Link incoming call] to [ON], the settings for the incoming call are applied.

To perform the settings for an incoming Message R/Message F

If you set [Link receive mail] to [ON], the settings for the incoming mail are applied.

- 3 Select a ring tone from Melody/i-motion of the Data box at [Ring tone].

- For an incoming call, videophone call, mail, Message R, and Message F, you can set a melody in SMF/MFI format from Melody, and an i-motion with video and sound tracks or with sound track only of an image size of [sQCIF(128 × 96)] or [QCIF(176 × 144)] from i-motion. However, some i-motion may not be set.
- For an incoming PushTalk call, you can set a melody in SMF/MFI format from Melody, and an i-motion with sound track only from i-motion. However, some i-motion may not be set.
- An i-motion copied and saved from the “Memory Stick Duo” as well as one that is restored to the FOMA terminal after once being copied to the “Memory Stick Duo” cannot be set.

To mute the ring tone

Select [Silent].

To check the ring tone

Move the cursor to the ring tone and press  (Play).

- 4 Set the volume of the ring tone at [Ring volume].

Select from [OFF], [1 to 5], [STEP DOWN], and [STEP UP].

- [STEP DOWN] turns down the volume every six seconds and [STEP UP] turns up the volume every six seconds. You can set [STEP DOWN]/[STEP UP] for an incoming voice, videophone, or PushTalk call.

To set the ring tone volume to [OFF]

Press  at level 1. When you set the ring tone volume for incoming calls, incoming mail, or both incoming calls and mail to [OFF], “”, “”, or “” appears in the stand-by display respectively.

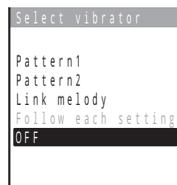
## 5 Select an image from the Data box at [Incoming image].

- For Call and Videophone, you can set a GIF/JPEG image or Flash movie not exceeding 500K or 100K bytes in file size respectively and [VGA(640 × 480)] in image size from My picture, and an i-motion with video and sound tracks or with video track only of an image size of [sQCIF(128 × 96)] or [QCIF(176 × 144)] from i-motion. However, some i-motion may not be set.
- An i-motion copied and saved from the “Memory Stick Duo” as well as one that is restored to the FOMA terminal after once being copied to the “Memory Stick Duo” cannot be set.
- For Mail, Message R, and Message F, you can set a GIF/JPEG image or Flash movie not exceeding 100K bytes in file size and [Stby(320 × 240)] in image size from My picture.

### To check the incoming image

Move the cursor to the incoming image and press **[hbm]** (Play).

## 6 Set a vibration pattern at [Vibrator].



**[Pattern1]** : Set a short intermittent vibration.

**[Pattern2]** : Set a long intermittent vibration.

**[Link melody]** : Set vibration to be synchronized with the melody set for the ring tone. When you set the ring tone to [Silent] or the melody is not specified with a vibration pattern, [Pattern1] is used.

**[OFF]** : Do not set the vibrator.

When you set the vibrator for incoming calls, incoming mail, or both incoming calls and mail, “”, “”, or “” appears in the stand-by display respectively.

## 7 Select an indicator color at [Color].

Select from 12 illumination colors plus [C13:ALL] (in which the 12 colors flash in turn). When you move the cursor through the colors, the incoming indicator flashes accordingly.

## 8 Select [Alert time] and press .



- You can set the alert duration for incoming mail, Message R, and Message F.

## 9 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Play once].

**[ON]** : Play the ring tone once. You cannot set the alert duration.

- The playback may be repeated depending on the melody.

**[OFF]** : Play the ring tone for the duration set by [Alert time].

## 10 Enter the duration for sounding the ring tone at [Alert time].

Enter the duration within the range from 00 to 30 seconds.

## 11 Press **[END]** (Complete).

The incoming mail settings are set.

### Preinstalled melodies

Title
着信音1～5
Rainbow Island
Aqua Resort
Feel
GetBack
After The Rain

Title
The Earth
Swingroove
Coral Reef
雨だれの前奏曲
Swanee
Deep Water

Title
Polka Dot
Water Rhythm
Brilliance
Fairy
Dawn
Breeze

If several ring tones, call images, and incoming indicator colors are set for voice/videophone call/mail, the following priority is applied.

1. Ring tone of Number Setting (When you receive a call to an Additional No. for the Multi Number)
2. Des phone tone, Call image, and Select phone/mail Illum. of an entry saved in the Phonebook
3. Des phone tone, Call image, and Select phone/mail Illum. of the Group setting
4. Ring tone, incoming image, and indicator color of the Incoming set

However, when you set an i-motion with video and sound tracks for the ring tone or incoming image, the order of priority may vary.

You can adjust the ring volume while receiving a call. The volume last set is applied regardless of whether you adjust the volume in advance or while receiving a call.

If you set the Alert time to 0 seconds, the ring tone does not sound upon reception of mail/message, and the incoming indicator and vibrator do not operate, either.

When you set an i-motion with video and sound tracks for the ring tone, the incoming image is also changed to the i-motion. Similarly, when you set an i-motion with video and sound tracks for the incoming image, the ring tone is also changed to the i-motion.

When an i-motion with video and sound tracks is set for the ring tone and incoming image, the incoming image is changed to the default image if you change the ring tone to an i-motion with sound track only or a melody in SMF/MFI format. Similarly, if you change the incoming image to an i-motion with video track only or a GIF/JPEG image or Flash movie, the ring tone is changed to the default melody.

When an i-motion with sound track only is set for the ring tone, the ring tone is changed to the default melody if you change the incoming image to an i-motion with video track only or a Flash movie.

When an i-motion with video track only or a Flash movie is set for the incoming image, the incoming image is changed to the default image if you change the ring tone to an i-motion with sound track only.

## Setting the Sounds of the FOMA Terminal

You can set to turn on/off the sound effect that can be used when the Lock key is canceled or when charging starts and is completed. You can also set whether the 3D sound is played back through the Flat-Plug Stereo Earphone Set (optional) and set the keypad sound volume.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Management] [Set basic tone] and press .



[Keypad sound] : Set the volume of the keypad sound to be heard when you press a key.

[Keypad rel] : Set whether the sound effect is heard when the Lock key is canceled.

[Stereo&3D] : Set whether to play back 3D sound with 3-dimensional stereophonic reproduction through the Flat-Plug Stereo Earphone Set.

[Charge sound] : Set whether the sound effect is heard when charging starts and is completed.

- 2 Set the volume of the keypad sound at [Keypad sound].

Select from [OFF] and [1 to 2].

- 3 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Keypad rel].

- 4 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Stereo&3D].

- 5 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Charge sound].

The sounds of the FOMA terminal are set.

The Keypad and Charge sounds may not be heard under some conditions, such as when another sound is active.

The 3D sound function reproduces a 3-dimensional stereophonic sound or space-wise moving sound, over a Flat-Plug Stereo Earphone Set (optional). This function lets you enjoy 3D sound i-appli games and ring tones with realistic sound. The perception of this 3D effect varies depending on the senses of an individual. If you feel uncomfortable in any way, set the Stereo&3D to [OFF].

## Adjusting the Volume of Caller's Voice

The volume of caller's voice during a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call can be adjusted in five levels from level 1 (smallest) to level 5 (largest).

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Call setting] [Volume] and press .



- 2 Press   to adjust the volume and press  (OK).

The volume of caller's voice is set.

The volume can be adjusted by pressing   during a call. Whichever way you may take, the most recently adjusted volume is used until it is adjusted next time.

## Adjusting the Volume While Playing Flash Movie

The sound volume while playing Flash movie and i-Channel contents can be adjusted in six levels: OFF (silent), level 1 (smallest) to level 5 (largest).

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] [Sound effect] and press .

- 2 Set the sound effect volume.

Select from [OFF] and [1 to 5].

The sound volume while playing Flash movie is set.

You can also adjust the volume by selecting [Sound effect] from the Function menu while playing Flash movie (P.162).

The sound effect may not be heard depending on Flash movie.

## Setting the Poor Signal Quality Alert

You can set to inform you with alarm of the possibility of the call being disconnected during a voice call due to the radio wave condition.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Call quality] [Quality alarm] and press .

[High] : Sound a high alarm tone.

[Low] : Sound a low alarm tone.

[OFF] : Do not sound an alarm tone.

- 2 Select the type of alarm tones and press .

The Quality alarm is set.

If the radio wave condition becomes weak suddenly, the call may be disconnected with no alarm.

## Setting Earphone Only for the Ring Tone

You can set the position where the phone tone, videophone tone, PushTalk tone, or alarm tone sounds when the Flat-Plug Switched Earphone Mic (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal.

- Even if [Earphone] is set, the ring tone sounds from both the Earphone Mic and the speaker if no operations are made for about 20 seconds after it starts sounding.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Earphone] [Earphone] and press .

[Earphone] : The tone is heard only from the earphone mic.

[Earph.+speaker] : The tone is heard from both the earphone mic and the speaker.

- 2 Select [Earphone] and press .

The tone is heard only from the earphone mic.

# Muting the Ring Tone

All sounds from the FOMA terminal can be disabled to avoid disturbing others by using the Manner mode.

There are three types of the Manner mode. Set the mode by using the Manner mode setting (P.108).

- Even if the Manner mode is set, the shutter sound of the camera can be heard.

## 1 Press for over a second in the stand-by display.



The Manner mode is set and the icon for the current type appears.

	Manner (♥ is pink)
	Silent
	Original manner (♥ is blue)

### To cancel the Manner mode

Press  for over a second in the stand-by display. The Manner mode is canceled and "

## Functions of each mode

	 Manner	 Silent	 Original manner	
			Initial setting	Setting range
Vibrator (P.103) 1	Follow each setting (Vibrates in Pattern1 when [OFF] is set.)	OFF	OFF	Pattern1/Pattern2/Link melody/ Follow each setting/OFF
Phone volume (P.102) 2	OFF	OFF	SD (STEP DOWN)	SU (STEP UP)/ SD (STEP DOWN)/ 5 to 1/OFF
Mail volume (P.102) 3	OFF	OFF	3	5 to 1/OFF
Alarm volume (P.268, 270)	OFF	OFF	3	5 to 1/OFF
Keypad sound (P.104) 4	OFF	OFF	1	2 to 1/OFF
Keyguard rel (P.104)	OFF	OFF	ON	ON/OFF
Charge sound (P.104)	OFF	OFF	ON	ON/OFF
Battery ALM (P.41) 5	OFF + Vibrator	OFF	ON	ON/OFF 6
Whisper mode (P.61)	ON	OFF	OFF	ON/OFF

- 1 Vibrator setting common to voice, videophone, and PushTalk calls, mail, Message R/F, Alarm, and Schedule alarm.
- 2 Setting common to the ring volume for voice, videophone, and PushTalk calls, and the alarm for the Call cost limit.
- 3 Setting common to the ring volume for mail and Message R/F.
- 4 Setting common to the battery level confirmation beep.
- 5 During a call, the battery alarm is heard from the earpiece regardless of the setting. When a call is put on hold, however, only the display is provided and the battery alarm does not sound.
- 6 When the Battery ALM is set to [ON], the vibrator operates regardless of the Vibrator setting.

Press  during a voice call to set the Whisper mode and press it again to cancel the Whisper mode.

## Changing the Manner Mode Settings

The Manner mode can be selected from three types: "Manner", "Silent", and "Original manner".

- 1 Press  in the stand-by display.



- 2 Select the type of the Manner mode at [Mode].

- 3 Press  (Complete).

The type of the Manner mode is changed.

## Changing the Original Manner

The operations of the Original manner can be customized. For the items you can set, see "Functions of each mode" (P.107).

Example: Setting the battery alarm

- 1 Press  in the stand-by display, select [Original manner], and press .



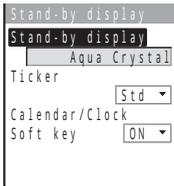
- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Battery ALM].

The battery alarm setting is changed.

# Setting the Stand-by Display

You can set the image for the stand-by display, the Telop display for i-Channel, Calendar/Clock display, and whether to show or hide the guide display.

## 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Display] [Stand-by] and press .



[Stand-by display] : Set an image or i-appli software to be displayed in the stand-by display.

[Ticker] : Set the speed of Telop text displayed in the stand-by display for i-Channel or turn off the Telop text display.

[Calendar/Clock] : Set the type of calendar and clock to be displayed in the stand-by display and also set the font color and display format of the clock.

[Soft key] : Set whether to display the guide display in the stand-by display.

[To display the explanation about the stand-by display setting](#)

Press  (Help).

## 2 Select an image from My picture/i-motion of the Data box at [Stand-by display].

- You can set a GIF/JPEG image or Flash movie not exceeding 500K or 100K bytes in file size respectively and [VGA(640 × 480)] in image size from My picture, and an i-motion with video and sound tracks or with video track only of an image size of [sQCIF(128 × 96)], [QCIF(176 × 144)], or [Stby(320 × 240)] from i-motion. However, some i-motion may not be set.
- An i-motion copied and saved from the “Memory Stick Duo” as well as one that is restored to the FOMA terminal after once being copied to the “Memory Stick Duo” cannot be set.

### To set the i-appli stand-by display

Select [i-appli list] and a software supporting i-appli stand-by display from the list of i-appli software.

### To display no image

Select [No image].

### To check the image

Move the cursor to the image and press  (Play).

## 3 Select the speed to display Telop text or whether to turn off the Telop text at [Ticker].

[Fast]/[Std]/[Slow] : Display Telop text using the selected speed.

[OFF] : Do not display Telop text.

## 4 Select [Calendar/Clock] and press .



## 5 Select the type of calendar and clock at [Type].

### To display no calendar/clock

Select [OFF].

## 6 Press (Type 1 to 4) to adjust the display position and press .

Every time you press  (Type 1 to 4), the position of the calendar and clock moves.

### When [Calendar-L/Clock] or [Calendar-L] is selected

You cannot change the display position.

## 7 Select the font color of the calendar and clock at [Font color].

- You cannot change the font color of Saturdays and holidays in the calendar.

## 8 Select the display format of the clock at [Clock style].

[12h] : Display in 12-hour format.

[24h] : Display in 24-hour format.

## 9 Press (Complete).

The calendar and clock display is set.

## 10 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Soft key].

The soft key display is set.

You cannot set the i-appli stand-by display or an i-motion image and the i-Channel Telop text to be displayed simultaneously.

Even if the Soft key is set to [OFF], you can operate the FOMA terminal normally.

If you set an i-motion for the stand-by display, the first frame appears as an image. Press  to play back and press  or  to stop the playback.

When you set a Flash movie or GIF animation for the stand-by display, the playback stops after a certain period of time. To restart the playback, press . The sound effect of the Flash movie set for the stand-by display is disabled.

You cannot use the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, and Web To functions from the i-motion that is set for the stand-by display.

When an i-appli software is set for the stand-by display or while the notification icon is displayed, the calendar/clock display may not be displayed correctly.

## Setting Images for Placing a Call/Sending Mail

You can set an image that appears when you place a voice or videophone call, send mail, and perform other events.

Example: Setting an image to be used when you place a call

### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Display] [Anim setting] and press .



- [Sending] : Set an image that appears when you place a voice call.
- [V.phone sending] : Set an image that appears when you place a videophone call.
- [Mail sending] : Set an image that appears when you send i-mode mail or SMS.
- [Check new message] : Set an image that appears when you check new messages or SMS.

### 2 Select an image from My picture of the Data box at [Sending].

- For Sending and V.phone sending, you can set a GIF/JPEG image or Flash movie not exceeding 500K or 100K bytes in file size respectively and [VGA(640 × 480)] in image size.
- For Mail sending and Check new message, you can set a GIF/JPEG image or Flash movie not exceeding 100K bytes in file size and [Stby(320 × 240)] in image size.

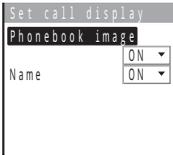
The image that appears when you place a call is set.

If you set the Phonebook image of the Call display to [ON], the Call image set in the Phonebook is displayed when you place a voice or videophone call regardless of the above setting.

## Setting the Display for Incoming and Outgoing Calls

You can use this function to set whether an image or the name of a caller/recipient specified in the Phonebook is displayed when you place/receive a voice/videophone call or right after receiving mail.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Call display] and press .



[Phonebook image] : Set whether to display the Call image set for a specific individual/group saved in the Phonebook.

[Name] : Set whether to display the name of a caller/recipient saved in the Phonebook.

- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Phonebook image].

[ON] : Display the image set for the Call image in the Phonebook when placing/receiving a voice or videophone call and right after receiving mail.

[OFF] : Display the image set in the Animation setting or Incoming set when placing/receiving a voice or videophone call, and display no image right after receiving mail.

- 3 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Name].

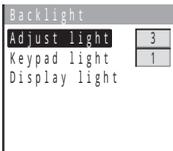
[ON] : Display the name saved in the Phonebook when placing/receiving a voice or videophone call.

[OFF] : Display the phone number when placing/receiving a voice or videophone call.

## Setting the Display and Keypad Illumination

You can set the brightness of the display and keypad and whether to keep the display light on all the time.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Display] [Backlight] and press .

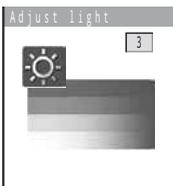


[Adjust light] : Set the display light brightness.

[Keypad light] : Set the keypad brightness.

[Display light] : Set whether to keep the display light on all the time including at the time of charging or recording.

- 2 Set the display light brightness at [Adjust light].



Select from [1 to 5].

To reset to the default brightness

Press  (Reset).

- 3 Set the keypad brightness at [Keypad light].

Select from [OFF] and [1 to 2].

To reset to the default brightness

Press  (Reset).

#### 4 Select [Display light] and press .



[Charging] : Set whether to keep the display light on during charging.

[Videophone] : Set whether to keep the display light on during a videophone call.

[Internet] : Set whether to keep the display light on while displaying sites or Internet home pages.

[Photo shoot] : Set whether to keep the display light on while recording a still image.

[Movie shoot] : Set whether to keep the display light on while recording a movie.

[Movie play] : Set whether to keep the display light on while playing back a movie.

#### 5 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Display light for each item.

It may take time to complete charging when [Charging] of the Display light is [ON].

## Saving Power for the Display

The display is automatically turned off to save battery power when no operations are made for a specific period. You can set the time before turning off the display.

#### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Display] [Power saver] and press .

#### 2 Select a time before starting the Power saver mode and press .

Select from [1min], [3min], [5min], [10min], [15min], [30min], and [OFF].

**When you do not want to set the Power saver mode**

Select [OFF].

While a function for which the Display light is set to [ON] is in use, a slideshow is running, the software update (rewrite) is in progress, and the Camera mode is active, the Power saver mode does not work.

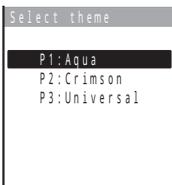
The Power saver mode may be canceled if there is an incoming call, an activation of the Alarm or Schedule alarm, etc.

It may take time to complete charging when the Power saver mode is [OFF].

## Setting the Theme of the Menu

You can select the theme of the menu display from three themes.

#### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Display] [Select theme] and press .



When the cursor is moved to a theme, the display appears in the selected theme.

#### 2 Select a theme and press (OK).

The Select theme is set.

## Changing the Appearance of the Menu

You can switch the menu display modes, and also set images to customize nine icons displayed in the Normal mode menu.

Example: Setting an image as the icon for i-mode

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Display] [Menu setting] and press .



[Menu mode] : Switch the menu display mode (P.33).

[Icon setting] : Set the icons to be displayed in the Normal mode menu display (P.33).

### When the menu is set to the Simple mode

From the Simple menu, select [Main menu] [Settings] [Display] [Menu setting].

- 2 Select a display mode at [Menu mode].

[Normal] : Display the Normal mode menu.

[Simple mode] : Display the Simple mode menu, which lists frequently used functions.

- 3 Select [Icon setting] and press .

The Icon setting display appears.

- 4 Select an image from My picture of the Data box at [i-mode].

- You can set a GIF or JPEG image not exceeding 500K bytes in file size and [VGA(640 × 480)] in image size. An image exceeding 40 × 40 dots in image size is displayed in reduced size (24 × 24 dots).

#### To restore an original icon

Select [None].

#### To check the image

Move the cursor to the image and press  (Play).

If you set an i-anime as an icon, the image in the first frame is displayed.

## Informing Missed Call/New Mail with Indicator

The incoming indicator can be set to flash about every five seconds to notify you that there is a missed call or unread mail/SMS/message. The indicator is turned off by checking the missed call or displaying mail/SMS/message.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Missed call] and press .

- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Missed call is set.

The indicator color for a missed call follows that set in the Incoming set.

The indicator flashes in the following order of priority when there are mix of missed calls and unread mail/messages.

1. Voice call indicator color
2. Videophone call indicator color
3. PushTalk call indicator color
4. Mail indicator color
5. Message R indicator color
6. Message F indicator color

If there are several calls, mails, messages, etc. of the same priority, the indicator color of the latest one has priority.

## Setting the Font Size

You can set the size of fonts to be used individually for displaying the Phonebook, Call record, mail/SMS, and sites.

Example: Setting the font size of the Phonebook

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Display] [Font size] and press .



[Phonebook] : Select a font size for the Phonebook from [Largest] and [Large].

[Call record] : Select a font size for the Call record from [Largest] and [Large].

[Mail] : Select a font size for the contents display of an i-mode mail or SMS from [Large], [Medium], and [Small].

[Internet] : Select a font size for the contents display of a site, screen memo, or Message R/F from [Large], [Medium], and [Small].

- 2 Select a font size at [Phonebook].

The Phonebook font size is set.

## Changing the Screen Display to English

Menus, messages, and other displays can be displayed in either Japanese or English.

- 1 From the Menu, select [設定] [管理] [バイリンガル] and press .



[Japanese] : Set the display language to Japanese.

[English] : Set the display language to English.

**When the display language is set to English**

Select [Settings] [Management] [Language].

- 2 Select [English] and press .

The display language is set to English.

When you set the display language with the UIM inserted, the setting is recorded to the UIM.

# Security Settings

## About Security Codes

Security Codes Used on the FOMA Terminal .....	116
Changing the Security Code .....	<Change code> 118
Setting the PIN Code .....	<UIM setting> 118
Canceling the PIN Lock .....	119

## Restricting Operations and Functions Available on the Mobile Phone

Various Locking Functions .....	120
Locking the Keypad to Prevent Unauthorized Use .....	<Lock all> 121
Restricting Placing/Receiving Calls .....	<Self mode> 123
Protecting Your Personal Data in the Phonebook, Schedule, etc. ....	<PIM lock> 123
Restricting Dialing from the Keypad .....	<Key dial lock> 124
Locking the Keypad to Prevent an Accidental Use .....	<Lock key> 125

## Restricting Callers and Senders

Setting the Display of the Redial/Received Record .....	<Record display> 126
Displaying the Data Saved as Secret .....	<Secret display> 126
Specifying Phone Numbers to Accept/Reject Calls .....	<Accept/Reject call> 127
Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID .....	<Denied no ID> 128
Muting the Ring Tone for Calls with No Phonebook Entry .....	<Set ring start time> 128
Rejecting Calls from Callers with No Phonebook Entry .....	<Reject unknown> 129

## Other Measures “For Safety Operation”

Other Measures “For Safety Operation” .....	130
---	-----

The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

## Security Codes Used on the FOMA Terminal

Some functions provided for convenient use of the FOMA terminal require the security code to use them. Besides the Security code for operating the mobile phone, the network security code necessary for the Network Services, i-mode password, etc. are available. Make use of the FOMA terminal using an appropriate security code according to the purpose.

### Notes on the security codes

Avoid using a number that is easy to guess, such as "birth date", "part of your phone number", "street address number or room number", "1111", and "1234". Make sure to make a note of the security code you set lest you should forget it.

Be very careful not to let others know your security code. If your security code is known by anyone else, DoCoMo shall have no liability for any loss due to any unauthorized use of it.

DoCoMo by no means inquires your security code.

If you forget any of your security codes, you must bring your official identification (such as driver's license), the FOMA terminal, and UIM with you to the nearest DoCoMo shop.

For details, call the "General Contact" on the backcover of this manual.

## Security Code

The Security code is set to "0000" at the time of purchase. It can be changed by yourself (P.118).



When the Security code screen appears, enter the 4- to 8-digit Security code and press  (OK).

- The entered Security code is displayed as asterisks (\*).

### When you enter the wrong Security code

The message "Invalid security code" appears. Enter the correct Security code.

## Network Security Code

The network security code, a 4-digit number necessary for performing procedures on **ドコモeサイト** (DoCoMo e-site) and using the DoCoMo Network Services, can be set to any number at the time of subscription. It can be also changed later by yourself.

You can change your network security code to the new one using the PC if you have the "My DoCoMo ID"/"Password" for the "My DoCoMo" General support site for PC. You can also change it by yourself using i-mode, from "各種手続き" (Applications and Procedures) available on **ドコモeサイト** (DoCoMo e-site).

For information on "My DoCoMo" or "DoCoMo e-site", see the backcover of this manual.

## i-mode Password

The 4-digit "i-mode password" is required when saving/deleting My Menu, subscribing to/unsubscribing from the message service or the paid i-mode services, etc.

(There may be other passwords for the i-mode used by IP (information service providers).)

The i-mode password is set to "0000" at the time of subscription. It can be changed by yourself.

You can change the i-mode password using i-mode, by selecting [i Menu] [オプション設定] (Options) [iモードパスワード変更] (Change i-mode Password).

## PIN1 Code and PIN2 Code

You can set two Security codes, namely PIN1 and PIN2, for the UIM (FOMA card). These codes are set to "0000" at the time of subscription. They can be changed by yourself (P.119).

PIN1 is a 4- to 8-digit number (code) that must be entered for user confirmation to prevent unauthorized use by a third party every time you insert the UIM into the FOMA terminal or when the FOMA terminal is powered on. Only after you enter the PIN1 code, you can use the FOMA terminal for placing/receiving a call and other operation.

PIN2 is a 4- to 8-digit number (code) that must be entered in order to reset the total call cost, use a user certificate, or request the issue of a user certificate.

- If you continue to use the current UIM with a newly purchased FOMA terminal, use the previous PIN1 and PIN2 codes you set for the UIM.



When the PIN1 or PIN2 code input screen appears, enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN1/PIN2 code and press  (OK).

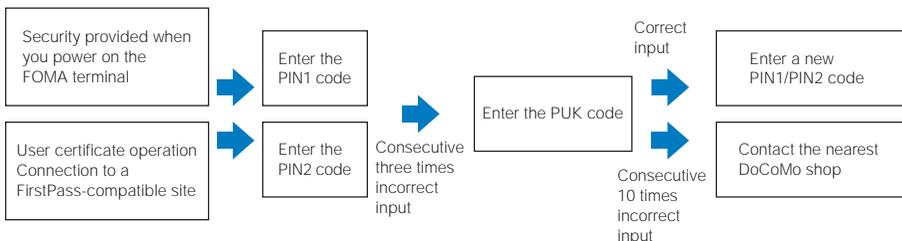
- The entered PIN1/PIN2 code is displayed as asterisks (\*).
- If you enter a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code three times consecutively, the PIN1/PIN2 code is locked and cannot be used anymore. ("X times left" appears on the screen, indicating the remaining number of times for retry operation.)

When you enter the correct PIN1/PIN2 code, the number of times left is reset to 3.

## PUK Code

The PUK code is a 8-digit number for canceling the locked PIN1/PIN2 code. The PUK code cannot be changed by yourself.

- If you enter a wrong PUK code 10 times consecutively, the UIM is locked.



## Changing the Security Code

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Management] [Change code] and press .



- 2 Enter the current Security code and press  (OK).

The entered Security code is displayed as asterisks (\*).

- The Security code is set to "0000" at the time of purchase.

- 3 Enter the new Security code and press  (OK).

Enter a 4- to 8-digit code.

- 4 Select [Yes] and press .

The Security code is changed.

## Setting the PIN Code

You can set the FOMA terminal to require the PIN1 code input when powered on. You can change the PIN1 and PIN2 codes.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Management] [UIM setting] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

- 2 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).



- 3 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [PIN1 code setting].

[ON] : You need to enter the PIN1 code when the FOMA terminal is powered on.

[OFF] : Do not need to enter the PIN1 code when the FOMA terminal is powered on.

- 4 Enter a PIN1 code and press  (OK).

The entered PIN1 code is displayed as asterisks (\*).

- The PIN1 code is set to "0000" at the time of purchase.

The UIM setting is set.

## Changing the PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code

- To change the PIN1 code, set the PIN1 code setting to [ON].

Example: Changing the PIN1 code

- 1** From the Menu, select [Settings] [Management] [UIM setting] and press .  
The Security code screen appears.
- 2** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).  
The UIM setting display appears.
- 3** Select [Change PIN1 code] and press .



To change the PIN2 code  
Select [Change PIN2 code].

- 4** Enter the current PIN1 code and press  (OK).  
The entered PIN1/PIN2 code is displayed as asterisks (\*).
  - Both the PIN1 and PIN2 codes are set to "0000" at the time of purchase.
- 5** Enter a new PIN1 code and press  (OK).  
Enter a 4- to 8-digit code.
- 6** Enter the new PIN1 code again and press  (OK).  
The new PIN1 code is set.

## Canceling the PIN Lock

Example: Canceling the PIN1 code lock

- 1** Enter the 8-digit PUK code and press  (OK).  
The entered PUK code is displayed as asterisks (\*).  
A screenshot of a mobile phone's security screen. The text reads "Input PUK code." followed by "10 times left". Below the text is a numeric keypad with a small black bar over the first digit.
- 2** Enter a new PIN1 code and press  (OK).  
Enter a 4- to 8-digit code.  
The entered PIN1 code is displayed as asterisks (\*).
- 3** Enter the new PIN1 code again and press  (OK).  
The PIN lock is canceled and the PIN1 code is changed to the new one.

## Various Locking Functions

The FOMA terminal offers many lock functions to assure safety operation, such as preventing unauthorized use of the FOMA terminal, protecting the Phonebook from being seen by others. You can use any mix of these functions depending on the purpose.

Functions	Description
Lock all	Prevent others from using the FOMA terminal (P.121).
Remote lock	Place a call from a saved Registered no. for a preset number of times within the designated period to perform both the Lock all and IC card lock functions simultaneously when you lose the FOMA terminal or cannot find it (P.121).
Self mode	Disable all functions that involve calls and communications, such as placing/receiving a voice or videophone call, originating/receiving a PushTalk call, sending/receiving mail, infrared communications, or the infrared remote control (P.123).
PIM lock	Disable some functions to prevent others from viewing/editing your personal information such as the phonebook and Schedule data (P.123).
Key dial lock	Disable the dial keys to prevent placing a voice/videophone call or originating a PushTalk call (P.124).
Lock key	Lock the keypad to prevent a wrong operation of the FOMA terminal by accidental key presses when carrying the FOMA terminal with the power on (P.125).
Record display	Set the Redial, Dial frequency, and Received record not to be displayed (P.126).
Secret display	Display/not display phonebook entries (PushTalk phonebook)/Own number/schedules saved as Secret (P.126).
Acpt/Rjct call	Accept/reject a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call from a specific phone number/group when it is received (P.127).
Denied no ID	Set not to accept a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call without the caller's phone number (P.128).
Set ring start time	Set a time interval before performing the receiving operation for a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call from a caller who is not saved in the Phonebook (P.128).
Reject unknown	Reject a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call from a caller who is not saved in the Phonebook (P.129).
IC card lock	Lock the IC card to prevent others from using the IC card function (P.242).

## Locking the Keypad to Prevent Unauthorized Use

You can set the Lock all to prevent others from using the FOMA terminal. When the Lock all is set, you cannot perform any operation other than powering on/off the FOMA terminal.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] [Lock/Security] [Lock all] and press .  
The Security code screen appears.

**2** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).  
The screen for confirming whether to set the Lock all appears.

**3** Select [Yes] and press .  
The Lock all is set and the message "Lock all" appears in the stand-by display.

### To cancel the Lock all

Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

To call emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118) when the Lock all is set, enter the emergency number and press . The emergency number is displayed as asterisks (\*) in the security code input field of the Security code screen.

The FOMA terminal is powered off after five unsuccessful attempts to cancel the Lock all.

If there is an incoming voice, videophone, or PushTalk call, when the Lock all is set, the FOMA terminal does not receive the call and the caller hears a busy tone. The call is saved in the Received record. When you cancel the Lock all, the notification icon  (Missed call) appears.

If you receive mail, Message R/F, or SMS when the Lock all is set, the FOMA terminal does not perform the receiving operation and does not notify you of the reception. When you cancel the Lock all, "☐", "☐", "☐", "☐", or "E" appears. When you receive mail or SMS, the notification icon  (New mail) also appears.

When you set the Lock all, the Alarm and Schedule alarm do not operate.

When you set the Lock all, the stand-by display is changed to the default setting. The i-Channel Telop text is not displayed.

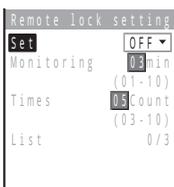
When you set the Lock all, the notification icons are not displayed. When you cancel the Lock all, the icons are displayed again.

## Setting the Lock all by Remote Control

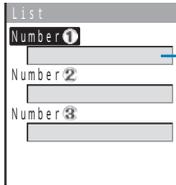
If you lose the FOMA terminal, you can place a call from a registered phone number for a preset number of times within the specified duration and simultaneously set the Lock all and IC card lock.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] [Lock/Security] [Remote lock] and press .  
The Security code screen appears.

**2** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).



- 3 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Remote lock at [Set].
- 4 Enter the duration for counting the number of incoming calls at [Monitoring].  
Enter from 01 to 10 minutes.
- 5 Enter the number of calls to be received within the specified duration at [Times].  
Enter from 03 to 10 times.
- 6 Select [List] and press .



#### To delete a number

Move the cursor to the number field and from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes]. To delete all numbers, from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all] [Yes].

- 7 Enter a phone number to be used for performing remote control in the number field.  
Up to three numbers including a public phone are available.
- 8 Press .
- 9 Press  (Complete).  
The Remote lock is set.

In the following cases, the counting of received calls does not start even if the FOMA terminal is called from the saved phone number.

- During a call
- While the Self mode is set
- When the ring time is set to 0 seconds in the Voice Mail Service or the Call Forwarding Service
- When placing a call with no caller ID
- When a call is received by the FOMA terminal, or automatically by the Record message or Flat-Plug Switched Earphone Mic (optional) (if the counting already started, the number is reset)

When there are incoming calls from multiple saved Registered no., only calls originating from the one whose call is received first are counted as a received call.

When the Lock all is set by remote control, the IC card lock is not canceled even if you cancel the Lock all of the FOMA terminal.

## Restricting Placing/Receiving Calls

You can disable all functions that involve calls or communications, such as placing/receiving a voice or videophone call, originating/receiving a PushTalk call, and sending/receiving mail. You cannot use infrared communications or the infrared remote control, either (Self mode).

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Self mode] and press .

The screen for confirming Self mode setting appears.

To cancel the Self mode

When the screen for confirming Self mode cancellation appears, select [Yes].

- 2 Select [Yes] and press .



The Self mode is set and "self" appears.

Even if the Self mode is set, you can call emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118). The Self mode is canceled after you call an emergency number.

If there is an incoming call when the Self mode is set, the caller hears a guidance informing that the FOMA terminal is outside of the service area or the FOMA terminal is powered off. When using the DoCoMo Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, these services can be used in the same manner as when the FOMA terminal is powered off.

## Protecting Your Personal Data in the Phonebook, Schedule, etc.

You can disable the following functions to prevent others from viewing/editing your personal information such as the Phonebook and Schedule data.

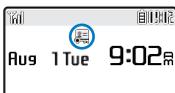
- Camera
  - i-Channel
  - PushTalk phonebook
  - Infrared communications
  - Schedule
  - Icon settings
  - Substitute image
  - Delete all data
  - Memory Stick
  - i-appli
  - Record message
  - ToruCa
  - Text memo
  - Animation setting
  - Scan function
  - Multi Number
  - Mail
  - Own number
  - Voice memo
  - IC card content
  - Data box
  - Ring tone
  - Software Update
  - i-mode
  - Phonebook
  - Bar code reader
  - Alarm
  - Stand-by display setting
  - Incoming image
  - Reset settings
- When the Reject unknown is set, you cannot set the PIM lock.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Lock/Security] [PIM lock] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

- 2 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

- 3 Select [ON] [Yes] and press .



The Redial/Received record and Send/Receive ranking data are deleted, the PIM lock is set, and "self" appears.

When the PIM lock and Key dial lock are set simultaneously, "🔒" is displayed instead of "🔒".

If you set the PIM lock when data other than that preinstalled in the [Preinstall] folder of the Data box is set for the image, substitute image, or ring tone in the stand-by or other display, the setting is reset to the default setting. If you cancel the PIM lock, the image or ring tone you set is restored.

When the PIM lock is set, the regular ring tone, incoming image (excluding PushTalk), and indicator color are used for an incoming voice, videophone, or PushTalk call. In this case, not the caller's name but the caller's phone number is displayed.

If you receive mail, Message R/F, or SMS when the PIM lock is set, the FOMA terminal does not perform the receiving operation and does not notify you of the reception. When you cancel the PIM lock, "☑", "☑", "☑", "☑", or "E" appears. When you receive mail or SMS, the notification icon "✉" (New mail) also appears.

When you set the PIM lock, the Alarm and Schedule alarm do not operate.

When you set the PIM lock, all incoming call is accepted regardless of the Accept/Reject call setting.

When you set the PIM lock, the i-Channel Telop text is not displayed.

When you set the PIM lock, the notification icon "📞" (Missed call) is deleted if it is displayed in the stand-by display.

When you set the PIM lock, the FOMA terminal does not display the notification icons "✉" (New mail), "✉" (Mail at center), "☑" (New ToruCa), "📞" (New Record msg), "📞" (New V.phone msg), "☑" (Voice Mail), and "🔒" (Stand-by SW error). When you cancel the PIM lock, these icons are displayed again.

## Restricting Dialing from the Keypad

The keypad is locked to restrict placing a voice or videophone call or originating a PushTalk call. To cancel the Key dial lock temporarily, enter the Security code.

- When you set the Key dial lock, you cannot perform the following functions.
  - Place a call using the dial keys (excluding calls made by the 2-touch dial or using the Flat-Plug Switched Earphone Mic) or the Received record
  - Any key answer
  - Send i-mode mail or SMS to a recipient who is not saved in the Phonebook
  - Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or EV-Link
  - Save new data or edit/delete data in the Phonebook
  - Operate the Phonebook stored in the "Memory Stick Duo"

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] [Lock/Security] [Key dial lock] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

**2** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

**3** Select [ON] [Yes] and press .



The Redial/Received record is deleted, the Key dial lock is set, and "🔒" appears.

When the Key dial lock and PIM lock are set simultaneously, "🔒" is displayed instead of "🔒".

Even if the Key dial lock is set, you can call emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118).

When you set the Key dial lock, the notification icon "📞" (Missed call) is deleted if it is displayed in the stand-by display.

# Locking the Keypad to Prevent an Accidental Use

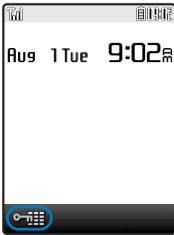
While carrying around the FOMA terminal that is powered on, the keypad can be locked to prevent from pressing the keypad accidentally.

- The following operations are available while the Lock key is set.

Voice call	While placing a call	Stop (⏹)
	While receiving a call	Answer (☎), On hold (⏸)
	While a call is in progress	End (⏹)
	When receiving another voice call during a call	Answer (☎), End (⏹)
	When receiving a videophone call during a call	Answer with your own image (☎), Answer with a substitute image (👤), End (⏹), Adjust the ring volume (⏴ ⏵)
	While a record message is answered/recorded	Answer (☎), End (⏹)
Videophone	While placing a call	Stop (⏹)
	While receiving a call	Answer with your own image (☎), Answer with a substitute image (👤), On hold (⏸), Adjust the ring volume (⏴ ⏵)
	While a call is in progress	End (⏹)
	While a videophone message is answered/recorded	Answer with your own image (☎), Answer with a substitute image (👤), End (⏹)
PushTalk	While originating a call	Stop (⏹)
	While receiving a call	Answer (☎ or 🗣), End (⏹)
	While a call is in progress	Obtain the floor (🗣), End (⏹)
While receiving a mail/message	Stop the ring tone (⏹)	
While the stand-by display i-motion is played back	Stop (⏹)	
While the battery alarm sounds	Stop (⏹)	
While the Alarm or Schedule alarm sounds	Stop (Keypad such as 🗣, ☎, and ⏹)	

The message that appears while a call is in progress may prompt you to select an item from a menu.

## 1 Slide the lock key (🔒) to the “🔒” position.



The keypad sound is heard, the Lock key is set, and “🔒” appears.

### To cancel the Lock key

Slide (🔒) again. The Keyguard rel tone sounds and the icon disappears.

You can also mute the Keyguard rel tone (P.104).

## Setting the Display of the Redial/Received Record

The Redial, Dial frequency, and Received record can be set not to be displayed. Playback of the Record message is also disabled. To cancel the Record display temporarily, enter the Security code.

- 1 Press  (  ) in the stand-by display and press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.
- 2 Select [Set call record] [Record display] and press .
- 3 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).  
The Record display appears.
- 4 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The call is saved in the Redial/Received record even if the Record display is [OFF].

## Displaying the Data Saved as Secret

The Phonebook (PushTalk phonebook), Own number, and Schedule saved as Secret are not displayed unless the Secret display is set to [ON]. Make sure to save the Phonebook, Own number, and Schedule as Secret if you do not want others to see them.

- Even if the Secret display is set to [ON], it is changed to [OFF] when you power off the FOMA terminal.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Lock/Security] [Secret display] and press .
  - 2 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).
  - 3 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .
- The Secret display is set.  
When set to [ON], "🔒" appears.

When the Secret display is set to [ON], the name and phone type are displayed in the Redial/Received record even if a caller or recipient is saved as Secret in the Phonebook. For mail, the name of a sender or recipient is displayed in the received mail/sent mail list and Receive/Send ranking list. Even if changed to [OFF] later, the record still remains in the Redial/Received record or in the received mail/sent mail list and Receive/Send ranking list.

# Specifying Phone Numbers to Accept/Reject Calls

You can set to accept/reject voice, videophone, or PushTalk calls only from specific phone numbers. For the Accept/Reject calls, up to 20 phone numbers can be saved (List). You can also set to accept/reject calls only from specific groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook. For the Accept/Reject calls, up to three groups can be saved (Group list). This function is valid only when a caller sends the phone number. It is recommended to set the Caller ID Display Request Service and the Denied no ID together with this function.

- SMS and i-mode mail can be received regardless of this function.
- For an incoming PushTalk call, it is only to the caller's phone number that the Accept/Reject call setting is valid. The Accept/Reject setting does not work even if you set it to a member other than the caller. When you make the Accept/Reject setting through the Group list, a call is accepted/rejected if the caller of it belongs to the specified group in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- When the PIM lock is set, you cannot set the Accept/Reject calls.

Example: Setting [Accept]/[Reject] for calls from specified phone numbers

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] [Lock/Security] [Acpt/Rjct call] and press . The Security code screen appears.

**2** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).



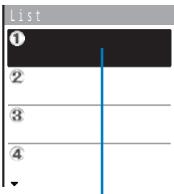
**3** Select [Accept]/[Reject] at [Set].

[Accept] : Set to accept a call. When you receive a call from a phone number/group other than specified, the call is not connected. The missed call notification icon appears and the call is saved in the Received record.

[Reject] : Set to reject a call. When you receive a call from a specified phone number/group, the call is not connected. The missed call notification icon appears and the call is saved in the Received record.

[OFF] : Cancel the Accept/Reject call setting.

**4** Select [List] and press .



Number field

### To specify a group

Select [Group list] and select a group at the group field.

### To delete a phone number or group

Move the cursor to the number or group field and from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes]. To delete all numbers or groups, from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all] [Yes].

**5** Enter a phone number at the number field.

**6** Press .

The list is saved and the Accept/Reject call display is restored.

**7** Press  (Complete).

The Accept/Reject call from specified phone numbers is set.

## Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID

When receiving a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call without the caller's phone number displayed, the reason for not displaying it is shown. You can decide whether to accept a call based on the reason.

- SMS and i-mode mail can be received regardless of this function.
- If you receive a call with no caller ID when the Denied no ID is [ON], the call is not connected. The missed call notification icon appears and the call is saved in the Received record.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] [Lock/Security] [Denied no ID] and press . The Security code screen appears.

**2** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).



**3** Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Denied no ID for each non-display reason. The Denied no ID is set.

## Muting the Ring Tone for Calls with No Phonebook Entry

You can set a time interval before starting operation of the ring tone, incoming indicator, and vibrator when you receive a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call from a person/group who is not saved in the Phonebook. This function is also useful for blocking a nuisance call such as from a malicious caller.

- When the Reject unknown is set, you cannot set the Set ring start time.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Call assist] [Set ring start time] and press .



**2** Select [ON]/[OFF] for the Set ring start time at [Set].

**3** Enter the time before starting the ring tone for an incoming call at [Ring time]. Enter from 01 to 99 seconds.

#### 4 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Missed call display].

[ON] : Display all calls in the Received record.

[OFF] : For a call the ring time of which is shorter than the set time, neither the missed call notification icon nor the received record is displayed. When the operation of the record message or videophone message is started, the notification icon of missed call appears and the received record is displayed.

#### 5 Press (Complete).

The Set ring start time is set.

In the following cases, the Set ring start time setting works to a call even if you receive it from a person saved in the Phonebook.

- A call from a person saved as Secret in the Phonebook (when the Secret display is set to [OFF])
- A call with no caller ID
- When the PIM lock is set

To display all received records when the Missed call display is [OFF], from the Function menu in the Received record display, select [Display all].

If the time set for the Ring time is same as that for the answer or ring times for the Record message, Auto answer, Voice Mail Service, and Call Forwarding Service, the ring tone may sound.

## Rejecting Calls from Callers with No Phonebook Entry

You can set to reject voice, videophone, or PushTalk calls from callers not saved in the Phonebook.

- It is recommended that you set the Caller ID Display Request Service together with this function.
- SMS and i-mode mail can be received regardless of this function.
- If you receive a call from a caller who is not saved in the Phonebook when the Reject unknown is [ON], the call is not connected. The missed call notification icon appears and the call is saved in the Received record.
- When the Set ring start time or PIM lock is set, you cannot set the Reject unknown.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] [Lock/Security] [Reject unknown] and press .  
The Security code screen appears.

**2** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

**3** Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .  
The Reject unknown is set.

In the following cases, the Reject unknown setting works to a call even if you receive it from a person saved in the Phonebook.

- A call from a person saved as Secret in the Phonebook (when the Secret display is set to [OFF])
- A call with no caller ID

If a phone number that is not saved in the Phonebook has an entry in the List of the Accept/Reject call and the setting is [ON], the Reject unknown function does not operate for a call from this phone number.

## Other Measures “For Safety Operation”

The following items are available for safety use of the FOMA terminal.

Purpose	Function/Service name	Page
Do not receive mail from unknown senders.	Change Mail Address, Register a Secret Code	See the “i-mode User’s Manual”.
Receive/reject mail from the specific domains.	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)	
Receive/reject mail only from an i-mode user.		
Receive/reject mail from the specific addresses.		
Receive no further mail from an i-mode terminal if the number of mail sent from it reaches 200 per day.	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
Do not receive advertising mail sent without prior agreement.	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
Do not receive SMS.	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	
Suspend the mail function.	Suspend Mail	
Save/confirm a message of your/someone’s safety in case of a disaster.	“i-mode Disaster Message Board Service”	
Receive only required mail messages.	Receive option	P.202, 216
Do not receive a malicious or wrong number call from a specific caller.	Nuisance Call Blocking Service	P.281
Update the FOMA terminal software as required.	SW Update	P.329
Disable use of the IC card function.	IC card lock	P.242
Connect to an SSL-compatible site using the user certificate. (Only for FirstPass-compatible sites.)	FirstPass	P.180
Check whether a problem might occur when a program or data is downloaded to the FOMA terminal from outside.	Scan function	P.333

# Camera

Before Using the Camera .....	132
Recording Still Images .....	<Record still images> 136
Recording Movies .....	<Record movies> 139
Displaying Saved Images .....	140
Changing the Camera Settings .....	140
Adjusting the Camera during Recording .....	143
Setting the Camera Operation .....	146
Using the Bar Code Reader .....	<Bar code reader> 149

The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

## Before Using the Camera

You can record images by the FOMA terminal's built-in camera, which you can send by attaching to i-mode mail and set for the stand-by display, etc.

To use the "Memory Stick Duo", you need to obtain it separately. If you do not have a "Memory Stick Duo", you can purchase it at a home electric appliance store or other similar store (P.251).

- The image recorded by the camera may differ from actual color or brightness of object.

## About Using the Camera

### Notes Before Using the Camera

- Clear images cannot be obtained if the camera lens is stained with fingerprints or grease. Wipe the camera with a soft clean cloth before recording an image.
- Leaving the FOMA terminal in a place exposed to direct sunlight or high temperature for a long period of time may deteriorate the image quality.
- You cannot start the Camera mode when the battery level is very low. To use the camera, charge the battery sufficiently.

### Notes on Using the Camera

- To prevent shaking, hold the FOMA terminal firmly or place it on a stable place and use the Auto timer when recording.
- When you try to record a strong light source directly, such as the sun or a lamp, the screen may black out or the image on the screen may be distorted.
- The camera is manufactured based on the leading edge technologies, and black and bright points or lines may appear constantly on the display. Additionally, increased noise may appear as white lines when recording in a low-light environment. These are not malfunctions.
- When the battery level becomes very low in the Camera mode, the Camera mode is terminated.

## About the Copyright

Objects, such as movies, still images, and sounds, recorded using the FOMA terminal are prohibited from reproduction, transformation and transmission over public lines without consent of the copyright holders, unless intended for personal use or any other purpose permitted by law.

Note that some performances, shows, and exhibitions may not allow photography, movie shooting, or sound recording even for personal use.

! Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

## About the Camera Mode

To use the camera, press the shutter  for over a second in the stand-by display. The Camera mode is activated, an image through the camera lens appears in the display and the Auto timer indicator lights.

To terminate the Camera mode, press .

The Camera mode is terminated automatically if the keypad is not pressed for about two minutes.

## About Still Image/Movie

Item	Still image	Movie
File format	JPEG (Exif format)	MP4 (MobileMP4)
File name	<p><b>When saved to [Data box]</b> YYYYMMDDhhmmss</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The recorded year, month, date, hour, minute, second is displayed. For example, when a still image is recorded at August 1, 2006, 18:02:10, it appears as "20060801180210".</li> <li>When using the Continuous mode, 00 to 03 is added after the year, month, date, hour, minute, second, resulting in a format like "20060801180210_00".</li> </ul> <p><b>When saved to [Memory stick]</b> DSC0nnnn</p>	<p><b>When saved to [Data box]</b> YYYYMMDDhhmmss</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The recorded year, month, date, hour, minute, second is displayed. For example, when a movie is recorded at August 1, 2006, 18:02:10, it appears as "20060801180210".</li> </ul> <p><b>When saved to [Memory stick]</b> MOV0nnnn</p>
File number	<p>NNN-nnnn</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The file number is displayed only when saved to the "Memory Stick Duo". You can reset the file number (P.148).</li> </ul>	-

- A number "100 to 999" is assigned to "NNN" and "0001 to 9999" is assigned to "nnnn" in the order of recorded time.
- If you have not set the date/time, the file name is displayed as "-----".

## Number of Still Images You Can Save

The number of still images that can be saved in the FOMA terminal or the "Memory Stick Duo" varies depending on the image quality and size, recording conditions, and object of shooting.

Estimated number of still images you can record and save in the FOMA terminal

Recording quality	Image size	sQCIF (128 × 96)	QCIF (176 × 144)	Stby (320 × 240)	CIF (352 × 288)	VGA (640 × 480)	1.2M (1280 × 960)
	Fine		About 692 to 1,000	About 435 to 936	About 215 to 462	About 168 to 362	About 95 to 204
Standard		About 813 to 1,000	About 505 to 1,000	About 328 to 706	About 263 to 567	About 143 to 307	About 38 to 82
Economy		About 890 to 1,000	About 603 to 1,000	About 479 to 1,000	About 398 to 856	About 205 to 442	About 56 to 121

Estimated number of still images you can record and save in the "Memory Stick Duo"

Capacity/ Recording quality	Image size	sQCIF (128 × 96)	QCIF (176 × 144)	Stby (320 × 240)	CIF (352 × 288)	VGA (640 × 480)	1.2M (1280 × 960)
	16MB	Fine	About 984	About 492	About 328	About 246	About 141
Standard		About 984	About 492	About 492	About 328	About 197	About 62
Economy		About 984	About 984	About 492	About 492	About 328	About 90
32MB	Fine	About 1,976	About 988	About 659	About 494	About 283	About 83
	Standard	About 1,976	About 988	About 988	About 659	About 396	About 124
	Economy	About 1,976	About 1,976	About 988	About 988	About 659	About 180

## About Recording Time of Movie

The recording time of movie that can be saved in the FOMA terminal or the “Memory Stick Duo” varies depending on the recorded image quality, Shoot mode, image size, file size restriction settings as well as the recording conditions and object of shooting.

### Estimated recording time of movie you can record and save in the FOMA terminal

File size restriction	Image size	Shoot mode	Recording time available for each movie				Total recording time available			
			Image quality				Image quality			
			Super fine	Fine	Standard	Economy	Super fine	Fine	Standard	Economy
Mail attach(S)	-	Sound only	About 2 min. 55 sec.				About 126 min. 5 sec.			
	Stby (320 × 240)	Image only	About 5 sec.	-	-	-	About 4 min. 15 sec.	-	-	-
		Image+Sound	About 5 sec.	-	-	-	About 3 min. 35 sec.	-	-	-
	QCIF (176 × 144)	Image only	About 10 sec.	About 15 sec.	About 50 sec.	About 2 min.	About 8 min. 35 sec.	About 12 min. 50 sec.	About 37 min. 15 sec.	About 88 min. 50 sec.
		Image+Sound	About 10 sec.	About 15 sec.	About 45 sec.	About 1 min. 30 sec.	About 7 min. 50 sec.	About 11 min. 25 sec.	About 32 min. 15 sec.	About 64 min. 30 sec.
	sQCIF (128 × 96)	Image only	-	About 35 sec.	About 1 min. 20 sec.	About 10 sec.	-	About 25 min. 45 sec.	About 59 min. 25 sec.	About 93 min. 50 sec.
Image+Sound		-	About 30 sec.	About 1 min. 5 sec.	About 1 min. 30 sec.	-	About 21 min. 30 sec.	About 47 min. 15 sec.	About 66 min. 35 sec.	
Mail attach(L)	-	Sound only	About 4 min. 55 sec.				About 129 min. 5 sec.			
	Stby (320 × 240)	Image only	About 10 sec.	-	-	-	About 4 min. 20 sec.	-	-	-
		Image+Sound	About 5 sec.	-	-	-	About 3 min. 50 sec.	-	-	-
	QCIF (176 × 144)	Image only	About 20 sec.	About 30 sec.	About 1 min. 25 sec.	About 3 min. 30 sec.	About 9 min. 5 sec.	About 13 min. 25 sec.	About 38 min. 30 sec.	About 91 min.
		Image+Sound	About 15 sec.	About 25 sec.	About 1 min. 15 sec.	About 2 min. 30 sec.	About 8 min. 10 sec.	About 12 min. 5 sec.	About 33 min. 20 sec.	About 65 min. 50 sec.
	sQCIF (128 × 96)	Image only	-	About 1 min.	About 2 min. 20 sec.	About 3 min. 40 sec.	-	About 26 min. 50 sec.	About 61 min. 5 sec.	About 95 min. 45 sec.
Image+Sound		-	About 50 sec.	About 1 min. 50 sec.	About 2 min. 35 sec.	-	About 22 min. 30 sec.	About 48 min. 30 sec.	About 68 min. 25 sec.	

### Estimated recording time of movie you can record and save in the “Memory Stick Duo”

#### Estimated recording time available for each movie

- The estimated recording time available for each movie when the file size is restricted to [Mail attach(S)] and [Mail attach(L)] are the same as those listed in the above table for saving in the FOMA terminal.

File size restriction	Image size	Shoot mode	Capacity: 16M bytes				Capacity: 32M bytes			
			Image quality				Image quality			
			Super fine	Fine	Standard	Economy	Super fine	Fine	Standard	Economy
No restriction	-	Sound only	About 60 min.				About 60 min.			
Stby (320 × 240)	Image only	Image only	About 5 min. 40 sec.	-	-	-	About 11 min. 25 sec.	-	-	-
		Image+Sound	About 5 min. 30 sec.	-	-	-	About 11 min. 5 sec.	-	-	-
	QCIF (176 × 144)	Image only	About 11 min. 45 sec.	About 17 min. 40 sec.	About 50 min.	About 60 min.	About 23 min. 35 sec.	About 35 min. 20 sec.	About 60 min.	About 60 min.
		Image+Sound	About 11 min.	About 16 min.	About 43 min. 5 sec.	About 60 min.	About 22 min. 5 sec.	About 32 min. 5 sec.	About 60 min.	About 60 min.
	sQCIF (128 × 96)	Image only	-	About 34 min. 50 sec.	About 60 min.	About 60 min.	-	About 60 min.	About 60 min.	About 60 min.
		Image+Sound	-	About 29 min.	About 60 min.	About 60 min.	-	About 58 min. 5 sec.	About 60 min.	About 60 min.

#### Estimated total recording time available

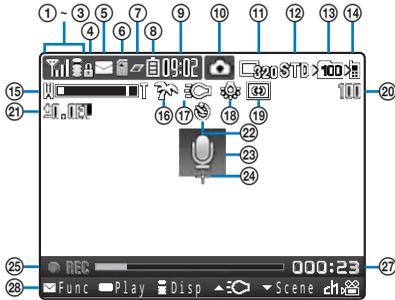
File size restriction	Image size	Shoot mode	Capacity: 16M bytes				Capacity: 32M bytes			
			Image quality				Image quality			
			Super fine	Fine	Standard	Economy	Super fine	Fine	Standard	Economy
Mail attach(S)	-	Sound only	About 167 min. 10 sec.				About 331 min. 25 sec.			
Stby (320 × 240)	Image only	Image only	About 5 min. 40 sec.	-	-	-	About 11 min. 15 sec.	-	-	-
		Image+Sound	About 4 min. 45 sec.	-	-	-	About 9 min. 25 sec.	-	-	-
	QCIF (176 × 144)	Image only	About 11 min. 20 sec.	About 17 min. 5 sec.	About 49 min. 20 sec.	About 117 min. 45 sec.	About 22 min. 35 sec.	About 33 min. 50 sec.	About 97 min. 55 sec.	About 233 min. 30 sec.
		Image+Sound	About 10 min. 25 sec.	About 15 min. 10 sec.	About 42 min. 45 sec.	About 85 min. 30 sec.	About 20 min. 40 sec.	About 30 min. 5 sec.	About 84 min. 45 sec.	About 169 min. 30 sec.
	sQCIF (128 × 96)	Image only	-	About 34 min. 10 sec.	About 78 min. 50 sec.	About 124 min. 25 sec.	-	About 67 min. 45 sec.	About 156 min. 15 sec.	About 246 min. 40 sec.
		Image+Sound	-	About 28 min. 30 sec.	About 62 min. 40 sec.	About 88 min. 20 sec.	-	About 56 min. 30 sec.	About 124 min. 15 sec.	About 175 min. 5 sec.
Mail attach(L)	-	Sound only	About 168 min. 50 sec.				About 332 min. 45 sec.			
Stby (320 × 240)	Image only	Image only	About 5 min. 40 sec.	-	-	-	About 11 min. 10 sec.	-	-	-
		Image+Sound	About 5 min. 5 sec.	-	-	-	About 10 min.	-	-	-
	QCIF (176 × 144)	Image only	About 11 min. 50 sec.	About 17 min. 30 sec.	About 50 min. 25 sec.	About 119 min.	About 23 min. 25 sec.	About 34 min. 35 sec.	About 99 min. 20 sec.	About 234 min. 30 sec.
		Image+Sound	About 10 min. 45 sec.	About 15 min. 50 sec.	About 43 min. 35 sec.	About 86 min. 5 sec.	About 21 min. 10 sec.	About 31 min. 15 sec.	About 85 min. 55 sec.	About 169 min. 40 sec.
	sQCIF (128 × 96)	Image only	-	About 35 min. 5 sec.	About 79 min. 50 sec.	About 125 min. 10 sec.	-	About 69 min. 10 sec.	About 157 min. 25 sec.	About 246 min. 45 sec.
		Image+Sound	-	About 29 min. 25 sec.	About 63 min. 25 sec.	About 89 min. 30 sec.	-	About 58 min.	About 125 min.	About 176 min. 25 sec.
No restriction	-	Sound only	About 166 min. 25 sec.				About 332 min. 50 sec.			
Stby (320 × 240)	Image only	Image only	About 5 min. 40 sec.	-	-	-	About 11 min. 25 sec.	-	-	-
		Image+Sound	About 5 min. 30 sec.	-	-	-	About 11 min. 5 sec.	-	-	-
	QCIF (176 × 144)	Image only	About 11 min. 45 sec.	About 17 min. 40 sec.	About 50 min.	About 117 min. 15 sec.	About 23 min. 35 sec.	About 35 min. 20 sec.	About 100 min. 5 sec.	About 234 min. 30 sec.
		Image+Sound	About 11 min.	About 16 min.	About 43 min. 5 sec.	About 85 min. 5 sec.	About 22 min. 5 sec.	About 32 min. 5 sec.	About 86 min. 10 sec.	About 170 min. 15 sec.
	sQCIF (128 × 96)	Image only	-	About 34 min. 50 sec.	About 79 min.	About 123 min. 55 sec.	-	About 69 min. 45 sec.	About 158 min. 5 sec.	About 247 min. 50 sec.
		Image+Sound	-	About 29 min.	About 63 min.	About 88 min. 35 sec.	-	About 58 min. 5 sec.	About 126 min.	About 177 min. 10 sec.

## Icons in the Camera Mode

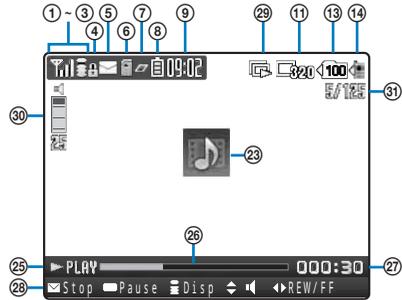
In the Camera mode display, the following icons appear depending on the settings and functions selected.

- You can use  (Disp) to switch the display of the icons and guide display (Standard, Simple, or Display off). Even if you select "Display off", related icons are displayed when you perform any operations.

Recording display



Playback display



- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>①  /  /  /  Radio wave condition</li> <li>②  /  During i-mode</li> <li>③  /  Outside of the service area</li> <li>④  /  Self mode is set</li> <li>⑤  /  Card other than UIM is inserted</li> <li>⑥  /  SSL site is displayed/SSL-downloaded i-αappli is executed/During SSL communications.</li> <li>⑦  /  Unread i-mode mail/SMS/Message R/ Message F</li> <li>⑧  /  The "Memory Stick Duo" is inserted</li> <li>⑨  /  1/2/3 or more tasks are executed</li> <li>⑩  /  Battery level</li> <li>⑪  Current time</li> <li>⑫  Shoot mode (P.146)             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•  appears when recording a still image.</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑬  /  Image size (P.142)</li> <li>⑭  /  Image quality (P.146)</li> <li>⑮  /  The number of a folder to save to/from play from (Still image only)             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when saving data to/from playing data from the "Memory Stick Duo".</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑯ Save to/Play from             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> "Memory Stick Duo"</li> <li> Data box</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑰ Zoom (P.143)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>⑰  Photo light ON (P.141)</li> <li>⑱  White balance (P.145)</li> <li>⑲  Photometry (P.144)</li> <li>⑳  Estimated number left for recording (Still image only)</li> <li>⑳  File size restriction (Movie only) (P.147)</li> <li>㉑  EV (P.143)</li> <li>㉒  Auto timer ON (P.142)</li> <li>㉓  Recording/playing sound (Movie only)</li> <li>㉔  Spot photometry (P.144)</li> <li>㉕ Playback status during the Movie shoot mode (Movie only)             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> Stopped</li> <li> During image recording</li> <li> During image playing</li> <li> During pausing</li> <li> During image fast-forwarding</li> <li> During image reversing</li> </ul> </li> <li>㉖  Progress bar (Movie only)</li> <li>㉗  Estimated recordable time while recording a movie</li> <li>㉗  Total playback time while movie playback is stopped</li> <li>㉗  Elapsed playing time while playing back a movie</li> <li>㉘  Guide display (P.136)</li> <li>㉙  Slideshow/Continuous playback is in progress</li> <li>㉚  Volume indication (Movie only)             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•  is displayed when the sound is muted.</li> </ul> </li> <li>㉛  Order of the current image/total number of images in the folder</li> </ul> |
|---|--|

## Guide Display

In the Camera mode, use the Four-way keys (Up/Down/Left/Right arrow keys), the Enter key, the Mail key, the i-mode key, and the i-Channel/My Selection key according to the instructions shown in the guide display.

Display	Operations	Display	Operations
	Press .		Press .
	Press .		Press .
	Press .		Press  .
	Press .		Press  .

## Recording Still Images

You can record still images using the camera.

- When there is not enough memory or the number of saved images exceeds the maximum number, the message appears. Change the place to save the image or delete unnecessary images.
- When you switch to the Shoot by photo mode from the Movie shoot mode, the following items are reset.

Item	Default setting	Item	Default setting
Auto timer	OFF	Zoom magnification	× 1
Picture effect	OFF		

**1** Press for over a second in the stand-by display.  
The Camera mode display appears.

**2** Point the camera at the object and press .



You hear the shutter sound, a still image is recorded, and the screen for confirming whether to save the image appears.

### To switch to the In-camera

From the Function menu, select [Shoot] [Switch camera] [In camera].

**3** Press (Save).

The still image is saved.

### To attach to mail

Press (Mail) and compose mail.

### To cancel a recorded image

Press and select [Yes].

### To save as a mirror image during In-camera recording

Press (Mirror-save). Press / to switch between Normal-img and Mirror-img.

The image may not be saved when you receive a call before the shutter sound ends.

## Recording Images in Close to the Object

You can record an object in close distance (about 7 cm).

- When you rotate the macro switch, be careful not to touch the camera lens.

### 1 Rotate the macro switch to the “” position in the Camera mode display.



The Macro mode is set.

#### To cancel the Macro mode

Rotate the macro switch to the “” position. The Macro mode is canceled.

### 2 Point the camera at the object and press (Shoot).

You hear the shutter sound, a still image is recorded, and the screen for confirming whether to save the image appears.

### 3 Press (Save).

The still image is saved.

## Recording Still Images in the Continuous Mode

You can record four still images continuously at an interval of about 0.3 seconds with a single press of the shutter .

- The size of the images in the Continuous mode is automatically changed to [Stby(320 × 240)]. You cannot change the size of images.
- If you set the Shoot mode to [Continuous mode] while the scene is set to [Night scene] or [Low Light], the scene is changed to [AUTO].

### 1 Press (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Shoot] [Shoot mode] [Continuous mode], and press .

### 2 Press (Close).



The Shoot mode is set to [Continuous mode] and “” appears.

### 3 Point the camera at the object and press .

Images are recorded continuously with the shutter sound, and the screen for confirming whether to save the images appears.

### 4 Press (Save).

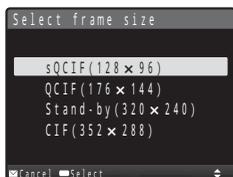
Four continuous images are saved.

## Recording Images with Frames

You can record an image with a frame, which can be selected from the preinstalled frames or downloaded frames.

- The size of images recorded with a frame is determined according to the frame you selected and cannot be changed.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Shoot] [Shoot mode] [Shoot with frame], and press .



- 2 Select a frame size and press .

The Select frame display appears.

- 3 Select a frame from My picture of the Data box and press .

The selected frame appears.

### To check a frame

Move the cursor to a frame and press  (Play).

- 4 Press  (Close).

- 5 Point the camera at the object and press .

You hear the shutter sound, an image is recorded, and the screen for confirming whether to save the image appears.

- 6 Press  (Save).

The image is saved.

# Recording Movies

You can make movie recordings with the built-in camera.

- The movie recording time varies depending on where to save a movie (P.134). When you save it to the “Memory Stick Duo”, you can record up to 60 minutes per movie.
- When there is not enough memory or the number of recorded time of saved movies exceeds the maximum number, the message appears. Change the place to save the movie or delete unnecessary movies. Even if recording is possible, the maximum recording time may not be achieved.
- When you switch to movie recording from still image recording, the following items are reset.

Item	Default setting	Item	Default setting
Shoot mode	Regular	Scene	AUTO
Auto timer	OFF	Zoom magnification	× 1
Picture effect	OFF		

The setting is reset when the scene is set to [Night scene] or [Low Light].

- 1 Press **Ⓢ** for over a second in the stand-by display and press **CH/Ⓢ** ( ).



The display switches to the Movie shoot display and “ **STOP** ” appears.

- 2 Point the camera at the object and press **Ⓢ**.

The recording start tone is heard and the movie is recorded. “ **STOP** ” changes to “ **REC** ”.

- While you record a movie, the Auto timer indicator flashes and the estimated recordable time is displayed by both a bar and numbers under the image.

### To pause recording

Press **⏸** (Pause). The recording pause tone sounds and “ **PAUSE** ” appears. To restart the recording, press **⏪** (Record).

- 3 Press **Ⓢ** to end recording.

The recording end tone is heard, the recording is stopped, and the screen for confirming whether to save the movie appears.

- 4 Press **Ⓢ** (Save).

The movie is saved.

### To cancel movie recording

Press **Ⓢ/CLR** and select [Yes].

### To check before saving

Press **CH/Ⓢ** (Play).

### To attach to mail

Press **ⓧ** (Mail) and compose mail.

When you receive a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call while recording/saving a movie, the recording/saving is stopped to allow you to answer the call. You can save the movie after you finish the call/communications. However, when the battery level becomes 0 during the call/communications, the saving is canceled. Make sure to use the FOMA terminal after fully charging the battery pack.

Noise in the form of a mosaic may appear in an image or the image or sound may be interrupted while you are recording a movie. Note that this is not malfunction.

The movie sound is recorded via the microphone of the FOMA terminal. If you operate the keys or block the microphone during recording, the recording may be affected by the sound of the keys and other noise.

## Displaying Saved Images

You can check the saved image.

- For details about the operation, see My picture (P.244) and i-motion (P.247).

Example: Playing back a recorded still image

### 1 Press (Play) in the Camera mode display.



The recorded image appears.

#### To display an image in enlarged or original size

Press  (). To restore the original size, press  (.

#### To delete an image

From the Function menu, select [Delete one] [Yes].

#### To attach to mail

From the Function menu, select [Attach to mail] and compose mail.

#### To return to the Camera mode display after playing back a still image

Press  (Camera).

#### To return to the Camera mode display after playing back a movie

From the Function menu, select [Shoot movie].

## Changing the Camera Settings

### Switching the Recording Scene

When you record a movie by the Out-camera, you can automatically adjust the camera settings in accordance with a scene. When you change a scene, the White balance, Photometry, EV, and Picture effect settings are reset.

- When the Shoot mode is set to [Continuous mode] or you are recording a movie, you cannot select [Night scene] and [Low Light].
- When the Shoot mode of movie recording is set to [Sound only], you cannot set the scene.

### 1 Press (Scene) in the Camera mode display.



[AUTO] : Record an image by automatically adjusting the color and brightness.

[Beach/snow] : Record the bright colors of the ocean, lake, and snow scene even more vividly.

[People] : Make a clear recording of a person's skin in bright and warm tones of color.

[Party] : Make a clear recording of a party scene by enhancing the mood of the illumination in a room.

[Night scene] : Record night scenes without compromising the atmosphere of darkness.

[Landscape] : Make a clear recording of an outdoor scene with a vivid expression of the color of ocean, sky, and trees.

[Sports] : Record an object that is moving in a brightly lit place such as the outdoors.

[Low Light] : Increase the film speed in a dark place to record the scene as brightly as possible.

## 2 Select a scene and press .

The scene is set and the icon for the current scene type appears.

- No icon appears for [AUTO].

	Beach/snow		People		Party		Night scene
	Landscape		Sports		Low Light		

## Switching the Camera Used for Recording

You can switch between the Out- and In-cameras for recording.

### 1 Press (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Shoot] [Switch camera], and press .



- You can also display the menu for switching the camera by pressing  in the Camera mode display.

### 2 Select [Out camera]/[In camera] and press .

The camera is switched.

## Turning on Photo Light

The FOMA terminal's built-in photo light can be used when recording by the Out-camera in a dark place, etc.

### 1 Press () in the Camera mode display.

Every time you press  (), the photo light is switched to [ON]/[OFF].  
When switched to [ON], the photo light is turned on and "" appears.

The photo light is for helping you record in a dark place. You cannot expect as much amount of light from the photo light as from the electric flash of a normal camera.

## Using the Auto Timer

The Auto timer allows you to record yourself or others without holding the FOMA terminal. You can also set the interval until recording is started after you press the shutter.

- 1 Press (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Shoot] [Auto timer], and press .



- 2 Select a time until recording is started after you press the shutter and press . The Auto timer is set and “” appears.

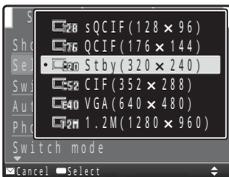
If there is an incoming call when you are recording with the Auto timer, the recording stops. After recording, the Auto timer is automatically reset to [OFF].

## Selecting an Image Size

You can select the size of a still image and movie to be recorded from eight and three types, respectively.

- When the Shoot mode of the still image is set to [Continuous mode] or [Shoot with frame], the image size cannot be selected.
- The sizes of images that can be recorded by the In-camera are [sQCIF(128 × 96)], [QCIF(176 × 144)], [Stby(320 × 240)], and [CIF(352 × 288)] (Still image only).
- When the size of a movie is set to [Stby(320 × 240)], the image quality of the movie is changed to [Super fine]. When the size of a movie whose image quality is [Super fine] is set to [sQCIF(128 × 96)], the image quality of the movie is changed to [Standard].

- 1 Press (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Shoot] [Select size], and press .



- You can also display the menu for selecting an image size by pressing in the Camera mode display.

- 2 Select an image size and press .

The image size is set and the icon for the current image size appears.

### Still image

	sQCIF(128 × 96)		QCIF(176 × 144)		Stby(320 × 240)
	CIF(352 × 288)		VGA(640 × 480)		1.2M(1280 × 960)

### Movie

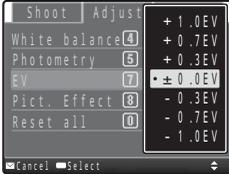
	sQCIF(128 × 96)		QCIF(176 × 144)		Stby(320 × 240)
--	-----------------	--	-----------------	--	-----------------

# Adjusting the Camera during Recording

## Adjusting Brightness

The image brightness (exposure) can be adjusted in seven levels from  $-1.0\text{EV}$  to  $+1.0\text{EV}$  according to the ambient condition (EV: Exposure Value).

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Adjust]  [EV], and press .



- You can also display the menu for selecting the EV value by pressing  in the Camera mode display.

- 2 Select the EV value and press .

The brightness is adjusted and the icon for the current EV value appears.

When the place is extremely bright or dark, the brightness may not be changed even after being adjusted.

## Adjusting Zoom

You can adjust the zoom of an image. Zoom magnification can be adjusted in the following levels according to image size.

Image size	Out-camera				In-camera	
	When you are recording still images		When you are recording movies			
	Maximum magnification	Zoom level	Maximum magnification	Zoom level	Maximum magnification	Zoom level
sQCIF(128 × 96)	About × 8	29 levels	About × 3	23 levels	About × 2	21 levels
QCIF(176 × 144)	About × 6	28 levels	About × 2	18 levels	About × 2	17 levels
Stby(320 × 240)	About × 3	24 levels	× 1	-	× 1	-
CIF(352 × 288)	About × 3	24 levels	-	-	× 1 (Still image only)	-
VGA(640 × 480)	About × 3	24 levels	-	-	-	-
1.2M(1280 × 960)	About × 3	24 levels	-	-	-	-

- 1 Press   in the Camera mode display.



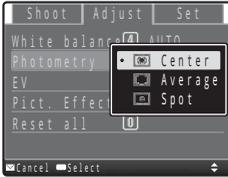
- Press  to increase the zoom and  to decrease it. You can also press  /  to zoom in/out. When you press these keys for over a second, an image is zoomed in/out continuously.

The zoom is adjusted and the current magnification is indicated on the zoom bar.

## Setting Spot Photometry

When recording an object against light or an object with the strong contrast to the background, the exposure can be adjusted automatically with reference to the center of the display.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Adjust] [Photometry], and press .



- You can also display the menu for selecting a photometry mode by pressing  in the Camera mode display.

[Center] : Photometry mode for centerweighted metering of the display, including the periphery.

[Average] : Photometry mode for average metering of the whole display.

[Spot] : Photometry mode for metering only a narrow area in the center of the display. Aim the object at the Spot photometry point “+” in the center of the display.

- 2 Select a photometry mode and press .

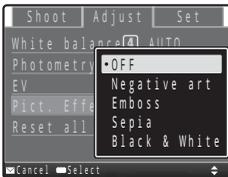
The Photometry mode is set and the icon for the current photometry mode appears.



## Adding a Picture Effect

The images can be recorded with a special effect.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Adjust] [Pict. Effect], and press .



- You can also display the menu for selecting a picture effect by pressing  in the Camera mode display.

[OFF] : Cancel the picture effect.

[Negative art] : Set the color and brightness of the image as in a negative.

[Emboss] : Set the image with surface projection and depression to create a raised appearance.

[Sepia] : Set the image sepia-toned like an old photograph.

[Black & White] : Set the image monochrome (black and white).

- 2 Select a special effect and press .

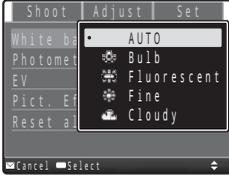
The Picture effect is set.

Some effects set for the Picture effect including [Emboss] and conditions of the object may cause the movements of a recorded movie to be awkward.

## Adjusting White Balance

The color balance of the image can be adjusted depending on the lighting condition. If a recording image appears in unnatural colors, set the white balance in accordance with the recording environment.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Adjust] [White balance], and press .



- You can also display the menu for selecting a white balance by pressing  in the Camera mode display.

[AUTO] : Adjust the color balance automatically.

[Bulb] : Set when recording under bulbs or incandescent lamps.

[Fluorescent] : Set when recording under fluorescent lamps.

[Fine] : Set when recording outdoors on a clear day.

[Cloudy] : Set when recording outdoors on a cloudy day or in the shade.

- 2 Select a white balance type and press .

The White balance is set and the icon for the current white balance type appears.

- No icon appears for [AUTO].



## Restoring the Default Camera Settings

You can reset the camera settings to the default settings. The camera settings listed below can be reset.

Item	Default setting	Item	Default setting
Scene	AUTO	EV	± 0.0EV
Zoom magnification	× 1	Photometry	Center
Picture effect	OFF	White balance	AUTO

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Adjust] [Reset all], and press .

The screen for confirming whether to perform the Reset all appears.

- You can also display the screen for confirming whether to perform the Reset all by pressing  in the Camera mode display.

- 2 Select [Yes] and press .

The default settings are restored.

# Setting the Camera Operation

## Selecting the Image Quality

You can select the image quality for recording images.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Set] [Image quality], and press .



### Still image

- [Fine] : The highest image quality with larger file size.
- [Standard] : Standard image quality.
- [Economy] : The lowest image quality with smaller file size.

### Movie

- [Super fine] : The highest quality with larger file size. The recording time is shortest.
- [Fine] : Quality to produce smoother movement in movies.
- [Standard] : Standard quality.
- [Economy] : The lowest quality with smaller file size. The recording time is longest.

- 2 Select the image quality and press .

The image quality is set and the icon for the current image quality appears.

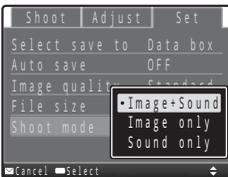
	Super fine (Movie only)		Fine
	Standard		Economy

## Selecting the Shoot Mode of Movie Recording

You can select the movie shoot mode from three types.

- 1 Press  () in the Camera mode display. The display switches to the Movie shoot display.

- 2 Press  (Func), select [Set] [Shoot mode], and press .



- [Image+Sound] : Record a movie with video and sound tracks.
- [Image only] : Record a movie with video track only. No sound is recorded.
- [Sound only] : Record a movie with sound track only. No movie is recorded.

- 3 Select a shoot mode and press .

The Shoot mode is set and the icon for the current shoot mode appears.

	Image+Sound		Image only		Sound only
---	-------------	---	------------	---	------------

## Restricting the Size of a File Used for Movie Recording

You can restrict the size of a movie file to a file size that can be attached to i-mode mail.

- 1 Press  (  ) in the Camera mode display.

The display switches to the Movie shoot display.

- 2 Press  (Func), select [Set] [File size], and press .



[Mail attach(S)] : You can record up to about 290K bytes. Suitable for sending as an i-motion mail.

[Mail attach(L)] : You can record up to about 490K bytes. Suitable for sending as a large-sized i-motion mail.

[No limit] : No file size restriction. You can record up to 60 minutes. Selectable only when [Memory Stick] is set as the place to save to.

- 3 Select a file size restriction type and press .

The file size restriction for movie is set and the icon for the current file size restriction type appears.

- No icon appears for [No limit].



## Changing the Shutter Sound

The shutter sound can be selected from three types when the Shoot mode for still images is [Regular] or [Shoot with frame].

- The shutter sound volume is fixed and cannot be adjusted or muted. The shutter sound is heard even if the Manner mode is set.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Set] [Shutter sound], and press .

The menu for selecting a shutter sound appears.

- 2 Select a shutter sound and press .

The Shutter sound is set.

**To check the shutter sound**

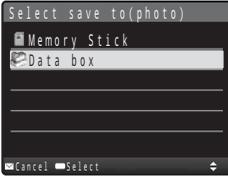
Move the cursor to the shutter sound and press  (Play).

## Selecting Where to Save Images

You can set the place to save recorded images.

Example: Selecting the “Memory Stick Duo” to save the recorded still images

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Set] [Select save to], and press .



[Memory Stick] : Save images in the “Memory Stick Duo”. Still images and movies are saved in My picture and i-motion, respectively.

[Data box] : Save images in the Data box of the FOMA terminal. Select a folder for saving still images and movies from My picture and i-motion, respectively.

- 2 Select [Memory Stick] and press .

The place to save images is set and the icon for the selected place appears.



## Setting Whether Recorded Images Are Automatically Saved

You can set the save method of a recorded image.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Set] [Auto save], and press .

The menu for selecting whether to automatically save the recorded images appears.

[ON] : After recording, the image is automatically saved.

[OFF] : After recording, you can select whether to save the image.

- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The image save method is set.

## Resetting File Numbers of the “Memory Stick Duo”

When a still image with the file number (P.133) “999-9999” is saved in the “Memory Stick Duo”, no more still images can be saved even if there is a vacant space in the “Memory Stick Duo”. The Reset file No. allows you to reset the file numbers up to the largest file number saved in the “Memory Stick Duo” loaded. To reset the file numbers, delete still images that have file numbers larger than that you want to reset beforehand.

- The images cannot be saved even if the file numbers are reset when the “Memory Stick Duo” has no free space. In this case, change the “Memory Stick Duo” or delete data saved in the “Memory Stick Duo”.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Set] [Reset file No.], and press .

The screen for confirming whether to perform the Reset file No. appears.

- 2 Select [Yes] and press .

The file numbers are reset.

## Using the Bar Code Reader

You can use the Out-camera to scan JAN or QR code. The scanned text data can be used for Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To and i-appli To functions, Bookmark and Phonebook entries, and also for displaying and copying/pasting text. Image and melody data scanning is also available. You can play and save the scanned images and melodies.

- To scan the JAN/QR code, rotate the macro switch to the "📷" position to set the Macro mode (close distance of about 7 cm).
- The FOMA terminal may not be able to scan JAN or QR code if it is scratched, smudged, damaged, of poor print quality, too small in size, or in certain light reflection conditions. It also may not be able to scan some QR code versions.
- The FOMA terminal cannot scan a bar code/2-dimensional code other than JAN and QR codes.

### What is JAN code?

A bar code that represents numbers using vertical lines (bars) of different widths. The FOMA terminal can scan 13-digit and 8-digit JAN codes.



"Example: 4942857124552"

### What is QR code?

One of the 2-dimensional codes that represent data in the vertical and horizontal directions. This data includes alphanumeric characters, character strings (kanji, kana, pictographs), melodies, and still images.

- Up to 16 QR codes can be scanned serially so that they connect to each other and saved as a single data set. When scanning multiple segmented QR codes, the message prompting you to scan the next QR code appears after you scan the first one. Scan the QR code in response to the message.



"Example: FOMA SO902iWP +"

## Scanning JAN/QR Code

You can scan JAN or QR code and save the maintained data for later use. You can also use text data from the scanned JAN or QR code to enter information in a textbox while entering a text (P.160).

- 1 From the Menu, select [Tools] [BC reader] [Bar code reader] and press .



The bar code reader is activated and "📷" appears.

## 2 Locate the JAN/QR code at the center of the display and press (Scan).



The scanning of the JAN/QR code starts.

When the scanning is completed, the end sound is heard and the data that has been scanned is displayed in the normal display.

### To save scanned data such as a phone number

Move the cursor to data such as a phone number and from the Function menu, select [Add to phonebook] [Yes]. Select [New] [Main]/[UIM], or [Add] an item from the phonebook to which scanned data is added, and save each item.

- Follow the same steps as in the Add to FOMA terminal phonebook (P.91, step 3 to 20) or Add to UIM phonebook (P.94, step 3 to 8).

### To save a scanned URL as a bookmark

Move the cursor to the URL and from the Function menu, select [Add bookmark] [Yes] a folder.

## 3 Press (Save).

The data from the scanned JAN/QR code is saved.

Some QR codes allow you to save data such as a name, phone number, and mail address all at once in the Phonebook just by scanning them.

When scanned characters cannot be entered in the text editing display, they are replaced with as many spaces (blanks).

A scanned image may not be saved depending on its image or file size.

## Displaying the Saved Data

You can save up to 10 data entries for JAN or QR codes that are scanned.

- When a total of 10 data entries is saved and a new JAN/QR code is scanned, unprotected data is overwritten from the oldest.

## 1 From the Menu, select [Tools] [BC reader] [Saved data] and press .



### To delete data

Move the cursor to the data and from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes]. To delete several data, from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete], select data, press  (Complete), and then select [Yes]. To delete all data, from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### To protect data

Move the cursor to the data and from the Function menu, select [Protect ON/OFF] [Yes]. "ON" changes to "OFF".

## 2 Select the data and press .



# i-mode/i-motion

i-mode is a paid service that requires a subscription.

What is i-mode? .....	152
Displaying the i-mode Menu .....	<i-mode menu> 158
<b>Displaying a Site</b>	
Displaying Sites .....	159
Using Sites .....	160
Saving a Site in My Menu .....	<My Menu> 163
Changing the i-mode Password .....	<Change i-mode password> 163
Displaying Internet Sites .....	<Internet connection> 164
Saving a Site to Display It Quickly .....	<Bookmark> 165
Saving a Site in the Screen Memo .....	<Screen Memo> 168
<b>Downloading Graphics, Melodies or Other Data from Sites</b>	
Obtaining Graphics from a Site/Message .....	<Save image> 170
Downloading Data from Related Sites .....	<Download> 171
<b>Useful Functions for Using i-mode</b>	
Using the Phone To/Mail To/Web To/i-appli To .....	172
<b>Make Settings for i-mode</b>	
Setting i-mode .....	<i-mode setting> 174
<b>Using the Message Service</b>	
Receiving a Message .....	<Receive message> 177
Checking a New Message .....	<Check new messages> 178
Displaying a Message .....	<Message R/Message F> 178
<b>Using Certificates</b>	
Operating the SSL List .....	<SSL certificate> 180
Setting the FirstPass .....	<User certificate> 180
Changing the Host for Certificate Issue .....	<Host selection> 182
<b>Using i-motion</b>	
What is i-motion? .....	183
Downloading an i-motion from Sites .....	<Download i-motion> 183
Setting Auto Replay of i-motion and i-motion Type to Download .....	<i-motion setting> 184

The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

# What is i-mode?

i-mode allows you to use the i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter referred to as i-mode terminal) to access various online services such as site (program) connection, Internet connection, and i-mode mail.

## Site (Program) Connection

Various online services offered by IP (information service providers), such as weather information and news, are available by selecting Menu List accessible from the i-mode menu. Games and stand-by images can also be downloaded for your amusements.

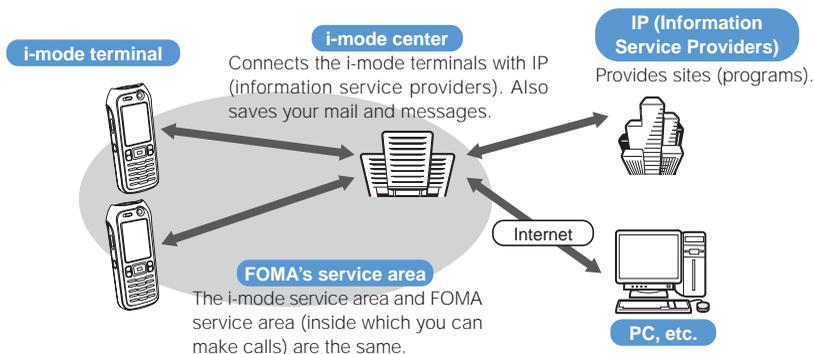
## Internet Connection

Various i-mode compatible sites can be browsed with the i-mode terminal by entering URLs (Internet site addresses) directly into the terminal.

## i-mode Mail

Mail can be exchanged with anyone who has an Internet mail address (as e-mail) as well as between i-mode terminal users within 5,000 full-width characters. You can also enjoy exchanges by sending and receiving Deco-mail, still images, and movies.

## Service Structure



i-mode is a paid service that requires a subscription. For inquiry about subscription, see the backcover of this manual.

When you make a new subscription to the FOMA services, all services are available from the day of subscription.

When you change your subscription from the Movia services (i-mode subscription) to the FOMA services, the "My Menu" contents for the Movia services is transferred to the FOMA services. It may not be possible, however, to transfer the "My Menu" contents of some sites to the FOMA services. In this case, you have to re-register the sites. You can check the automatic "My Menu" compatible sites using "お知らせ&ヘルプ" in i Menu.

i-mode is charged for the amount of information (number of packets) that is sent or received. This manual does not cover information regarding charges. For information on charges, please see the "i-mode User's Manual" that you receive when you subscribe to i-mode.

The contents of the services are subject to change. For details, see the latest "i-mode User's Manual".

## Site (Program) Connection

Simple key operations allow you to connect to sites and use various online services provided by IP (information service providers). For example, you can use online services to check your bank balances or remit moneys, reserve tickets, read news, look up words in online dictionaries, and download ringer melodies.

### To Display a Site

i Menu appears first when connected to the i-mode center. From this menu you can access sites (programs), "What's New!!", etc.



English



Japanese

- Displaying sites (P.159)

Menu name	Function
マイメニュー (My Menu)	Saving frequently viewed sites allows you to access the site directly (P.163). Paid sites in i Menu are automatically saved. Up to 45 sites can be saved.
週刊 i ガイド (What's New!!)	Update the latest site information such as new or recommended sites every weekday, from Monday to Friday.
メニューリスト (Menu List)	Present all available sites by categories/regions. Check and connect to the site you want to display.
とくするメニュー (Campaigns)	Present listings of attractive campaigns, giveaways, discount coupons, and other information. The listings are updated every week (provided by D2 Communications).
i エリア (i Area)	Local information about the current location and its neighborhood, such as weather, map, and town information, can be obtained easily.
かんたん検索 (Easy Search)	Find a desired site with ease using the key word search or other measures from the selected category such as "ゲーム" (Game) and "待受画面" (Stand-by display).
i アプリサーチ (i-appli Search)	Present free i-appli sites, i-appli game programs, etc. according to the purpose of using i-appli.
便利サイトサーチ (Useful Site Search)	Present useful sites for daily use, selected from Menu List, by categorizing them by purpose.
マイボックス (My Box)	Services for members. Once you register at a shop or site that provides the service, you can easily access it.
オプション設定 (Options)	Perform i-mode mail settings and change the i-mode password.
お知らせ&ヘルプ (Information & Help)	Present notices from DoCoMo and describe the help on i-mode usage and rules.
料金&お申込 (Charge & Subscription)	Check charges and pay for it, make changes in subscription, and subscribe to various services.
ENGLISH	i Menu can be changed to English.

The above is an image for explanatory purpose. The display may vary depending on the settings.

There are some sites which are charged for usage (paid i-mode sites).

Some services provided by IP (information service providers) require a separate subscription for its usage.

Even if the i-mode icon is flashing, there is no packet communications charge unless the FOMA terminal is connected to the i-mode center.

If you subscribe to the Dual Network Service, displays such as the i Menu display may be partly different.

## Other Features

### i-Channel

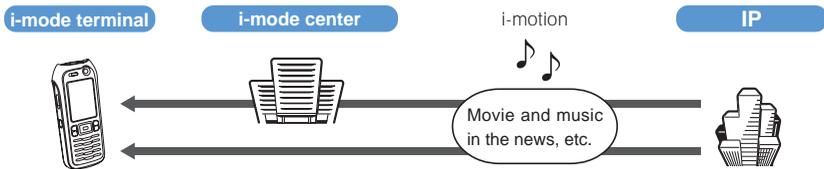
Subscribers to i-Channel automatically receive graphics-based information such as the news and weather distributed to an i-mode terminal by DoCoMo or IP (information service providers). You can run the latest information updates on the stand-by display as Telop text by automatically getting this information on a regular basis. You can also display a list of channels and view the channel you want by pressing **[Chw]**. Furthermore, you can access rich and detailed information by selecting the channel you want from the channel list.

- Compatible models: The i-Channel service is available on the i-Channel-compatible models. For further information, see the "i-mode User's Manual".

### i-motion

You can download a movie and sound from i-mode sites to the i-mode terminal, play back the downloaded data, and set it for the stand-by display (P.183).

- Downloading an i-motion (P.183)
- Playing an i-motion (P.247)
- Setting an i-motion to the Auto replay (P.184)



### Chaku-motion/Chaku-Uta®

You can download an i-motion from i-mode sites to the i-mode terminal and set the downloaded data for the ring tone and incoming image. You can use melodies and also songs of your favorite artists as ring tones. (Some of the incompatible i-motion cannot be set for Chaku-motion.)

- Setting Chaku-motion (P.102)
- "Chaku-Uta®" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Japan, Inc.

### i-αpli

By downloading i-αpli from its site, the i-mode terminal can be made more useful in many ways. For example, you can enjoy many kinds of games by downloading them to it. Downloading i-αpli for stock information allows you to check the stock price automatically at the set time. In another aspect, i-αpli for maps enables the smooth scrolling by downloading only necessary data.

- Downloading i-αpli (P.225)
- Running i-αpli (P.226)
- Running i-αpli automatically (P.230)

### i-αpli Stand-by Display

i-αpli stand-by display enables you to set i-αpli for the stand-by display and to receive mail or place a call from that display. The i-αpli stand-by display provides convenient use of the stand-by display. For example, you can display the latest news or weather information in the stand-by display, or set your favorite character to notify you of the mail reception or the alarm.

- Setting i-αpli for the stand-by display (P.230)

## i-αppli DX

i-αppli DX enables you to enjoy i-αppli more conveniently by working in conjunction with the i-mode terminal information (mail, Redial/Received record, Phonebook, etc.). For example, you can compose mail with your favorite character in the display, or set a character to notify you of the caller when receiving a call. Furthermore, information you need such as stock prices or game results can be provided in real time using mail.

- What is i-αppli DX? (P.224)

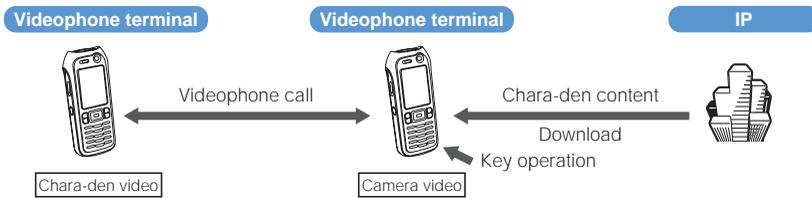
## 3D sound

An i-mode terminal with 3D sound support reproduces 3-dimensional stereophonic sound or space-wise moving sound, over a Flat-plug stereo earphone set. This function enables you to enjoy the realistic sound of i-αppli games and ring tones. (This function is enabled for 3D sound-compatible content only.)

## Chara-den

You can display an avatar of your choice instead of your own image on the videophone terminal of the recipient/caller during a videophone call. You can make the avatar move its mouth in response to the sound and operate it with the keys. You can also download a character you like.

- Downloading Chara-den (P.171)
- Checking Chara-den (P.250)
- Setting Chara-den (P.75, 76, 250)
- Operating a character (P.250)



## Infrared Communications

Data including Phonebook, Bookmark and mail can be exchanged with other devices with infrared communications such as a mobile phone and PC.

Using the infrared communications from i-αppli provides a wider range of usage of the FOMA terminal in cooperation with other infrared communications device. For example, you can use the FOMA terminal as a remote control of the TV, a membership card, etc.

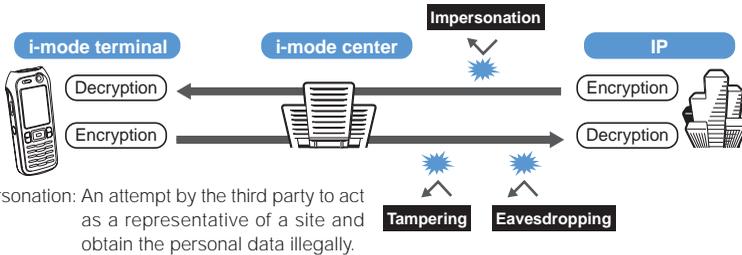
Some data cannot be exchanged depending on the other device even if it is equipped with infrared communications.

- Using the infrared communications (P.260)

## SSL Communications

SSL is a data communication system that secures user privacy by means of authentication/encryption technology. The SSL page encrypts data to prevent eavesdropping, tampering, impersonation, and forgery, assuring secure transmission of user's private information, such as a credit card number and postal address. There are two types of SSL communications. You can display SSL-compatible sites (SSL page) using the CA certificate saved in the i-mode terminal, which does not require any special operation. You can also display the sites using a user certificate downloaded from the FirstPass Center. The certificate to be used varies depending on the site (P.180).

- Using the CA certificate saved in the i-mode terminal (P.180)
- Using the user certificate of FirstPass (P.180)



## Function for restricting UIM operation

This function restricts, for example, the use of a UIM containing your information (phone number, Phonebook (partly), etc.) to download files from sites or access melody/still image/movie files received in mail by inserting this card into the i-mode terminal. This function also disables playback/display of downloaded files when the UIM is switched to another card or when the i-mode terminal is powered on without inserting a UIM.

This function does not work for still images/movies that you have recorded using the camera function and files that were saved in the i-mode terminal from an external memory.

If you have set preferred ring tones and/or stand-by display on the i-mode terminal, this function resets those settings.

## i-melody

The latest or favorite melodies can be downloaded from a site to the i-mode terminal. These melodies can be used as the ring tone (P.171).

## i-anime

Animation graphics can be downloaded from a site to the i-mode terminal. These graphics can be displayed as the stand-by or receiving display on the i-mode terminal (P.170).

## Flash®

Flash is an animation technology consisting of animation and sound. You can use a variety of animation and view sites offering rich expressive content. You can also download a Flash movie to the i-mode terminal and set it for the stand-by display.

Some Flash movies allow you to look up the terminal information data of the i-mode terminal. The saved data is as follows.

- Battery level
- Reception level
- Clock information
- Power on/off
- Ring volume setting
- Language setting
- Terminal type
- Model information

## Message Services

The message service is a service that delivers desired information (message) automatically to the i-mode terminal. There are two message service types: Message R (Request) and Message F (Free).

Message R (Request)	Deliver desired information automatically if you subscribe to a site that provides message services.
Message F (Free)	Deliver information free of packet communications charge.

- Receiving a message service (P.177)
- About the Message F setting, note that when you subscribe to i-mode at a time of a new subscription to the FOMA services on October 1st, 2004 or thereafter, [メッセージF設定] (Message F Setting) is set defaultly to [受信する] (Receive). If you do not want to receive Message F, you need to manually change the setting to [受信しない] (Reject).

For users who do not meet the above condition, the Message F Setting is set defaultly to [受信しない] (Reject). To receive Message F, you need to change the Message F setting through [オプション設定] (Options).

- When the i-mode terminal is powered off or cannot receive radio waves because it is outside of the i-mode service area or due to other reasons, Message R/F is held at the i-mode center.
- The number of messages held and the holding time at the i-mode center are as follows. When the maximum number of messages held or the maximum holding time has been exceeded, the messages are deleted from the oldest.

	Max. messages held	Max. holding time
Message R	300	72 hours
Message F	300	72 hours

- The messages held at the i-mode center can be received by the Check new messages (P.178).

### News Delivery Service (Tokudane News Bin)

This is a news delivery service from DoCoMo, which delivers information, such as news and weather forecasts, to an i-mode terminal using the Message R.

This service is a paid service that requires a subscription. After subscription, it is saved automatically in My Menu. You can also access same information from My Menu.

- Displaying Message R (P.178)

## i-mode Password

The “i-mode password” is required to subscribe/unsubscribe to/from i-mode paid sites, save links in My Menu, or change i-mode mail settings. The i-mode password is set to “0000” when you subscribe to i-mode. The code can be changed to the unique 4-digit number (P.163).

Make sure to keep the i-mode password confidential.

## Internet Connection

By entering an address (URL) of an Internet site, you can connect to the Internet and display i-mode compatible Internet sites.

- Displaying Internet sites (P.164)

Internet sites that are not compatible with i-mode may not be displayed correctly. The i-mode compatible Internet sites are those created with i-mode compatible tags. For details, see P.164.

The display may differ from what is seen on a PC display.

Internet sites with URLs that are longer than 256 characters may not be displayed.

## Important information about using i-mode

The data on sites (programs) or Internet sites is generally protected by the copyright laws. Part or all of the data such as documents and graphics obtained to the i-mode terminal from these sites (programs) or Internet sites cannot be sold or redistributed, whether they are changed or not, without consent of the copyright holders except for personal use.

The data saved in the i-mode terminal such as mail, messages, screen memos, i-αppli, i-motion, and bookmarks may be lost as a result of malfunction, repair, change, or other handling of the i-mode terminal. It is recommended that you always keep the saved data and the important data in a separate note. Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the i-mode terminal.

When an i-mode terminal is repaired, the information downloaded using i-mode, i-αppli, and i-motion are not transferred to the new mobile phone because of copyright laws, excluding some cases. When the UIM is switched to another card, or the i-mode terminal is powered on without inserting the UIM, some of the terminal models may not be able to display/play back still images/movies/melodies downloaded from sites, attached files (still images/movies/melodies) sent/received by mail, screen memos, and Message R/F.

If you set a file whose display/playback is restricted by the UIM for the stand-by display, ring tone, and/or other applications, those settings are reset to the default settings if the UIM is switched to another card or the FOMA terminal is powered on without inserting a UIM.

## Displaying the i-mode Menu

- 1 Press  (i-mode) in the stand-by display.



Menu name	Function
i Menu	Connect the FOMA terminal to the i-mode center (P.159).
Bookmark	Display favorite sites and Internet sites (P.165).
Screen Memo	Display sites saved in the FOMA terminal (P.168).
Go to location	Connect the FOMA terminal to the Internet (P.164).
i-Channel	Display the list of channels (P.235).
Message	Display the list of Message R/Message F received (P.178).
Check new messages	Check whether the i-mode center holds mail, Message R, and Message F (P.178, 203).
i-mode setting	Set the i-mode settings on the FOMA terminal (P.105, 114, 174, etc.).

### To display i Menu while displaying a site

From the Function menu, select [i Menu].

# Displaying Sites

Various sites offered by IP (information service providers) can be displayed (the subscription is necessary for some sites).

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i Menu] [メニューリスト] (Menu List) and press .



- 2 Select a site and press .

The FOMA terminal is connected to the site.

Some of the connected sites may request you to send the "manufacturer's serial number of the mobile phone/UIM (FOMA card)" before you access the site.

The "manufacturer's serial number of the mobile phone/UIM (FOMA card)" that you send is used by IP (information service providers) to identify you in order to provide information customized for you and to determine whether the content provided by IP is compatible with the mobile phone.

Since the "manufacturer's serial number of the mobile phone/UIM (FOMA card)" is sent to IP via the Internet, it might be accessed by a third party. Note, however, that IP is not notified of your phone number, address, age, and sex by this operation.

## Displaying SSL Site

You can display SSL-compatible sites (SSL page) using an operation similar to that for general sites.

- To display an SSL site, make sure to set the date and time with the Date/time setting beforehand.



Establishing  
SSL session  
(Authenti-  
cating)

The message on the left appears when connecting to an SSL site.

"" appears when displaying an SSL site.

**To display the certificate while displaying an SSL site**

From the Function menu, select [Certificates].



SSL session  
is released

The message on the left appears when moving from an SSL site to a non-SSL site. "" disappears when displaying a non-SSL site.



Yes  
No

The confirmation message may appear when the connected site may not be secure. Select [Yes] to connect to the SSL site, or select [No] to cancel connecting to the SSL site.

If there are any problems such as an invalid certificate of the server, the SSL site may not be displayed.

# Using Sites

## Selecting Links/Textbox/Check Box, etc.

When using a site, you may display a linked site, enter texts (textbox) or select an item from multiple options (radio button and check box).

### Link



Select a link to display the page.

### Textbox



Select a textbox and enter a text.

- The mode and number of characters you can use depend on the textbox.
- When you enter a code such as the I-mode password, it may be masked by "\*\*\*\*".

### Radio button



Select one item. "○" of the selected item changes to "●".

### Check box



Select one or more items. "☐" of the selected items changes to "☑".

To cancel the selection

Move the cursor to the selected check box and press .

## Reloading a Page

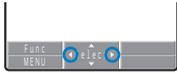
The page, which is displayed incorrectly or updated frequently, can be reloaded so that the latest data is displayed.

- 1 While displaying a site, press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.
  - 2 Select [Reload] and press .
- The display of the page is updated.

## Displaying the Previous/Next Page

The FOMA terminal stores up to 20 most recently displayed site pages in its cache. Site pages stored in the cache are cleared when you terminate i-mode. When the left or right arrow is displayed in the guide display, the pages stored in the cache can be used for display using ◀ ▶ without accessing the site. Note, however, that if the recorded site pages exceed the cache size or when a site page is programmed always to download the latest information, network communications is performed.

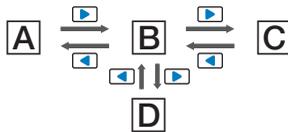
- The text or setting you entered in a site is not stored in the cache.
- The cache is a place in the terminal used for temporarily storing the displayed screen data.



◀ : Indicates that the previous page is recorded. Press ◀ to return to the previous page.

▶ : Indicates that the next page is recorded. Press ▶ to proceed to the next page.

Example: When viewing site pages in the order of **A** **B** **C** **B** **D**



Assuming that you view site pages in the order of **A** **B** **C** and go to a new site page **D** after going back to **B** as shown in the illustration on the left, the history for **B** **C** is cleared and starts afresh for **B** **D** at the time you go to a new site page **D**.

## Displaying a Site URL

The URL of the currently displayed site can be displayed. Up to 256 half-width characters (including "http://") can be displayed.

- 1** While displaying a site, press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.
- 2** Select [URL] and press .

The URL of the site is displayed.

## Sending a URL by Mail

The URL of the currently displayed site can be sent by mail.

- 1** While displaying a site, press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.
- 2** Select [Compose message] and press .
- 3** Compose mail and send it.
  - Follow the same steps as in the Compose and send mail (P.193, step 2 to 5).

## Displaying a Site Correctly

If the display of the text is incorrect on a site, you can reload the page after changing the character code.

### 1 While displaying a site, press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Word translate] [Convert]/[Auto select] and press .

**[Convert]** : Sequentially convert the character codes and display the page again. If the text is still incorrectly displayed, repeat this operation. The original display reappears when you repeat [Word translate] [Convert] four times.

**[Auto select]** : Automatically select and convert the character code and display the page. The character code is converted and the page is displayed again.

The page may not be displayed correctly even if the character code is changed. Note that changing the character code when the page is displayed correctly may cause the page to be displayed incorrectly.

## What is Flash?

Flash is an animation technology that uses animation and sound. Flash movies enhance site content for richer expression. You can set a Flash movie for the stand-by display and other applications.

The operation of a site that uses Flash movies may be the same but the display may be different.

Even if  (Select) is displayed, you may not be able to use the Select function.

If you do not operate the FOMA terminal for more than about 30 seconds while the Flash movie is played back, the playback pauses. To operate a Flash movie again, from the Function menu, select [Retry].

Some Flash movies may be accompanied by a sound effect. To mute the sound effect, set the Sound effect to [OFF].

Even if a Flash movie is displayed, it may not operate properly in some cases.

When you save a Flash movie using the Save image function or save it in Screen Memo, a portion of it may not be saved or it may appear differently from the one you viewed on the site.

If an error occurs during a Flash movie playback, this Flash movie cannot be saved.

Some of the Flash movies vibrate the FOMA terminal during playback. Note that this could happen even if the vibrator is set to [OFF].

Some Flash movies may have to use data saved in the i-mode terminal. To allow such a Flash movie to use saved data, set the Use phone info of the i-mode setting to [Yes] (P.176). This item is set to [Yes] at the time of purchase. Saved data that may be used by a Flash movie is as follows.

- |                       |                    |                     |                     |
|-----------------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| - Battery level       | - Reception level  | - Clock information | - Power on/off      |
| - Ring volume setting | - Language setting | - Terminal type     | - Model information |

## Terminating i-mode

### 1 Press during i-mode, select [Yes], and press .

i-mode is terminated and “” disappears.

## Saving a Site in My Menu

If you save the frequently used sites in My Menu, you can access them easily from next time. Up to 45 sites can be saved in My Menu.

- Only i-mode sites can be saved in My Menu. To save Internet sites, use the Bookmark.

- 1** While displaying a site, select [マイメニュー登録] (Save My Menu) and press 
  - The location of [マイメニュー登録] (Save My Menu) and the menu structure may vary depending on each site.
- 2** Enter the i-mode password at [iモードパスワード] (i-mode Password).  
The password is masked by “\*\*\*\*”.
- 3** Select [決定] (OK) and press .  
The site is saved in My Menu.

The site is saved automatically in My Menu when you subscribe to a paid site.

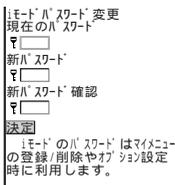
## Changing the i-mode Password

The “i-mode password” is used for saving/deleting My Menu, subscribing to/unsubscribing from the message service or paid i-mode sites, and changing i-mode mail settings. The i-mode password is set to “0000” at the time of purchase. Change it to your own i-mode password.

Make sure to keep the i-mode password confidential.

- If you forget the i-mode password, you must bring your official identification (such as driver's license), the FOMA terminal, and UIM with you to the nearest DoCoMo shop.

- 1** From the i-mode menu, select [i Menu] [オプション設定] (Options) [iモードパスワード変更] (Change i-mode Password) and press .



- 2** Enter the current i-mode password at [現在のパスワード] (Current Password).  
The password is masked by “\*\*\*\*”.
- 3** Enter the new password at [新パスワード] (New Password).
- 4** Enter the new password at [新パスワード確認] (New Password Confirmation).
- 5** Select [決定] (Select) and press .  
The i-mode password is changed.

## Displaying Internet Sites

i-mode compatible Internet site can be displayed from the i-mode terminal.

- Sites that are not compatible with i-mode may not be displayed correctly.

### 1 From the i-mode menu, select [Go to location] [URL address] and press .

The URL address display appears.

- When the URL has been entered before, the URL entered previously is displayed.
- The beginning of the URL "http://" is entered beforehand.

### 2 Press (Edit) and enter the URL.

Enter the URL including "http://" within 256 half-width characters.

### 3 Press (Cnct).

The FOMA terminal is connected to the site.

- Operations while displaying Internet sites are the same as while displaying the i-mode sites.

## Displaying Using the URL List

Up to 50 sites that have been displayed by entering their URLs are saved in the URL list. The sites can be directly accessed from the URL list.

- If a total of 50 URLs is saved in the URL list, the URL is overwritten from the oldest.

### 1 From the i-mode menu, select [Go to location] [URL list] and press .

The URL list display appears.

#### To delete a URL

Move the cursor to the URL and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] [Yes]. To delete several URLs, from the Function menu, select [Select&delete], select URLs, press  (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all URLs, from the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### 2 Select a URL and press .

The URL list display appears.

#### To copy a URL

Press  (Copy).

### 3 Press (Cnct).

The FOMA terminal is connected to the site of the selected URL.

# Saving a Site to Display It Quickly

Up to 200 URLs of the sites you display frequently can be saved in the Bookmark. The sites can be directly accessed from the Bookmark.

- Both i-mode and Internet sites can be saved as bookmarks, but with some exceptions.
- The text or setting you entered on the site, etc. is not saved in the Bookmark.

## Saving a Site in the Bookmark

- A URL including "http://" of up to 256 half-width characters can be saved as a bookmark.

**1** While displaying a site, press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

**2** Select [Add bookmark] a folder and press .

The bookmark is saved in the selected folder.

**When the maximum number of bookmarks has been reached**

The screen for confirming whether to overwrite a bookmark appears. To overwrite a bookmark, select [Yes] and select a bookmark to overwrite.

A title of up to 12 full-width or 24 half-width characters can be saved in the Bookmark. If the length of the title exceeds the limit, extra characters are deleted. If there is no title on the bookmark, the URL appears instead.

## Displaying a Site

A site can be displayed using a bookmark.

**1** From the i-mode menu, select [Bookmark] and press .

The Bookmark folder list appears.

- The following icons show the type of folder.

 (Yellow) Preset folder	 (Blue) User-created folder
--	--

**2** Select a folder and press .

The list of bookmarks appears.

**3** Select a bookmark and press  (Cnct).

The FOMA terminal is connected to the site of the selected bookmark.

**To display other site while displaying a site**

From the Function menu, select [Bookmark] a folder a bookmark.

**To check the URL**

Move the cursor to the bookmark and press  (Check).

**To copy a bookmark URL**

Move the cursor to the bookmark and press  (Check) and  (Copy).

**To change the title**

Move the cursor to the bookmark and from the Function menu, select [Edit title]. Enter the title within 12 full-width or 24 half-width characters.

## Adding/Deleting Folders

Folders in which bookmarks are saved can be added or deleted. Up to 10 folders can be used to manage bookmarks and folder names can also be changed.

- You cannot delete the top folder in the list (default: [ブックマーク] (Bookmark)).

Example: Adding a folder

**1** From the i-mode menu, select [Bookmark] and press , then press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.

**2** Select [Edit folder] [Create folder] and press , then enter a folder name.  
Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.  
The folder is added.

### To change a folder name

Move the cursor to a folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] [Edit folder name]. Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.

### To delete a folder

Move the cursor to a folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] [Delete folder]. Enter the Security code and select [Yes].

## Moving a Bookmark to a Different Folder

Bookmarks can be moved to a different folder using three methods.

Example: Moving a bookmark

**1** From the i-mode menu, select [Bookmark] a folder and press .

### To move all bookmarks in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Move] [Move all] [Yes] a folder.

### To move several bookmarks

From the Function menu, select [Move] [Select&move], select bookmarks, and press  (Complete). Select [Yes] a folder.

**2** Select a bookmark and press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.

**3** Select [Move] [Move one] [Yes] and press .

The Select move to display appears.

**4** Select a folder and press .

The selected bookmark is moved to the different folder.

## Deleting a Bookmark

You can delete bookmarks using four methods.

Example: Deleting a bookmark

- 1** From the i-mode menu, select [Bookmark] and press .

**To delete all bookmarks**

From the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2** Select a folder and press .

**To delete all bookmarks in the folder**

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**To delete several bookmarks**

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete], select bookmarks, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].

- 3** Select a bookmark and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 4** Select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes] and press .

The selected bookmark is deleted.

## Saving a Site in the Screen Memo

You can save your favorite sites as a screen memo. You can also instantaneously call up a saved screen memo.

- You can save up to 100 screen memos, each up to 100K bytes. The number of screen memos that can be saved varies between 10 and 100 depending on the size of each screen memo to be saved.
- The text or setting you entered on the site, etc. is not saved in the Screen Memo.

### Saving a Screen Memo

- 1 While displaying a site, press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Add screen memo] and press .

The screen memo is saved.

#### When there is not enough memory

The screen for confirming whether to overwrite a screen memo appears. To overwrite, select [Yes], select unnecessary screen memos, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].

#### When the maximum number of screen memos has been reached

The screen for confirming whether to overwrite a screen memo appears. To overwrite, select [Yes] and select a screen memo to overwrite.

### Displaying a Screen Memo

Saved screen memos can be displayed. The following icons show the status of the screen memo.

	Normal screen memo		Protected screen memo
---	--------------------	---	-----------------------

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [Screen Memo] and press .

A list of screen memos appears.

- 2 Select a screen memo and press .

The screen memo is displayed.

#### To check the URL

Move the cursor to the screen memo and from the Function menu, select [URL].

#### To change the title

Move the cursor to the screen memo and from the Function menu, select [Edit title]. Enter the title within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.

To operate the Flash movie or GIF animation again, from the Function menu, select [Retry].

## Protecting a Screen Memo

You can protect screen memos from being overwritten. You can protect up to 50 screen memos (up to 500K bytes).

- 1 Select a screen memo from the screen memo list and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

To cancel the protection

Move the cursor to the protected screen memo and press  (Func).

- 2 Select [Protect ON/OFF] [Yes] and press .

The screen memo is protected and "" changes to ".

## Deleting a Screen Memo

You can delete screen memos using three methods.

Example: Deleting a screen memo

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [Screen Memo] and press .

To delete all screen memos

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete several screen memos

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete], select screen memos, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].

- 2 Select a screen memo and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 3 Select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes] and press .

The selected screen memo is deleted.

## Obtaining Graphics from a Site/Message

You can load and save your preferred graphic from images and background images displayed on sites, screen memos, messages, mail, and ToruCa(detail) cards (i-anime compatible).

You can set the obtained GIF and JPEG images for the stand-by display, as a call image, menu icon, etc., and the Flash movie for the stand-by display, as a call image, etc. You can also use frames and stamps for the camera function.

### Graphics that can be obtained

Format	Maximum size to be saved	Maximum number to be saved	Restrictions
GIF	500K bytes	93 to 1,000 files	• You cannot save a GIF image exceeding [VGA(640 × 480)] and an i-anime exceeding [Stby(320 × 240)].
JPEG	1,235K bytes		• You may not be able to save some JPEG images.
Flash	100K bytes	-	-

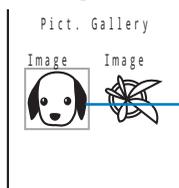
- The number of graphics that can be saved varies depending on the size of the saved graphics.

Example: Saving a graphic displayed in a site

### 1 While displaying a site, press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Save image] a graphic and press .



To save the background image

Select [Save backgnd img].

A border appears around the selected graphic.

### 3 Select a folder and press .

The graphic is saved in the selected folder and the screen for confirming whether to set to the stand-by display appears.

**When there is not enough memory or the maximum number of graphics has been reached**

The screen informing insufficient memory or that the maximum number has been reached appears. To save the new graphic, select [Slct delete file] a folder a file, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].

### 4 Select [Yes]/[No] and press .

Select [Yes] to set the graphic for the stand-by display.

Graphics can also be downloaded from "SO@Planet".

[i Menu] [メニューリスト] [ケータイ電話メーカー] [SO@Planet]

# Downloading Data from Related Sites

You can download i-melody, PDF data, Chara-den, ToruCa cards, Deco-mail templates, and dictionaries from related sites.

## Files that can be downloaded

Type	Format	Maximum size to be saved	Maximum number to be saved	Restrictions
Melody	SMF, MFi	100K bytes	10 to 200 files	• Downloaded melodies may not be played back properly.
PDF data	-	2M bytes	1 to 50 files	• PDF data whose size is unknown is downloaded until the downloaded size of it reaches 2M bytes. • You may be able to display the PDF data you failed to download by downloading it again. However, some PDF data may be disabled for display.
Chara-den	-	100K bytes	5 to 50 files	-
ToruCa	-	1,024 bytes	10 to 100 files	-
ToruCa(detail)	-	100K bytes		
Deco-mail template	-	20K bytes	50 files	-
Dictionary data	-	100K bytes	20 files	-

- The number of files that can be saved varies depending on the size of the saved files.

Example: Downloading an i-melody from a related site

- 1 While displaying a site, select an i-melody and press .



The i-melody is downloaded.

**To check the i-melody before saving**

Select [Play].

**To cancel the saving**

Select [Back].

- 2 Select [Save] a folder and press .

The downloaded melody is saved to the selected folder.

### To download PDF data

While displaying the site, select PDF data and select a place to save to from [Data box]/[Memory Stick]. When you select [Data box], select a folder.

### To download a Chara-den

While displaying the site, select a Chara-den and select [Save].

### To download a ToruCa card

While displaying the site, select a ToruCa card and select [Yes] a folder.

### To download dictionary data

While displaying the site, select the dictionary data and select [Save].

### When there is not enough memory

The screen for confirming whether to overwrite the data appears. To overwrite, select unnecessary data (P.260).

If you have deleted preinstalled Chara-den files, you can download them from "SO@Planet".  
[i Menu] [メニューリスト] [ケータイ電話メーカー] [SO@Planet]



## Using the Phone To/Mail To/Web To/i-αppli To

You can use highlighted information in a site, message, mail main body, i-motion Telop text, i-αppli, ToruCa card, PDF data, and i-Channel channel list to place a call, compose mail, display an Internet website, start i-αppli, or perform infrared communications.

- Sometimes, you may not be able to select an item for establishing a link to the displayed phone number/mail address/URL/i-αppli and performing infrared communications. Whether you can use the function depends on sites, mail, messages, i-motion, software, ToruCa cards, and i-Channel contents.

### Placing a Call from the Current Display

If the current display contains any phone number, a phone call can be placed directly from the display (Phone To, AV Phone To).

- 1 Select a phone number in the display and press .**  
The screen for confirming whether to place a call appears.
- 2 Select [Yes] [Voice call]/[Videophone] and press .**  
The call is connected to the selected phone number.

### Originating a PushTalk Call from the Current Display

If the current display contains any phone number, a PushTalk call can be originated directly from the display (Phone To).

- 1 Select a phone number in the display and press .**  
The screen for confirming whether to place a call appears.
- 2 Select [Yes] [PushTalk] and press .**  
The PushTalk call is connected to the selected phone number.

### Composing/Sending Mail from the Current Display

If the current display contains any mail address, mail can be composed/sent directly from the display (Mail To).

- 1 Select a mail address in the display and press .**  
The Edit mail display appears.  
The selected mail address is entered as the address.
- 2 Compose mail and send it.**
  - Follow the same steps as in the Compose and send mail (P.193, step 3 to 5).

## Accessing a Site from the Current Display

If the current display contains any URL, the site can be accessed directly from the display (Web To).

- 1 Select a link (URL) in the display and press .

The FOMA terminal is connected to the linked site.

## Running i-αppli from the Current Display

If the current display contains any i-αppli link, the software can be started to run directly from the display. The software can also be started using the infrared communications (i-αppli To).

- Download software that can be started by the i-αppli To beforehand.
- i-αppli cannot be started to run when the i-αppli To is set to [No] (P.227).

- 1 Select i-αppli link in the display and press .

The screen for confirming whether to start i-αppli appears.

- 2 Select [Yes] and press .

The software is started to run.

## Starting the Infrared Communications from the Current Display

If the current display contains any item to start the infrared communications, the infrared communications can be started directly from the display.

- 1 Select the item in the display and press .

The screen for confirming whether to start the infrared communications appears.

- 2 Select [Yes] and press .

The infrared communications is started.

## Setting i-mode

### Setting Whether to Receive a PushTalk Call during i-mode

You can set whether to receive a PushTalk call by disconnecting i-mode if there is any incoming PushTalk call during i-mode or i-mode communications.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] [i-mode Arrival Act] and press .

[Prefer PushTalk] : Receive the PushTalk call and disconnect i-mode. After the PushTalk call is finished, the previous display reappears.

[Prefer i-mode] : Continue i-mode without receiving a PushTalk call. The missed PushTalk call is not saved in the Received record.

- 2 Select the preferred function and press .

The preferred function during i-mode communications is set.

### Setting the Connection Timeout

The duration before disconnecting the FOMA terminal automatically can be set when you cannot send or receive data due to heavy traffic at the i-mode center.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] [Common setting] [Connection timeout] and press .

[60sec] : Disconnect automatically when unable to send/receive data for 60 seconds.

[90sec] : Disconnect automatically when unable to send/receive data for 90 seconds.

[Unlimited] : Do not set the connection timeout (however, the connection can be disconnected due to the radio wave condition or other reasons).

- 2 Select the waiting duration and press .

The Connection timeout is set.

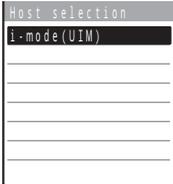
## Changing the i-mode Host (ISP Connection Communication)

You do not need to change the Host setting when using the i-mode service of DoCoMo.

You can set up to 10 hosts for receiving services other than the services provided by i-mode (DoCoMo). When you change a host to other than [i-mode(UIM)], you cannot use i-mode.

- You must always enter [Host name], [Host number], and [Host address].

- From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] [Common setting] [Host selection] and press .



### To edit the host setting

Move the cursor to the host and from the Function menu, select [Edit], and enter the Security code. Edit each item.

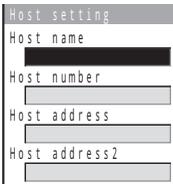
### To delete the host

Move the cursor to the host and from the Function menu, select [Delete one], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- Press  (Create).

The Security code screen appears.

- Enter the Security code and press  (OK).



[Host name] : Enter a host name within eight full-width or 16 half-width characters.

[Host number] : Enter a host number within 99 half-width characters.

[Host address]/[Host address2]

: Enter a host address within 30 half-width characters.

- Enter each item.

- Press  (Complete).

The entered host is saved.

- Select the host and press .

The host is changed.

Note that packet communications is not covered by the Pake-Houdai service if a host of the packet communications is set to other than [i-mode(UIM)].

## Setting Whether to Use Saved Data for Flash Movies

You can set whether to use the saved data (P.162) when you play back a Flash movie displayed on a site or saved in the Screen Memo.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] [Use phone info] and press .
- 2 Select [Yes]/[No] and press .  
The Use phone info is set.

## Disabling the Display of Graphics

You can set whether to display graphics when displaying sites, screen memos or messages.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] [Display img] and press .
- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .  
The Set image display is set.  
When set to [OFF], "" is displayed instead of a graphic.

Some graphics may not be displayed correctly even if the Display img is [ON].

## Displaying a Site Automatically with the Correct Character Code

You can set to identify the character code of a site automatically.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] [Auto detect] and press .
- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .  
The Auto detect is set.

Even if the Auto detect is [ON], some sites may not be displayed correctly.

## Receiving a Message

When a message is received while in the stand-by display, the contents of the message are automatically displayed. Up to 20 Message R and Message F each can be saved in the FOMA terminal.



When receiving a message, "R" or "F" flashes.

When receiving is completed, "R" or "F" is displayed, the indicator flashes, the ring tone sounds, and the number of received messages is displayed.

The contents of the message appear automatically after about 15 seconds. The display before receiving reappears after about 15 seconds when no operations are made.

- Messages that are automatically displayed are saved as unread.

When the number of saved received messages has reached 20 and a new message is received, the unprotected message is overwritten from the oldest.

You can also disable Auto-display of messages (P.177).

Messages are held at the i-mode center when "R" or "F" appears (sometimes "R" and "F" do not appear even if messages are held at the i-mode center).

If the maximum number of messages is held at the i-mode center, "R" or "F" appears. In this case, perform the Check new messages after checking contents of the unread messages, delete unnecessary messages, and cancel protection of the messages.

Mail that has been sent to you in the following situations is held at the i-mode center.

- During a videophone call
- When the FOMA terminal is powered off
- When the FOMA terminal is outside of the i-mode service area
- During PushTalk communications
- While the Self mode is set
- During the infrared communications
- While connected to the FirstPass Center

## Setting Auto-display

You can set to display the contents of the message automatically when it is received while in the stand-by display. You can also select which message should be displayed first when receiving both Message R and Message F at the same time.

**1** From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] [Auto-display] and press .

[Prefer msgR] : Display automatically Message R first when receiving Message R and Message F at the same time.

[MessageR only] : Display automatically Message R only.

[Prefer msgF] : Display automatically Message F first when receiving Message R and Message F at the same time.

[MessageF only] : Display automatically Message F only.

[Display off] : Do not display automatically.

**2** Select a display method and press .

The Auto-display is set.

# Checking a New Message

New messages held at the i-mode center while the FOMA terminal is powered off or outside of the i-mode service area can be checked.

- Depending on the radio wave condition, you may not be able to check new messages.

## 1 Press (Mail) for over a second in the stand-by display.

The FOMA terminal is connected to the i-mode center, and an inquiry result is displayed.

### To check messages

Select [MessageR] or [MessageF].

You can select an inquiry item (P.216).

# Displaying a Message

The list of received messages can be displayed.

## 1 From the i-mode menu, select [Message] [MessageR]/[MessageF] and press .



- The figures at the right end of the title line show the order of the message at the cursor/the total number of messages.
- The following icons show the status and type of the message.

	Unread message		With melody attachment
	Read message		With still image attachment
	Protected read message		With ToruCa card attachment

## 2 Select a message and press .



The message appears and  changes to .

- The figures at the right end of the title line show the order of the message at the cursor/the total number of messages.
- The following icons show the details of a message. Other icons are the same as in step 1.

### Message items

	Received date/time of the message		Main body
	Subject		

### File attachment type

	The image is not obtained yet	 (Orange)	With invalid melody attachment (MFi format)
	Failed to obtain the image		
	With invalid image attachment	 (Green)	With melody attachment (SMF format) (When the UIM is not inserted)
	With image attachment (When the UIM is not inserted or other than that used when the message was received)	 (Orange)	With melody attachment (MFi format) (When the UIM is not inserted)
 (Green)	With melody attachment (SMF format)		
 (Orange)	With melody attachment (MFi format)		With ToruCa(detail) card attachment (When the UIM is not inserted)

- For details about the operation of the file attachment, see P.206.

### To display the previous or next message

Press  to display the previous message or  to display the next message.

### To reload an image that you were unable to load

From the Function menu, select [Image reload].

## Protecting a Message

Message R or Message F can be protected from being overwritten.

- An unread message cannot be protected.

Example: Protecting Message R

- 1** From the i-mode menu, select [Message] [MessageR] and press .

To protect Message F

From the i-mode menu, select [Message] [MessageF].

- 2** Select a message and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

To cancel the protection

Move the cursor to the protected message and press  (Func).

- 3** Select [Protect ON/OFF] [Yes] and press .

The message is protected and "✓" changes to .

## Deleting a Message

You can delete messages using four methods.

Example: Deleting Message R

- 1** From the i-mode menu, select [Message] [MessageR] and press .

To delete Message F

From the i-mode menu, select [Message] [MessageF].

To delete all messages

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete all read messages

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete read msg], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete several messages

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete], select messages, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].

- 2** Select a message and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 3** Select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes] and press .

The selected message is deleted.

## Operating the SSL List

You can set to validate/invalidate the certificate that is required to connect to an SSL site.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] [SSL list] and press .



[CA certify] : An authentication company issues these certificates. They are saved in the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

[DoCoMo cert.] : This certificate is required for connecting to the FirstPass Center and FirstPass-compatible sites and is saved on the UIM (green).

[User cert.] : This certificate is downloaded from the FirstPass Center by [User certificate] and is saved in the UIM (green).

**To check the certificate**

Move the cursor to the certificate and press .

- 2 Select an SSL certificate and press  (Set).

The Security code screen appears.

- 3 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

The Valid/Invalid display appears.

- 4 Select [Valid]/[Invalid] and press .

The SSL certificate is set.

When set to [Invalid], "SSL" changes to "SSL". The SSL communications is canceled when connecting to an SSL site that requires a certificate.

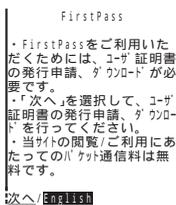
## Setting the FirstPass

You can issue and download the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.

The user certificate certifies that you are a FOMA subscriber. The downloaded user certificate is saved on the green UIM (FOMA card) and enables you to use FirstPass-compatible sites.

- You cannot use the user certificate using the blue UIM.
- To connect to the FirstPass Center, set the date and time (P.44).
- The screens and operation methods displayed by the FirstPass Center may change.
- While the FOMA terminal is connected to the FirstPass Center, you cannot send/receive mail or receive Message R/F.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] [User certificate] and press .



## 2 Select [English] and press .



## 3 Select [Request your certificate] [Continue] and press .

### To void the issued certificate

Select [Other settings] [Revoke your certificate] [Yes], enter the PIN2 code, and select [Continue] [Continue] [Continue].

## 4 Enter the PIN2 code and press (OK).

- If you do not enter the PIN2 code within 15 seconds, the request for issuing your certificate is canceled.

## 5 Select [Download] [Continue] and press .



The user certificate is downloaded and added to the list of SSL certificates (P.180).

### Precautions on the use of FirstPass

The packet communications charge is free when you connect to the FirstPass Center.

The packet communications performed when connecting to a FirstPass-compatible site are covered by the Pake-Houdai service. However, data communications with a PC connected are not covered by the Pake-Houdai service.

FirstPass is an electronic authentication service provided by DoCoMo. Using FirstPass enables client authentication, which is performed between the site and FOMA terminal user by exchanging certificates and verifying the received certificate of the other side for mutual authentication.

FirstPass can be used for Internet communications from the FOMA terminal as well as for Internet communications by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC. To use on a PC, you must install the FirstPass PC software on the supplied CD-ROM.

When you request the user certificate to be issued, carefully read the displayed "FirstPass Agreement" and then make the request if you accept the terms.

You need to enter the PIN2 code in order to use the user certificate (P.117).

You are liable for all operations performed after you enter the PIN2 code. Therefore, exercise care to prevent the use of your UIM or PIN2 code by others.

If you have lost or stolen your UIM, you can invalidate your user certificate at the "General Contact" numbers provided on the backcover of this manual.

DoCoMo shall have no liability for any content and information provided by FirstPass-compatible sites. Any problem must be resolved between you and the FirstPass-compatible site.

DoCoMo and the authentication company do not guarantee the security for using FirstPass and SSL. Therefore, you must use them at your own discretion and responsibility.

# Changing the Host for Certificate Issue

Normally, you do not need to change the setting.

When you want a service other than FirstPass services, you can set one host. Note that if you change the setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass Center.

- You cannot set this function during i-mode connection.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] [Host selection] and press .



### To edit the host setting

Move the cursor to the host and from the Function menu, select [Edit] and enter the Security code. Edit each item.

- You cannot edit the host ([ドコモ]) that is preset at the time of purchase.

### To restore the default host setting

From the Function menu, select [Reset], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2 Press  (Create).

The Security code screen appears.

- 3 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).



[Host name] : Enter a host name within 99 half-width characters.

[Host address] : Enter a host address within 100 half-width characters.

- 4 Enter each item.

- 5 Press  (Complete).

The entered host is saved.

- 6 Select a host and press .

The host is changed.

## What is i-motion?

i-motion is movie data that contains both video and sound tracks. You can play back an i-motion on the FOMA terminal and set a saved i-motion for the stand-by display. The i-motion can be of the following types. The type of i-motion varies depending on a site and cannot be selected.

Category		Description
Type	Playback method	
Standard type (Allowed to be saved )	Playback is performed while loading data (500K bytes maximum)	Playback starts after halfway downloading i-motion data and proceeds while downloading the rest of the data.
	Playback is performed after loading data (500K bytes maximum)	Playback starts after all i-motion data is downloaded.
Streaming type (Not allowed to be saved)	Playback is performed while loading data (2M bytes maximum)	Playback starts after halfway downloading i-motion data and proceeds while downloading the rest of the data. The i-motion data is deleted once it is played back.

Some i-motion cannot be saved.

## Downloading an i-motion from Sites

- You can save up to 100 i-motion files, each up to 500K bytes. The number of i-motion files that can be saved varies between 3 and 100 depending on the size of each i-motion file to be saved.

### 1 While displaying a site, select an i-motion and press .



The i-motion is downloaded to the FOMA terminal.

When [Auto replay] is set to [ON], playback of the i-motion starts automatically after the downloading is completed. (For i-motion that can be played back while being downloaded, playback starts after halfway downloading data.)

- The operations during playback is the same as those described for i-motion in the Data box (P.248).
- Even if you stop playback while the downloading is in progress, the downloading continues.

### 2 Select [Play] and press .

#### To save data

Select [Save] a folder to save to.

#### To display detailed information

Select [File property].

#### When a link is set in the Telop text

When you stop or pause playback, a confirmation screen appears and you can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, and Web To functions.

- If there are several link items, only one link item is enabled. The link to be enabled depends on the i-motion.

Some i-motion may not be played back/saved properly even if its data is downloaded successfully.

The playback may be paused or the image may be distorted when you play back i-motion while downloading data depending on the radio wave condition, communication line conditions, or the communication speed. A standard type i-motion allows you to play back as many times as you want after downloading (using the saved data). However, a streaming type i-motion does not allow further playback once it is played back (unless you download it again).

When you receive a voice or PushTalk call while downloading/playing back/saving an i-motion, the downloading/playing back/saving is stopped to allow you to answer the call. The downloading/playing back/saving is also stopped when the Alarm/Schedule alarm is activated. You can download/play back/save some types of i-motions after you finish the operation. However, when the battery level becomes 0, the downloading/playing back/saving is canceled. Make sure to use the FOMA terminal after fully charging the battery pack.

You cannot download or play back an i-motion in the ASF format.

## Setting Auto Replay of i-motion and i-motion Type to Download

You can set whether to automatically play back standard type i-motion. You can also set the type of i-motion to be downloaded.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] [i-motion setting] and press .



[Auto replay] : Set whether to automatically play back a standard type i-motion during or after downloading.

[i-motion type] : Set the type of i-motion to be downloaded.

- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Auto replay].

[ON] : Automatically play back the i-motion during or after downloading.

[OFF] : Do not automatically play back the i-motion during or after downloading and display the download completion screen.

- 3 Select the type of i-motion at [i-motion type].

[Std] : Download standard type i-motion only. Streaming type i-motion cannot be downloaded.

[Std./Streaming] : Download both standard type and streaming type i-motion.

# Mail

Mail Function of the FOMA Terminal .....	186
What is i-mode Mail? .....	187
Displaying the Mail Menu .....	<Mail menu> 193
<b>Composing i-mode Mail/Deco-mail</b>	
Composing and Sending i-mode Mail .....	<Compose and send mail> 193
Composing and Sending Deco-mail .....	<Compose and send Deco-mail> 195
Using a Template to Send Mail .....	198
File Attachment .....	<File attachment> 199
Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later .....	<Save mail> 200
<b>Receiving/Manipulating i-mode Mail</b>	
Receiving i-mode Mail .....	<Auto receive> 201
Selecting to Receive i-mode Mail .....	<Receive option> 202
Checking New i-mode Mail .....	<Check new messages> 203
Replying to i-mode Mail .....	<Reply to mail> 203
Forwarding i-mode Mail .....	<Forward mail> 204
Saving the Mail Address/Phone Number in the Phonebook .....	205
Playing Back/Saving a File Attachment Received in i-mode Mail .....	206
<b>Manipulating the Mail Box</b>	
Displaying Received/Sent/Saved Mail .....	208
<b>Setting Mail</b>	
Setting the Mail Function of the FOMA Terminal .....	<Mail setting> 214
<b>Using SMS (Short Message Service)</b>	
Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message Service) .....	<Compose and send SMS> 220
Receiving SMS (Short Message Service) .....	<Receive SMS> 221
Checking New SMS (Short Message Service) .....	<Check new SMS> 221
Setting SMS (Short Message Service) .....	<SMS setting> 222

The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

# Mail Function of the FOMA Terminal

The FOMA terminal provides two types of mail functions: i-mode mail and SMS. To use i-mode mail, you need to subscribe to i-mode.

## Mail Transmission Function

FOMA terminal      FOMA terminal

You can use i-mode mail or SMS to send a message from a FOMA terminal to another FOMA terminal.



FOMA terminal      i-mode terminal for the Mova service

You can use i-mode mail or SMS to send a message from a FOMA terminal to an i-mode terminal for the Mova service. The i-mode terminal for the Mova service receives SMS sent from a FOMA terminal as i-mode mail.



The maximum number of characters varies depending on the setting of the i-mode terminal for the Mova service.

- You cannot send SMS to an i-mode terminal for the Mova service when the SMS report is set (P.222).

i-mode terminal for the Mova service      FOMA terminal

You can use i-mode mail and Short Mail to send a message from an i-mode terminal for the Mova service to a FOMA terminal. The FOMA terminal receives Short Mail sent from an i-mode terminal for the Mova service as SMS.



Short Mail is a service that allows text messages to be exchanged between DoCoMo's mobile phones.

## What is i-mode Mail?

When subscribing to the i-mode service, mail can be exchanged with i-mode terminals (including Mova) as well as e-mail over the Internet.

The mail address when subscribing to i-mode is as follows.

### If you are a new subscriber to the i-mode service

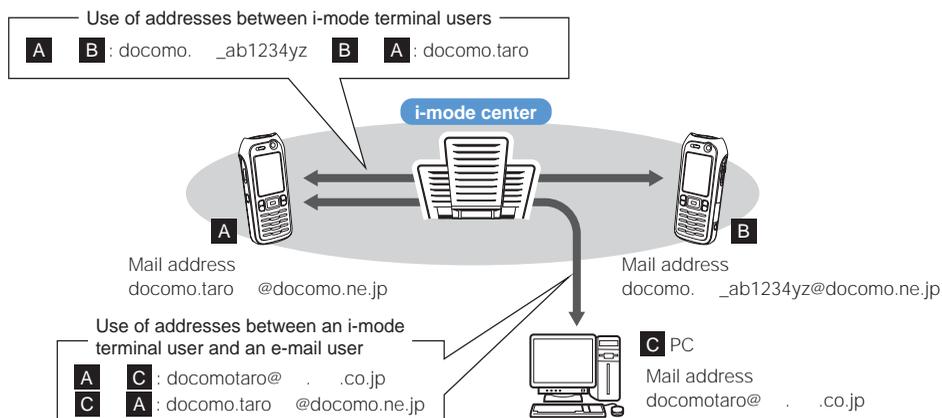
The portion of your mail address before the @ mark is a random combination of alphanumeric characters and symbols. Check your mail address after subscribing to the i-mode service.

(Example) abc1234~789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

### <Checking your mail address>

[i Menu] [オプション設定] (Options) [メール設定] (Mail Settings) [アドレス確認] (Confirm Mail Address)

- Users of i-mode terminals (including Mova) need to enter only the mail address portion before the @ mark to exchange mail.
- PC users need to enter the full mail address (i.e. including "@docomo.ne.jp") to send e-mail to i-mode terminals (including Mova).



- Sending i-mode mail (P.193)
- Receiving i-mode mail (P.201)

### Receive option

You can check the subjects of mail held at the i-mode center, and select specific mail that you want to receive, or delete mail held at the i-mode center before receiving it (P.201, 216).

## Make Settings for Mail

The following settings are available.

<Access to the individual setting>

[i Menu] [オプション設定] (Options) [メール設定] (Mail Settings) 【Individual setting item】

- For further information, see the “i-mode User’s Manual” you receive when you sign up for i-mode.

### Changing your mail address【メールアドレス設定(アドレス変更)】(Mail Address (Change Mail Address))

The portion of your mail address before the @ mark can be changed as you want, such as “docomo.taro\_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp”.

### Checking your mail address【メールアドレス設定(アドレス確認)】(Mail Address (Confirm Mail Address))

The current mail address can be checked.

### Saving a Secret code【メールアドレス設定(その他設定) シークレットコード登録】(Mail Address (Other Settings) Register a Secret Code)

The 4-digit Secret code can be saved in addition to the mail address when the address is set to “phone number@docomo.ne.jp”. As mail without this Secret code attached is not received, you can prevent receiving unwanted mail.

### Resetting the mail address【メールアドレス設定(その他設定) アドレスリセット】(Mail Address (Other Settings) Reset Mail Address)

The mail address can be set to “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp”.

### Spam Mail Prevention

You can use the following reject/receive mail settings to restrict receiving mail.

#### ① Receiving/Rejecting mail【メール受信設定(迷惑メール対策) 受信/拒否設定】(Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) Reject/Receive Mail Settings)

- You can receive mail from the specified companies selectable from DoCoMo, au, Vodafone, TU-KA, and WILLCOM.  
You can also receive mail from other companies by specifying the domains or addresses.  
You can even reject Internet mail that impersonates mail addresses of mobile phone or PHS domains.

#### ② Rejecting SMS【メール受信設定(迷惑メール対策) SMS拒否設定】(Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) SMS Rejection Settings)

- You can restrict receiving SMS by selecting from the following four types of rejections: 【SMS一括拒否】(Reject all SMS), 【非通知SMS拒否】(Reject user unset SMS), 【国際SMS拒否】(Reject international SMS), and 【非通知SMSと国際SMSの拒否】(Reject user unset SMS and international SMS). You can also check the current setting.

#### ③ Restricting Receiving Mail from Mass i-mode Mail Senders【メール受信設定(その他設定) iモードメール大量送信者からのメール受信制限】(Receiving Mail (Other Settings) Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders)

- If the number of mail sent from an i-mode terminal (including Mova) exceeds 200 per day, you can reject further mail from that terminal. By default, this option is set to “拒否する” (Reject). No additional setting is required for rejecting further mail.

#### ④ Rejecting Unsolicited Ad Mail【メール受信設定(その他設定) 未承諾広告 メール拒否】(Receiving Mail (Other Settings) Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail)

- You can reject mail sent without recipient’s agreement for the purpose of advertising products or services, which has “未承諾広告” written at the beginning of the subject field. By default, this option is set to “拒否する” (Reject). No additional setting is required for rejecting unsolicited ad mail (the senders of such mail are required to add “未承諾広告” (six full-width characters) at the beginning of the mail subject by law).

### Restricting the mail size【メール受信設定(メールサイズ制限)】(Receiving Mail (Limit Mail Size))

You can preset the maximum size of the i-mode mail you receive.

### Confirming the settings【メール受信設定(設定状況確認)】(Receiving Mail (Confirm Settings))

You can check the current mail settings such as the reject/receive mail settings.

### Suspending the mail function【メール機能停止】(Suspend Mail)

When you do not want to use the mail function provided by the i-mode center, you can disable it.

## Number of Characters You Can Send/Receive

The number of characters sent or received in i-mode mail is as follows.

Item	Full-width characters (kanji, hiragana, pictographs, etc.)	Half-width characters (alphanumeric characters, katakana, etc.)
Subject	15 characters	30 characters
Mail address	-	50 characters
Main body	5,000 characters	10,000 characters

You can send/receive up to 5,000 full-width characters (10,000 bytes) in the main body of i-mode mail. The number of characters you can send/receive, however, is reduced depending on the size of the attached file.

If the main body exceeds the maximum receivable number of characters, “/” or “//” is inserted at the end of the main body and the extra characters are deleted.

When you send i-mode mail to the Mova service, you can send up to 2,000 full-width characters in the main body. All i-shot/i-motion mail is sent as mail with URL and other attached files are deleted.

If the mail subject exceeds the maximum receivable number of characters, the extra characters are deleted.

Refrain from using half-width katakana characters and pictographs when exchanging mail with other than i-mode terminal (including Mova). These characters may not be displayed correctly on a recipient's terminal or PC.

## If Unable to Receive Mail

The i-mode center delivers mail to the i-mode terminal right after receiving it. When the i-mode terminal is powered off or cannot receive radio waves because it is outside of the i-mode service area or due to other reasons, the mail is held at the i-mode center. While the mail is held at the i-mode center, the center resends this mail to the i-mode terminal up to three times at fixed intervals.

You can also use the Receive option setting to select and receive i-mode mail held at the i-mode center.

The maximum number of mail held and the holding time at the i-mode center are as follows.

	Max. mail held	Max. holding time
i-mode mail	207 to 1,000 (Up to about 2MB)	720 hours

After the maximum holding time, mail is deleted automatically.

The maximum number of mail that can be held at the i-mode center varies depending on the size of mail data. If the i-mode center already holds the maximum number of mail, the i-mode center returns the mail to the sender with an error message. In this case, “” appears on the i-mode terminal's display.

You can receive mail held at the i-mode center using the Check new messages and Receive option. When new mail is delivered, other mail and messages being held can also be downloaded.

When mail held at the i-mode center is received by the i-mode terminal, it is deleted from the i-mode center. The received mail is saved in the i-mode terminal (P.201).

Mail of extremely large data size may be rejected at the i-mode center.

### Mail with file attachment

### Mail with melody file attachment

You can send/receive i-mode mail attached with a melody file downloaded from a site or Internet website. (You cannot send a melody file prohibited from being used as a mail attachment or retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.)

- Sending mail with melody file attachment (P.199)
- Receiving mail with melody file attachment (P.206)

### Mail with image file attachment

You can send/receive i-mode mail attached with a still image file obtained from a site, Internet website, or external memory. (You cannot send a still image file prohibited from being used as a mail attachment or retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.)

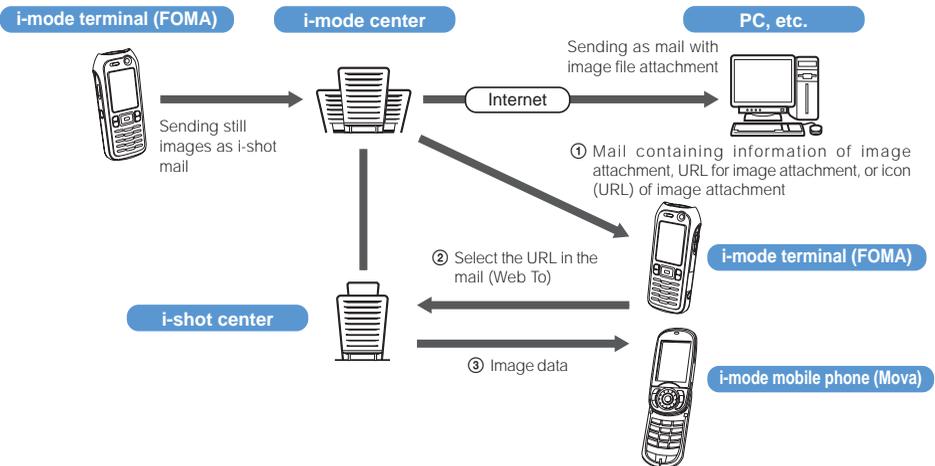
- Sending mail with still image file attachment (P.199)
- Receiving mail with still image file attachment (P.206)

### i-shot mail

You can send/receive mail attached with a still image file recorded with the terminal camera function to/from an i-mode terminal (including Mova), PC, and other company's mobile phones. The mail sent to a receiving party contains information about the attached file format or URL (or icon) for viewing an image and the expiry date of this image. You can retrieve the image by selecting the URL.

The main body of mail that can be sent to a Mova terminal can contain up to 184 full-width characters (369 bytes). If several files are attached to mail, these attached files are deleted and only the main body of the mail is sent.

- Sending i-shot mail (P.199)
- Receiving i-shot mail (P.206)



When you receive mail containing the URL of an image attachment

- Images are held for a maximum of 10 days at the i-shot center and automatically deleted after this holding period.
- The i-mode terminal can send a still image of up to 500K bytes. If you send mail to the i-mode terminal with an image attachment larger than 20K bytes, the image is automatically compressed to the size that can be retrieved by the recipient's terminal.

## i-motion mail

You can send/receive mail with a movie file attachment recorded using an i-motion mail compatible terminal and with a movie downloaded from a site to/from i-motion mail compatible terminal, PC, and other company's mobile phone. (You cannot send a movie file prohibited from being used as a mail attachment or retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.)

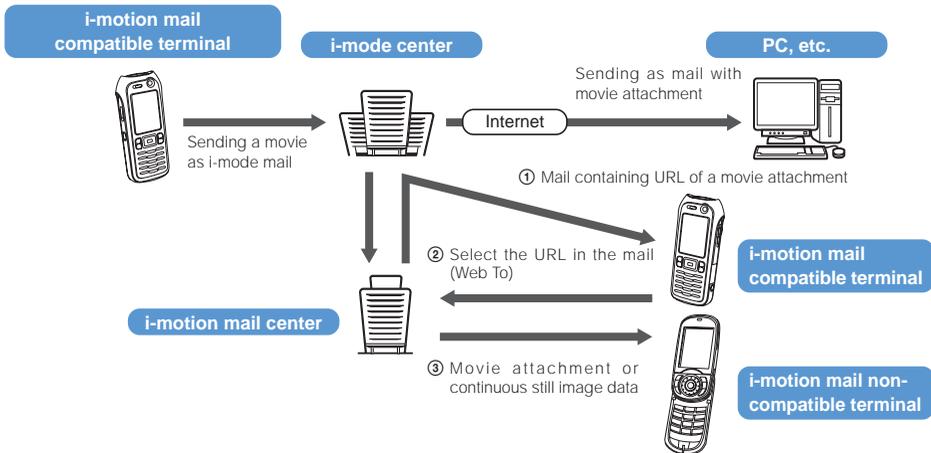
- Sending i-motion mail (P.199)
- Receiving i-motion mail (P.206)

### Operation of the service

A movie file attachment with i-motion mail is sent to the i-motion mail center and is held there. (When you send i-motion mail to a PC, it is sent directly as a file attachment.)

When an i-motion mail compatible terminal receives the mail, the URL provided in the main body of the mail must be selected to retrieve the movie.

If you send the mail to an i-motion mail non-compatible terminal, the i-motion is converted into continuous still images and the mail is received with a URL. The recipient can retrieve the continuous still images by selecting the provided URL.



- Images are held for a maximum of 10 days at the i-motion mail center and automatically deleted after this holding period.
- The i-motion mail compatible terminal can receive up to 500K bytes of movie. The received movie is automatically converted to a size that matches the display size of the i-motion mail compatible terminal.

## Deco-mail

You can compose and send original mail by changing the font size or background color and pasting an image in the main body of the mail when you edit i-mode mail. You can also receive decorated mail. (When the i-mode terminal receives decorated mail from a PC, the operation may not be the same as mail operation on a PC if there are some decorations that are not supported by the terminal.) When Deco-mail is sent to a Deco-mail non-compatible terminal, the mail is received with a URL. The recipient can view the Deco-mail by selecting the provided URL.

- Editing Deco-mail (P.195)
- Sending Deco-mail (P.195)
- Compatible models: Deco-mail is available on the Deco-mail compatible models. For further information, see the "i-mode User's Manual".
- If you forward mail that contains a URL for viewing Deco-mail or send mail in which you enter the URL directly, the recipient of the mail cannot view the Deco-mail.

## Mail broadcast

The same i-mode mail can be sent simultaneously to up to five addresses (P.194, 217).

- The packet communications charge is the same as when you send one mail. (Note, however, that the packet communications charge increases for the added data volume of the extra addresses.)

## Cc and Bcc transmission

Same as a PC, you can select an address from To, Cc, and Bcc when you edit i-mode mail. Note, however, that the mail must always contain at least one To address (P.194).

## About SMS (Short Message Service)

You can exchange messages between FOMA terminals without subscribing to i-mode.

- Sending SMS (P.220)
- Receiving SMS (P.221)
- Checking new SMS (P.221)
- See DoCoMo's website to send/receive SMS to/from an overseas telecommunications company other than DoCoMo.

## Number of Characters You Can Send/Receive

The number of characters that can be sent/received by SMS is indicated in the table below. The maximum number of characters varies depending on the setting of the type of characters to be sent (P.222).

Item	Type of characters to be sent [Japanese]	Type of characters to be sent [English]
Address	20 half-width numeric characters (your subscribed phone number) (*+* is not counted.)	
Main body	70 characters regardless of full-width/half-width	160 half-width characters

## If Unable to Receive SMS (Short Message Service)

The SMS received at the SMS center is immediately sent to the FOMA terminal. When the FOMA terminal is powered off or cannot receive radio waves because it is outside of the i-mode service area or due to other reasons, the SMS is held at the SMS center.

The SMS is held for a maximum of 72 hours at the SMS center. The sender, however, can set the holding period (P.222). The SMS is automatically deleted after the holding period.

You can receive SMS held at the SMS center by using the Check new SMS (P.221).

When the FOMA terminal receives the SMS, it is deleted from the SMS center. The received SMS is saved in the FOMA terminal.

# Displaying the Mail Menu

- 1 Press  (Mail) in the stand-by display.



(Overall Image)

Menu name	Function
Inbox	Display, reply to or forward received mail (P.208).
Outbox	Display, forward or edit sent mail (P.208).
Draft	Display mail that was saved without being sent and sent unsuccessfully (P.208).
Compose message	Compose and send new i-mode mail (P.193).
Compose SMS	Compose and send new SMS (P.220).
Check new messages	Obtain mail, Message R, and Message F held at the i-mode center (P.178, 203).
Check new SMS	Obtain SMS held at the SMS center (P.221).
Receive option	Select and receive mail held at the i-mode center (P.202).
Mail setting	Change i-mode mail and SMS settings on the FOMA terminal (P.114, 214, 222, etc.).

# Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

Sent mail is saved in [Outbox].

- Mail may not be displayed correctly on the recipient's phone depending on the radio wave condition.

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Compose message] and press .



- 2 Enter an address at [To].  
Enter an address within 50 half-width characters.
- 3 Enter a subject at [Sub].  
Enter a subject within 15 full-width or 30 half-width characters.
- 4 Enter the main body at [Body].  
Enter the main body within 5,000 full-width or 10,000 half-width characters.
- 5 Press  (Send).  
The mail is sent.

When the number of saved draft mail has reached 50 or there is not enough memory left for draft mail, you cannot compose new mail nor edit draft mail.

If new mail is sent when the number of saved sent mail has reached 500 or there is not enough free space, the unprotected sent mail is overwritten from the oldest.

If mail you send to several addresses is sent successfully to some and unsuccessfully to other addresses, the same mail is saved in [Outbox] as sent mail and in [Draft] as unsent mail/mail sent unsuccessfully.

Even if the mail is sent successfully, you may receive the error message "Transmission failed" depending on the radio wave condition and the mail is saved in [Draft].

## Adding an Address

You can send i-mode mail containing the same information to a maximum of five addresses all at once by adding these addresses. You can select the type of address from To, Cc, and Bcc.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Edit mail display.  
The Function menu appears.
- 2 Select [Add receiver] address type (To/Cc/Bcc) and press .  
The address field of the selected address type ([To]/[Cc]/[Bcc]) is added.
- 3 Enter an address in the added address field [To]/[Cc]/[Bcc].  
**To delete an address**  
Move the cursor to an address and from the Function menu, select [Delete receiver] [Yes].  
**To change the address type**  
Move the cursor to an address and from the Function menu, select [Change addr type] an address type (To/Cc/Bcc).
- 4 Compose mail and send it.
  - Follow the same steps as in the Compose and send mail (P.193, step 3 to 5).

The mail addresses entered in To and Cc are displayed at the receiving end. Note, however, that they may not be displayed depending on the terminal, device, or mail software of the recipient.

## Entering an Address from the Mail List

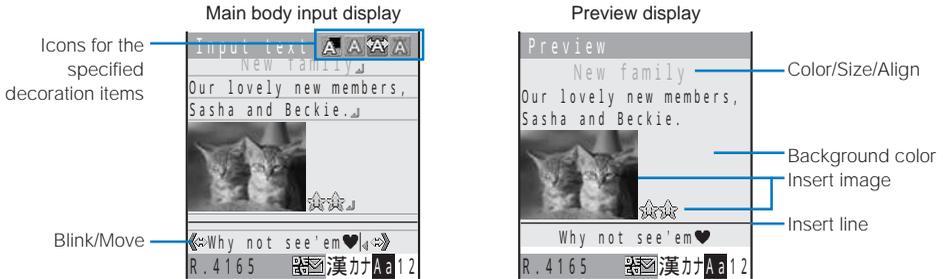
You can send mail to several recipients saved in the mail list (P.217).

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Edit mail display.  
The Function menu appears.
- 2 Select [Mail list] a mail list and press .  
All the members in the list are entered in the address box.  
**To select a specific address from the mail list**  
Press  (Each) in the Mail list display and select a member.
- 3 Compose mail and send it.
  - Follow the same steps as in the Compose and send mail (P.193, step 3 to 5).

# Composing and Sending Deco-mail

You can compose and send Deco-mail, i-mode mail that has a decorated main body.

- Deco-mail may not be received or displayed correctly depending on the recipient's terminal model.



**1** From the Mail menu, select [Compose message] and press .

The Edit mail display appears.

**2** Enter an address and subject.

- Follow the same steps as in the Compose and send mail (P.193, step 2 to 3).

**3** Decorate the main body at .

Press  (Func), select a decoration item from the Function menu, and set decorations using the Cross Deco-palette. The table below indicates items that you can use for decoration and associated icons that appear on the title bar of the Input text display after completing decoration.

Function menu	Item	Icon	Description
Deco. slcted txt	-	-	After specifying the range of text entered in the main body, you can decorate it. You can decorate the mail using [Color/Size] and [Blink/Move/Align], one after the other (P.197).
Decorate mail	-	-	After specifying decoration, you can enter text in the main body (P.196).
Color/Size	Color		You can select the font and line colors from 20 colors. The color of a pictograph is also changed.
	Size		You can select the font size from three types, large/medium/small.
Blink/Move/Align	Blink		The characters blink.
	Move		The characters run from right to left in Telop text format.
			The characters swing to the right and left.
Align	Align		The position of characters and images is left justified.
			The position of characters and images is centered.
			The position of characters and images is right justified.
Insert image	-	-	The image is inserted from My picture of the Data box (up to 10,000 bytes).
Insert line	-	-	The line in the color set in [Color/Size] is inserted.
Background color	-	-	You can select the background color from 20 colors.

**To cancel all decoration settings**

From the Function menu, select [Decorate mail] [Reset all].

**To check the decoration settings**

From the Function menu, select [Preview].

## 4 Press (Send).

### To save the composed Deco-mail as a template

From the Function menu, select [Save template] [Yes]. The Deco-mail is saved in Templates.

Even if you delete a decorated character, the data used for decoration may not be erased and the number of characters in the mail main body that you can enter could be reduced. After canceling the decoration, delete the character. When you press  for over a second, both the character and the decoration data are deleted. Blinking, motion, and animation stop automatically after a certain period of time.

When some of the Deco-mail background colors are used, the font color of an URL for obtaining an image or i-motion may become superimposed and make it difficult to read the URL.

## Entering the Main Body After Specifying Decoration

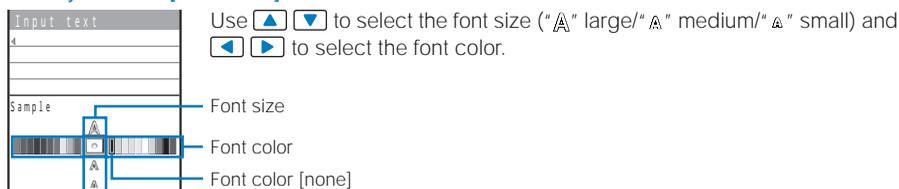
### 1 Press (Func) in the main body input display.

The Function menu appears.

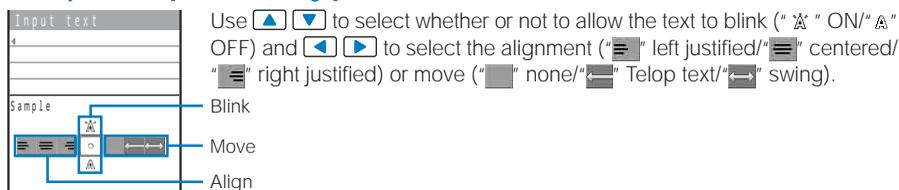
### 2 Select [Decorate mail] the decoration and press .

The Cross Deco-palette appears.

#### When you select [Color/Size]



#### When you select [Blink/Move/Align]



#### When you select [Insert image]

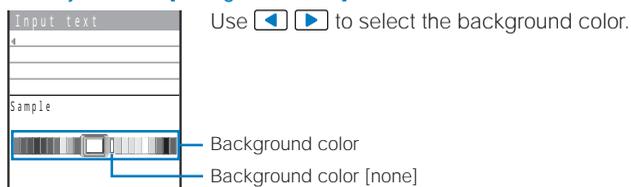
Select an image from My picture of the Data box.

- You can select a GIF or JPEG image not exceeding 10,000 bytes in file size and [CIF(352 × 288)] in image size. You cannot select an image with file restrictions or a frame image.
- To check an image, move the cursor to the image and press  (Play).

#### When you select [Insert line]

Insert a line at the line where the cursor is displayed.

#### When you select [Background color]



### 3 Enter the main body.

Enter text within 5,000 full-width or 10,000 half-width characters.

- Number of characters permitted in the main body may be reduced depending on the type and volume of decoration you use.

## Specifying Decoration After Entering the Main Body

### 1 Press (Func) in the main body input display.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Deco. slcted txt] and press .

### 3 Select the decoration start point and press .

The first character to be decorated is set.

### 4 Select the decoration end point and press .

The range of the text to be decorated is set and the Cross Deco-palette appears.

### 5 Select the font size/color and press .

Use   to select the font size (large/medium/small) and   to select the font color.

- If you do not set the font size/color, press .

### 6 Select the text blink/alignment/move and press .

Use   to select whether or not to allow the text to blink (ON/OFF) and   to select the alignment (left justified/centered/right justified) or move (none/Telop text/swing).

- If you do not set the text blink/alignment/move, press .

# Using a Template to Send Mail

A template is a model used for Deco-mail, which is preset with decorations for the main body. You can use templates to easily compose/send Deco-mail.

You can download a template from a site and also save up to 50 composed/received/sent Deco-mails as templates (P.195).

- You cannot edit a preinstalled template.

## 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] [Templates] and press .



### To check a template

Select a template.

### To change the title

Move the cursor to a template and from the Function menu, select [Edit title]. Enter the title within 15 full-width or 30 half-width characters.

### To delete a template

Move the cursor to a template and from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes]. To delete several templates, from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete], select templates, press  (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all templates, from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### To edit a template

Move the cursor to a template and press  (Edit).

## 2 Select a template and press (Mail).

The Edit mail display appears.

## 3 Compose mail and send it.

- Follow the same steps as in the Compose and send Deco-mail (P.195, step 2 to 4).

When you set a template containing an image that cannot be sent attached to mail, the image may be deleted. Composed/received/sent Deco-mail with a file attachment is saved as a template after the file attachment is deleted.

# File Attachment

You can send i-mode mail with a still image, melody, and ToruCa card attachment. You can also send i-motion mail with a movie/i-motion attachment.

## Files that can be attached

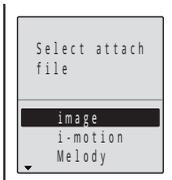
Type	Format	Size restriction	Maximum number of attached files	Restrictions
Image	JPEG, GIF	10,000 bytes or less	10 files in total (10,000 bytes including the mail main body)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An i-mode terminal for the Mova service cannot receive a GIF image.</li> </ul>
Melody	SMF	10,000 bytes or less		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A melody may not be sent properly to mobile phones other than SO902iWP + .</li> <li>An i-mode terminal for the Mova service cannot receive a melody.</li> </ul>
ToruCa	-	256 bytes or less		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A ToruCa card is sent as it is before obtaining the ToruCa(detail) card. However, the recipient can obtain the ToruCa(detail) card, if necessary.</li> <li>You may not be able to send some ToruCa cards obtained using i-mode or i-appli software because of large data size.</li> </ul>
Image	JPEG	10,001 bytes to 500K bytes	Either 1 image or 1 movie/i-motion file	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When an attached image file exceeds 500K bytes, it is automatically converted into a file of less than or equal to 500K bytes before being sent.</li> <li>When an image file is attached to mail sent to an i-mode terminal, it is converted into an "image size suitable for i-mode-compatible terminal" at the i-shot center.</li> </ul>
Movie/i-motion	MP4	500K bytes or less		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When an attached movie/i-motion file exceeds 500K bytes, it is automatically converted into a file of less than or equal to 500K bytes before being sent.</li> <li>An attached movie may appear grainy or may be displayed after being converted into several continuous still images depending on the recipient's terminal model.</li> <li>Some i-motion files may not be attached.</li> </ul>

- Files prohibited from being used as a mail attachment and being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal cannot be attached to mail.

### 1 Press (Func) in the Edit mail display.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Add attach file] and press .



- [image] : Attach an image.
- [i-motion] : Attach a movie/i-motion.
- [Melody] : Attach a melody.
- [ToruCa] : Attach a ToruCa card.
- [Activate camera] : Start the camera and record and attach an image/movie.

### 3 Select a file type a folder a file and press .



The file is attached and "", "", "", "", or "" appears.

#### To check an image/movie/melody

Move the cursor to a file and press  (Play).

#### When you selected [Activate camera]

Select [Camera]/[Movie] and record (P.136, 139).

- You can record a still image and movie with an image size of less than or equal to [VGA(640 x 480)] and [Stby(320 x 240)] respectively.

### 4 Compose mail and send it.

- Follow the same steps as in the Compose and send mail (P.193, step 2 to 5).
- The number of characters that you can enter in the mail main body varies depending on the size of the file attachment.

When you include a JPEG image or i-motion attachment exceeding 10,000 bytes, the number of characters that you can enter in the main body is reduced by the amount of 100 full-width characters (or 200 half-width characters). When decoration is set for the main body, the number of characters that you can enter is reduced by the amount of 200 full-width characters (or 400 half-width characters).

When you send mail to an i-mode terminal for the Mova service, file attachment is restricted to one JPEG image or i-motion file. The recipient receives it as mail with a URL linked to the image. If you attach multiple files or an unsupported file, the attached files are deleted and the recipient receives main body only mail.

## Deleting a File Attachment

### 1 Select a file in the Edit mail display and press (Func) .

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Dlt attach file] [Yes] and press .

The file attachment is deleted.

## Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later

If you do not want to send composed mail immediately, you can save it in [Draft].

### 1 Press (Func) in the Edit mail display.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Save] and press .

The composed mail is saved as unsent mail in [Draft].

#### To edit saved mail

From the Mail menu, select [Draft] [Draft] mail.

## Receiving i-mode Mail

When mail is sent to the i-mode center, the FOMA terminal automatically receives them.



While receiving mail, "✉" flashes.



When receiving is completed, "✉" is displayed, the indicator flashes, the ring tone sounds, and the number of received mail is displayed. The display before receiving reappears after about 15 seconds.

- When returning to the stand-by display, the notification icon "✉" (New mail) appears. Press  (Link) and select "✉" to display the Inbox display.

If new mail is received when the number of saved received mail has reached 1,000 or there is not enough free space, the unprotected read mail is overwritten from the oldest.

When you receive multiple mail at the same time, the ring tone, call picture, and indicator color of the last received mail have priority.

Mail that has been sent to you in the following situations is held at the i-mode center.

- During a videophone call
- When the FOMA terminal is outside of the i-mode service area
- During PushTalk communications
- During the infrared communications
- When the FOMA terminal is powered off
- While the Self mode is set
- While connected to the FirstPass Center

Some mail is held at the i-mode center when "✉" appears (sometimes "✉" does not appear even if mail is held at the i-mode center).

If the maximum number of mail is held at the i-mode center, "✉" appears. In this case, check the contents of unread mail, delete unnecessary received mail, or cancel protection of received mail before performing the Check new messages.

The i-mode mail allows you to receive a melody and image as a file attachment. A file attachment that is not supported by the i-mode mail is deleted at the i-mode center. To the mail whose attachment is deleted, the message [Dlt attach file] is added.

When the size of received mail (number of characters and file attachment size) has exceeded the number of characters (data size) specified at Limit Mail Size accessible through Options from i Menu, the file attachment is deleted at the i-mode center and cannot be received.

## Selecting to Receive i-mode Mail

You can check through mail held at the i-mode center, where you can select mail to receive and delete mail without receiving it based on the information such as mail subject.

- To use this function, set the Receive option setting [ON]. When the Receive option setting is [ON], i-mode mail is not received automatically (P.216).
- If the Receive option setting is [ON], the Mail tone does not sound or the vibrator does not operate when the Manner mode or Vibrator is set.



When receiving mail, the notification icon “✉” (Mail at center) appears.

### To check mail

Press (Link) in the stand-by display and select “✉” [Yes]. The FOMA terminal is connected to the i-mode center.

## Receiving i-mode Mail after Selecting

Connect to the i-mode center and select mail to receive.

### 1 From the Mail menu, select [Receive option] and press .



The call is connected to the i-mode center and the list of i-mode mail saved at the center appears.

[受信] (Receive) : Receive a selected i-mode mail.

[削除] (Delete) : Delete a selected i-mode mail.

[保留] (Holding) : Hold a selected i-mode mail at the i-mode center.

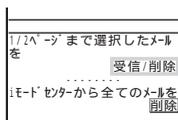
- When the mail contains a file attachment, the following icons appear.

	Still image file attachment		Melody attachment
	i-motion attachment		ToruCa card attachment

### 2 Select [保留] (Holding) for the mail and press .

### 3 Select [受信] (Receive) and press .

### 4 Select [受信/削除] (Receive/Delete) and press .



### To delete all mail

Select [削除] (Delete) below [iモードセンターから全てのメールを] (All mail from the i-mode center).

### 5 Select [決定] (OK) and press .

The selected mail is received.

## Checking New i-mode Mail

New mail held at the i-mode center while the FOMA terminal is powered off or outside of the i-mode service area can be checked.

- Depending on the radio wave condition, you may not be able to check new mail.

### 1 Press (Mail) for over a second in the stand-by display.



The FOMA terminal is connected to the i-mode center, and an inquiry result is displayed.

#### To check mail

Select [Mail].

## Replying to i-mode Mail

You can compose and send replies to the received mail.

- You may not be able to reply to some received mail or SMS.

### 1 From the received mail list, select mail and press (Quote).

The Edit mail display appears.

The mail address as address, "Re: title of the received mail" as subject, and ">main body of the received mail" as main body are entered beforehand.

- When the subject including "Re:" exceeds 15 full-width or 30 half-width characters, the extra characters are automatically deleted.

#### To reply to mail without the sender's message

Move the cursor to mail and press  (Reply).

#### To reply to broadcast mail

Select mail, press  (Quote) or  (Reply), and select [Reply to sender]/[Reply all].

### 2 Compose mail and send it.

- Follow the same steps as in the Compose and send mail (P.193, step 3 to 5).

The reply mail is sent and "" appears.

No quote is used for a file attachment, a melody or i-appli To link that is inserted in the mail main body, and an image in Deco-mail that cannot be redistributed.

## Forwarding i-mode Mail

You can forward received mail to another person. A file attachment is also forwarded.

Example: Forwarding received mail

**1** From the received mail list, select mail and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

**2** Select [Forward] and press .

The Edit mail display appears.

"Fw: title of the received mail" as subject and "main body of the received mail" as main body are entered beforehand.

- When the subject including "Fw:" exceeds 15 full-width or 30 half-width characters, the extra characters are automatically deleted.

**3** Compose mail and send it.

- Follow the same steps as in the Compose and send mail (P.193, step 2 to 5).

The mail is forwarded and  appears.

A melody or i-appli To link inserted in the mail main body and an image in Deco-mail that cannot be redistributed are not forwarded. If an image attached to the received mail exceeds 10,000 bytes and is not yet downloaded, it is not forwarded.

## Saving the Mail Address/Phone Number in the Phonebook

### Saving the Sender's/Recipient's Mail Address in the Phonebook

You can save the mail address of a received mail sender and recipient or sent/saved mail recipient in the Phonebook.

Example: Saving the mail address of a received mail sender to the FOMA terminal phonebook as a new entry

**1** From the received mail list, select mail, press , and press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.

**2** Select [Save address] and press .  
The screen for selecting how to save to the Phonebook appears.

**3** Select [New] and press .  
The screen for selecting where to save appears.

When you select [Add]

Select an entry to which you want to add the mail address from the Phonebook.

When there are multiple mail addresses

Select mail addresses [New]/[Add].

**4** Select [Main memory] and press .  
The Edit phonebook display appears.

To save to the UIM phonebook

Select [UIM].

**5** Save other items.

- Follow the same steps as in the Add to FOMA terminal phonebook (P.91, step 3 to 19) or in the Add to UIM phonebook (P.94, step 3 to 7).

**6** Press  (Complete).  
The entry is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

### Saving the Phone Number/Mail Address in Display in the Phonebook

The mail addresses or phone numbers currently displayed in the site, received mail/sent mail, or ToruCa card can be saved in the Phonebook.

- Depending on the site, the displayed phone number or mail address may not be saved.

Example: Saving the phone number contained in the main body of the received mail to the FOMA terminal phonebook as a new entry

**1** From the received mail list, select mail and press , and then select the phone number and press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.

## 2 Select [Add to phonebook] and press .

The screen for selecting how to save to the Phonebook appears.

## 3 Select [New] and press .

The screen for selecting where to save appears.

### When you select [Add]

Select an entry to which you want to add the phone number from the Phonebook.

## 4 Select [Main memory] and press .

The Edit phonebook display appears.

### To save to the UIM phonebook

Select [UIM].

## 5 Save other items.

- Follow the same steps as in the Add to FOMA terminal phonebook (P.91, step 3 to 19) or in the Add to UIM phonebook (P.94, step 3 to 7).

## 6 Press (Complete).

The entry is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

## Playing Back/Saving a File Attachment Received in i-mode Mail

You can play back/save/delete an image, melody, ToruCa card, and movie/i-motion that are attached or pasted in i-mode mail or a message.

### File attachments that can be played back and saved

Type	Format	Maximum size to be saved	Maximum number to be saved	Restrictions/Additional information
Image	JPEG	100K bytes	93 to 1,000 files	Some images may not be displayed properly.
Movie/i-motion	MP4	500K bytes	3 to 100 files	When you receive i-motion mail, a URL for viewing the attached i-motion is contained in the mail main body. You can use this URL to download the i-motion that is stored in the i-motion mail center up to 50 times per one URL. If you have downloaded the i-motion 50 times, you are no longer able to access it.
Melody	SMF, MFi	100K bytes	10 to 200 files	A melody sent from mobile phones other than SO902iWP+ may not be played back properly.
ToruCa card	-	1,024 bytes	10 to 100 files	-

- The number of files that can be saved varies depending on the size of the saved files.

Example: Saving a file attachment received in mail

**1** From the received mail list, select mail and press .

**2** Select a file attachment and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

**To play back/save a movie/i-motion attachment**

Select a URL in the main body [Yes] to obtain its movie/i-motion. Follow the same procedures described in the Download i-motion (P.183, step 1 to 2) or in the Add to UIM phonebook (P.81, step 3).

**3** Select [Save attached] a folder and press .

The file is saved in the selected folder.

**To play back a file attachment**

Move the cursor to the file attachment and press .

**To play back a melody pasted in a message**

Select [Play melody].

**To save a melody pasted in a message**

Select [Save melody] a folder.

**To check a melody title**

Select [Confirm melody].

**To display details about an inserted image**

Select [Insert img info] an image. The detailed information appears.

**To save an inserted image**

Select [Save insert img] an image a folder.

**When there is not enough memory**

The screen for confirming whether to overwrite the data appears. To overwrite, select unnecessary data (P.260).

An i-mode mail JPEG image attachment exceeding 10,000 bytes is automatically obtained and saved in the [i-mode] folder in My picture. If automatic obtaining of the image is unsuccessful, you can obtain the image by selecting  in i-mode mail. You can also check the URL by selecting [URL] from the Function menu.

## Deleting a File Attachment

You can delete an image, melody, and ToruCa card that are attached to i-mode mail.

- You cannot delete an i-appli To link that is displayed in the mail main body.
- You can delete an image exceeding 10,000 bytes from the [i-mode] folder in My picture.

Example: Deleting a file attached to the received mail

**1** From the received mail list, select mail and press .

**2** Select a file attachment and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

**3** Select [Dlt attach file] [Yes] and press .

The file attachment is deleted.

# Displaying Received/Sent/Saved Mail

You can display received/sent/saved mail any time you want. Received mail and sent mail are saved in [Inbox] and [Outbox] respectively, and mail saved without being sent or sent unsuccessfully is saved in [Draft].

- [Inbox], [Outbox], and [Draft] accommodate up to 1000 received mails, up to 500 sent mails, and up to 50 saved mails respectively. The number of mail that can be saved in [Inbox], [Outbox], and [Draft] varies between 200 and 1000, 50 and 500, and 10 and 50 respectively depending on the size of each mail.
- For SMS saved in the UIM, some function menu items are not available.

## 1 From the Mail menu, select [Inbox]/[Outbox]/[Draft] and press .

### Received mail



- The number of saved mail in the folder at the cursor/the total number of mail is displayed at the right end of the title line.
- The following icons show the status of the folder. Next to the icon, the folder name is displayed.

 (Yellow)	Preset folder <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When there is unread mail,  (yellow) appears.</li> </ul>
 (Blue)	User-created folder <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When there is unread mail,  (blue) appears.</li> </ul>
	Folder created by i-αppli with mail <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When there is unread mail,  appears.</li> </ul>

### To display the SMS list in the UIM

Press  (UIM).

## 2 Select a folder and press .

The received/sent/saved mail list appears.

### Received mail



- Received date/time
- Sender
- Subject

### Sent mail



- Sent date/time
- Recipient
- Subject

### Saved mail



- Saved date/time
- Recipient
- Subject

- The title line shows the folder name and the figures at the right end of the title line show the order of the mail/the total number of mail in the folder.
- The received/sent/saved date/time field indicates the time when the mail is received/sent/saved today, and otherwise the date.
- For SMS, the beginning of a message is displayed instead of the subject.
- The following icons show the status and type of the mail and the type of the file attachment.

### Mail status

	Unread mail		Protected replied mail
	Read mail		Protected forwarded mail
	Replied mail		Sent mail
	Forwarded mail		Protected sent mail
	Protected read mail		Unsent mail/mail sent unsuccessfully

### Mail type

	SMS		Unable to reply mail (Received mail only)
	SMS in the UIM (Received/sent mail only)		Mail used by i-αppli with mail

### File attachment type

	With image attachment exceeding 10,000 bytes		With melody attachment
	With image attachment		With ToruCa card attachment
	With movie attachment (Sent/saved mail only)		With i-appli To

### To display mail addresses or phone numbers

When saved in the Phonebook, the name is displayed instead of the mail address/phone number. Press to switch the display temporarily between the names and mail addresses/phone numbers.

## 3 Select mail and press .

### Received mail

In	✓	To	4/25
	2006/08/12	11:54	
	携帯なつ子		
	Happy Birthday		
	Happy birthday! I hope you enjoy your coming year.		
	060812.mid	0.9KB	
	- END -		

### Sent mail

Out	1/25	
	2006/08/14 20:12	
	To 携帯はる子	
	Subject Departure date and time	
	It's time for departure. Waiting for you at 17:45 on 16th.	
	060814.mid	0.9KB
	- END -	

- The right end of the first line shows the order/the total number in the folder.
- The following icons show the details of mail. Other icons are the same as in step 2.

### Mail items

	Received/sent/saved date/time of the mail	To	Recipient's (To) mail address
Sub	Subject	Cc	Recipient's (Cc) mail address
	Main body	Bcc	Recipient's (Bcc) mail address
From	Sender's mail address		Delivery report mail

### File attachment type

	Invalid pasted data (when several data is pasted)		With invalid image attachment
	Failed to obtain the image		With invalid movie attachment (Sent/saved mail only)
	With melody attachment (SMF format)		With invalid melody attachment (SMF format)
	With melody attachment (MFi format)		With invalid ToruCa card attachment
	With invalid image attachment exceeding 10,000 bytes		

### To display the previous or next mail

Press to display the previous mail or to display the next mail.

## Adding/Deleting Folders

In addition to [Inbox]/[Outbox], you can create up to 20 folders each to manage received and sent mail. Besides these folders, additional five folders are reserved for i-αppli with mail each in [Inbox]/[Outbox]/[Draft]. You can also change a folder name or sort the folders.

- You cannot delete [Inbox], [Outbox], [Draft], folders including protected mail and mail folders supported by i-αppli with mail software. Folders of i-αppli with mail can be deleted if there is no supporting software for that i-αppli with mail. In this case, the other folders of that i-αppli with mail in the received, sent, or saved mail list are also deleted.
- You cannot change the names of [Inbox], [Outbox], [Draft], and folders of i-αppli with mail.

Example: Adding a folder for received mail

**1** From the Mail menu, select [Inbox], press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

**2** Select [Edit folder] [Create folder], press , and enter a folder name.

Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.

The folder is added.

### To change a folder name

Move the cursor to a folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] [Edit folder name]. Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.

### To sort folders

From the Function menu, select [Edit folder] [Reorder folder] a folder a position to move to and press  (Complete).

### To delete a folder

Move the cursor to a folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] [Delete folder]. Enter the Security code and select [Yes].

After downloading i-αppli with mail, the folders of i-αppli with mail are automatically created in [Inbox], [Outbox], and [Draft].

## Moving Mail to a Different Folder

You can move received/sent mail to another folder using three methods.

Example: Moving received mail

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Inbox] a folder and press .**  
**To move all mail in a folder**  
From the Function menu, select [Move] [Move all] [Yes] a folder.  
**To move several mails**  
From the Function menu, select [Move] [Select&move], select mails, and press  (Complete). Select [Yes] a folder.
- 2 Select mail and press  (Func).**  
The Function menu appears.
- 3 Select [Move] [Move one] [Yes] and press .**  
The Select move to display appears.
- 4 Select a folder and press .**  
The selected mail is moved to the different folder.

## Protecting Mail

Received or sent mail can be protected from being overwritten. Up to 500 received mails and 250 sent mails can be protected.

- You cannot set protection for unread mail and unsent mail/mail sent unsuccessfully.

Example: Protecting received mail

- 1 From the received mail list, select mail and press  (Func).**  
The Function menu appears.  
**To cancel the protection**  
Move the cursor to the protected mail and press  (Func).
- 2 Select [Protect ON/OFF] [Yes] and press .**  
The mail is protected and "/lock icon" appears.

## Deleting Mail

You can delete the received or sent mail using the following six methods.

Delete one	Delete a mail in the folder.
Select&delete	Delete several mails in a folder. Up to 30 mails can be selected at a time.
Delete read msg (for received mail only)	Delete all read mail.
Delete all	Delete all mail in the folder.
Delete read msg (for received mail only)	Delete all read mail in the folder.
Delete all	Delete all received or sent mail.

Example: Deleting received mail

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Inbox] and press .



### To delete all received mail

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### To delete all read mail

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete read msg], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2 Select a folder and press .



### To delete all read mail in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete read msg], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### To delete all mail in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### To delete several mails

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete], select mails, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].

- 3 Select mail and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 4 Select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes] and press .

The selected mail is deleted.

## Displaying i-αpli Mail as Regular Mail

i-αpli mail can be displayed as regular mail. If any i-αpli with mail software is deleted, mail saved in the folder of the i-αpli with mail can be displayed in the same way as regular mail.

Example: Displaying received i-αpli mail

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Inbox] and press .

- 2 Select the folder of i-αpli with mail and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 3 Select [Brows mail mode] and press .

The i-appli mail can be displayed as regular mail.

## Checking the Number of Mail Saved

The number of mail saved can be checked for each folder.

Example: Checking the number of received mail saved

### 1 From the Mail menu, select [Inbox] and press .

### 2 Select a folder and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 3 Select [Memory status] and press .

Memory status		
	Folder	All
	1	1
	22	55
	2	10
Ttl	25	66

The number of received mail saved in the selected folder and the total number of received mail saved are displayed.

#### Received mail

	Number of unread mail		Number of read mail
	Number of protected read mail		

#### Sent mail

	Number of sent mail		Number of protected sent mail
---	---------------------	---	-------------------------------

#### Saved mail

The number of saved mail in the selected folders and the total number of saved mail are displayed.

## Sorting Mail

Received or sent mail in a folder can be sorted for display temporarily.

Example: Sorting received mail

### 1 Press (Func) in the received mail list.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Sort] a sorting order and press .

#### Received mail

[Date] : Sort mail from newest to oldest received date.

[From address] : Sort mail by the sender's mail address in alphabetical order.

[Subject] : Sort mail by the subject in Japanese alphabetical order.

#### Sent mail

[Date] : Sort mail from newest to oldest sent date.

[To address] : Sort mail by the recipient's mail address in alphabetical order.

[Subject] : Sort mail by the subject in Japanese alphabetical order.

The mail is listed in the selected order.

When you select [Subject], sorting may not be performed exactly in Japanese alphabetical order for reasons such as because some subjects contain a mixture of full-width and half-width characters.

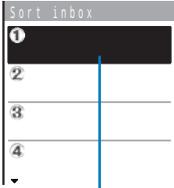
When you select [Subject] for sorting SMS, sorting may not be performed exactly in Japanese alphabetical order because the beginning of a message is displayed instead of the subject in the mail list for SMS.

# Setting the Mail Function of the FOMA Terminal

## Assigning Separate Folders for Mail

You can save requirements to sort received mail so that they can be automatically assigned to folders. Up to 30 sorting requirements can be saved.

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] [Sort inbox] and press .



Sorting requirement field

### To delete a sorting requirement

Move the cursor to the sorting requirement field and from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes]. To delete several sorting requirements, from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete], select sorting requirements, press  (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all sorting requirements, from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

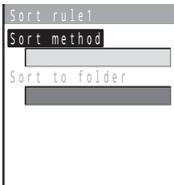
### To sort the sorting requirements

From the Function menu, select [Reorder] a sorting requirement a folder to move to and press  (Complete).

### To cancel editing

From the Function menu, select [Cancel].

- 2 Select the sorting requirement field and press .



- 3 Select the sorting method at [Sort method].

[Mail address] : Specify a mail address. The mail address portion after the @ mark is required. However, when you set the mail address to "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", enter the phone number only.

[Group] : Specify a group.

[Subject] : Enter a subject or a part of it within 15 full-width or 30 half-width characters.

[None] : Sort mail that does not meet any specified sorting requirement.

- 4 Select a folder to be used for sorted mail at [Sort to folder].

### When no folder is specified

Mail is sorted to [Inbox].

- 5 Press  (Complete).

The sorting requirement is saved.

If mail satisfies several sorting requirements, the sorting requirement with a lower number in the list has higher priority. If you set [None] for sorting requirement, the sorting requirements lower than the number you set become invalid, and mail is sorted to the folder for which [None] is set.

If you delete a folder for which the sorting requirement was set, [Inbox] is used as a sort destination folder.

If data saved as Secret is contained in a group that has been set as a sorting requirement, and if you receive mail from a sender who is relevant to the data, it is saved in [Inbox]. To enable the sorting requirement, set the Secret display to [ON].

You can automatically have your regular mail sorted to the i-appli with mail folder. An i-appli with mail is automatically sorted to the corresponding i-appli with mail folder. This operation has higher priority over sorting in accordance with the sorting requirement settings.

Mail received before the sorting requirement is set is not sorted automatically.

## Adding a Signature to Mail

When saved beforehand, your signature can be attached at the end of the main body of mail.

### Saving a Signature

The signature attached to mail can be created and saved.

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] [Edit signature] and press .

The Edit signature display appears.

- If you have saved a signature before, it is displayed.

- 2 Press  (Edit) and enter a signature.

Enter a signature within 40 full-width or 80 half-width characters.

- 3 Press  (Complete).

The signature is saved.

### Adding a Signature Automatically

The saved signature can be automatically attached to the main body when you compose mail.

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] [Signature] and press .

- 2 Select [Auto]/[No] and press .

The Signature is set.

Even if the Signature is set to [No], you can attach the signature manually. From the Function menu in the Input text display, select [Add signature].

Even if the Signature is set to [Auto], you cannot attach a signature to a reply mail using the Quote function or a forwarded mail.

## Setting the Type of Mail/Message to Be Checked

You can set whether to receive mail, Message R, and Message F when making inquiries to the i-mode center.

Example: Setting the i-mode inquiry set for mail

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] [Common setting] [i-mode inquiry set] and press .



- 2 Select [Mail] [Valid]/[Invalid] of the i-mode inquiry set.  
The i-mode inquiry set is set.

## Setting to Select and Receive Mail

You can set whether to selectively receive i-mode mail.

- Even if the Receive option setting is [ON], all mail is received if you use the Check new messages. If you do not want to receive mail, set [Mail] to [Invalid] in the i-mode inquiry set (P.216).

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] [Rcv opt setting] and press .

The Rcv opt setting display appears.

[ON] : Sent mail is held at the i-mode center and not received by the FOMA terminal. To receive, use the Receive option (P.202).

[OFF] : Sent mail is received automatically by the FOMA terminal.

- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Receive option setting is set.

## Setting a Mail List

By saving mail addresses in a mail list, you can send mail to all members in the list at the same time.

Up to 10 mail lists can be saved. Up to five mail addresses can be saved in each mail list.

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] [Mail list] a mail list and press .



- 2 Enter a list name at [List].

Enter a list name within eight full-width or 16 half-width characters.

- 3 Select [Member list] and press .



### To delete a member

Move the cursor to the member field and from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes]. To delete all members, from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

Member field

- 4 Enter the mail address or the phone number in the member field.

- 5 Press  (Complete).

The member list is set.

- 6 Press  (Complete).

The mail list is set.

### To delete a mail list

Move the cursor to a mail list in the Mail list display and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] [Yes]. To delete several mail lists, from the Function menu, select [Select&delete], select mail lists, press  (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all mail lists, from the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

Even if you change the contents of the Phonebook after saving a member to the mail list, the saved contents on the mail list do not change.

## Playing a Melody Automatically from Mail

The melody can be set to be played back automatically when displaying mail or message.

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] [Common setting] [Melody auto play] and press .
- 2 Select [Auto play]/[OFF] and press .  
The Melody auto play is set.

When mail has several melody attachments, the melodies are played back in the order they were attached to the mail. Melodies in the MFI format has lower priority than those in the SMF format.

When the Manner mode is set or when the message is displayed automatically, the Melody auto play is disabled.

## Setting the Receiving Operation during Multitasking

You can set whether the incoming mail or received mail display should appear when you receive mail, SMS, or Message R/F while you are using the FOMA terminal for other tasks.

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] [Common setting] [Dur multi task disp] and press .  
[Prefer alarm] : Display the incoming mail or received mail display.  
[Prefer operat.] : Do not display the incoming mail or received mail display. “” “” appears while you are receiving mail/message and “”, “”, or “” appears after reception.
- 2 Select [Prefer alarm]/[Prefer operat.] and press .  
The receiving operation during multitasking is set.

Regardless of the setting, mail and message R/F are received with [Prefer operat.] while placing (originating)/receiving or during a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call, recording a still image, recording/playing back a movie, or running i-appli.

## Enabling the Receiving of a File Attachment

You can set whether to receive an image, melody, or ToruCa card attachment in i-mode mail.

**1** From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] [Attached file set] and press .

**2** Select [Accept all]/[Accept selected]/[Reject all] at [Attached file].



[Accept all] : Accept receiving of all file attachments.

[Accept selected] : Set [Accept]/[Reject] for each image and melody. Rejected files are deleted at the i-mode center and cannot be received.

[Reject all] : Reject receiving of all file attachments. Rejected files are deleted at the i-mode center and cannot be received.

**3** Press  (Complete).

The Attached file setting is set.

## Deleting the Send/Receive Ranking List

Up to 20 each of most frequent senders and recipients are automatically saved in the Send and Receive ranking lists. You can select a recipient from this list when you compose mail. The Send and Receive ranking lists can be cleared at once.

Example: Deleting the Receive ranking list

**1** From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] [Clear Recv ranking] and press .

To delete the Send ranking list

From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] [Clear Send ranking].

**2** Select [Clear all] and press .

All Receive ranking list data is deleted.

# Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message Service)

Regardless of whether you subscribe to i-mode, you can send/receive text messages between FOMA terminals.

- You can exchange SMS with recipients/senders who subscribe to an overseas telecommunications company other than DoCoMo. See the NTT DoCoMo website for information about countries and overseas telecommunications companies you can use for sending/receiving SMS.
- Even when the Notify caller ID is set to [Not notify], an SMS recipient is notified of the sender's phone number.
- The contents of mail sent may not be displayed correctly on the recipient's phone depending on the radio wave condition or the type of characters to be sent.

## 1 From the Mail menu, select [Compose SMS] and press .



## 2 Enter a phone number at [To].

**When a recipient subscribes to an overseas telecommunications company other than DoCoMo**

Enter "+" (press  for over a second), "Country code", and "recipient's mobile phone number", in this order. When the mobile phone number starts with "0", enter the number without "0". You can also send SMS by entering "010", "Country code", and "recipient's mobile phone number", in this order. (To reply to SMS received from overseas, use the latter method using "010".)

## 3 Enter a main body at [Text].

When you set [Language] to [JPN] for the SMS setting, enter the SMS main body within 70 characters regardless of full-width or half-width.

When you set it to [ENG], enter the main body within 160 half-width characters (excluding ` , ` , ` , ` , ` , ` , ` , ` , ` , and ` `). Use of the symbols ({} ¥) reduces the number of characters that can be sent.

## 4 Press (Send).

The SMS is sent.

**To save SMS without sending it**

From the Function menu, select [Save]. The SMS is saved in [Draft].

When you subscribe to the Multi Number Service, set [Basic Number] for the Set Multi Number.

## Receiving SMS (Short Message Service)

The FOMA terminal automatically receives SMS. You can save up to 1,000 received SMS including i-mode mail in [Inbox].



While receiving SMS, "SMS" flashes.



When SMS reception is completed, "SMS" is displayed, the incoming indicator flashes, the ring tone sounds, and the number of received SMS appears.

After about 15 seconds, the display prior to the SMS reception reappears.

- When returning to the stand-by display, the notification icon "SMS" (New mail) appears. Press **[Link]** and select "SMS" to display the Inbox display.

You can compose and send a reply to the received SMS and forward it (P.203, 204).

## Checking New SMS (Short Message Service)

New SMS held at the SMS center while the FOMA terminal is powered off or outside of the i-mode service area can be checked.

- Depending on the radio wave condition, you may not be able to check new SMS.

**1** From the Mail menu, select [Check new SMS] and press **[Link]**.

The FOMA terminal is connected to the SMS center and receives SMS if some are held at the center.

Even if you check new SMS, it may take time to receive SMS.

# Setting SMS (Short Message Service)

Normally, you do not need to change the SMSC, Type of Number, and address settings.

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] [SMS setting] and press .



The screenshot shows the 'SMS setting' menu with the following options:

- Language: JPN
- SMS report: Invalid
- Validity: 3 days
- SMSC: DoCoMo
- Type of Number: International
- Address: (empty field)

- [Language] : Select whether a message to be sent is going to be displayed in Japanese or English. The number of characters that can be sent varies depending on the type of characters.
- [SMS report] : Set whether you require a delivery report when SMS is sent.
- [Validity] : Set the period for holding your SMS at the SMS center when it does not reach the recipient for any reason, such as outside the service area.  
You can select from 0, 1, 2, and 3 days.  
When set to [0day], SMS is deleted after it is resent after a certain amount of hours.
- [SMSC] : Set when you receive SMS services provided by companies other than DoCoMo.
- [Type of Number] : When you select [Others] at [SMSC], select [International]/[Unknown].  
• When "\*" or "#" is included in the address entered at [Address], select [Unknown].
- [Address] : When you select [Others] at [SMSC], enter an address. You can enter up to 20 half-width digits.

- 2 Set each item.

- 3 Press  (Complete).

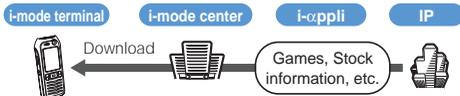
# i-αppli

What is i-αppli? .....	224
Downloading i-αppli from a Site .....	225
Running i-αppli .....	<Run i-αppli> 226
Running i-αppli Automatically .....	<Auto start> 230
Setting i-αppli for the Stand-by Display .....	<i-αppli stand-by> 230
Managing i-αppli .....	231
Using Various i-αppli Functions .....	232

The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

## What is i-αppli?

By downloading i-αppli from its site, the i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter referred to as i-mode terminal) can be made more useful in many ways. For example, you can enjoy many kinds of games by downloading them to it. Downloading i-αppli for stock information allows you to check the stock price automatically at the set time. In another aspect, i-αppli for maps enables the smooth scrolling by downloading only necessary data. There are also i-αppli from which you can directly save data to the Phonebook and Schedule, as well as i-αppli that can be linked with Data box for saving/loading images.



- Downloading i-αppli (P.225)
- Running i-αppli (P.226)
- Running i-αppli automatically (P.230)
- Some software may use the serial number of the mobile phone/ UIM (FOMA card) of the i-mode terminal.
- Some software performs network communications while running. The setting can be made not to perform it.

### Using Saved Data

Some i-αppli software can refer to, save or operate the i-mode terminal information (Phonebook, Bookmark, Schedule, pictures, and icon information). Operations using the saved data are as follows.

- Save in Phonebook
- Use icon information
- Save in Bookmark
- Save in Schedule
- Obtain picture from Data box
- Save picture in Data box
- Save ToruCa card

## What is i-αppli DX?

i-αppli DX enables you to enjoy i-αppli more conveniently by working in conjunction with the i-mode terminal information (mail, Redial/Received record, Phonebook, etc.). For example, you can compose mail with your favorite character in the display, or set a character to notify you of the caller when receiving a call. Furthermore, information you need such as stock prices or game results can be provided in real time using mail.

### Using Saved Data

Some i-αppli DX software can refer to, save or operate data such as mail, Redial/Received record, and ring tones, in addition to data that can be used with the usual i-αppli (Phonebook, Bookmark, Schedule, pictures, and icon information). Operations using the saved data are as follows.

- Save in Phonebook
- View Phonebook
- Use icon information
- Save in Bookmark
- Save in Schedule
- Use Mail menu
- Use i-mode mail compose display
- View latest redial record
- View latest received record
- View latest unread mail
- Save ring tone
- Change ring tone (call, videophone call, mail, message)
- Obtain picture from Data box
- Save picture in Data box
- Save new ToruCa card, select, obtain ToruCa card
- Change display settings (stand-by display, placing/receiving a call, receiving/sending mail, receiving message R/F)
- With i-αppli DX, the network transmission may be performed regardless of the software's transmission setting in order to confirm the validity of software. The number and timing of transmission varies depending on the software.
- To start i-αppli DX, the current date and time must be set.

## What is i-αppli with Mail?

The i-αppli with mail is a type of i-αppli DX. By exchanging information using i-mode mail, you can use i-αppli more conveniently. For example, information such as stock prices or game results can be provided in real time.

- i-αppli mail used by i-αppli with mail software may not be displayed correctly in some cases.

## What is Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli?

You can use an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli for various useful functions. For example, you can download e-money or a train ticket by reading/writing data on an IC card. You can also use your mobile phone to check the balance or purchase history on your IC card.

- When you use the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli, your IC card information is sent to IP (information service providers) of the service that you are subscribing to.
- What is Osaifu-Keitai? (P.238)

### i-αppli stand-by display

i-αppli stand-by display enables you to set i-αppli for the stand-by display and to receive mail or place a call from that display. The i-αppli stand-by display provides convenient use of the stand-by display. For example, you can display the latest news or weather information in the stand-by display, or set your favorite character to notify you of the mail reception or the alarm (P.230).

- This function is available with the software supporting the i-αppli stand-by display.

### Auto start of i-αppli

The software can be started automatically by specifying the time, date or day of the week. Some software can be started automatically at intervals set by the software (P.230).

### Camera recording

The images can be recorded from the software using the camera of the i-mode terminal (P.232).

- This function is available with the software supporting the camera function.

### Infrared communications

Data exchange with the devices equipped with the infrared communications function can be operated from software. Much more in conjunction with the devices equipped with the infrared communications function is possible (P.232).

- This function is available with the software supporting the infrared communications.
- Depending on the other device, some data cannot be exchanged even if it is equipped with the infrared communications function.

### Infrared remote control

Various devices or equipment such as home electric appliances compatible with the infrared remote control can be operated from the software (P.263).

For example, you can turn your mobile phone into an AV remote control linked with a TV program list for the preinstalled "G-GUIDE TV Program List Remote Control" (P.228).

- This function is available with the software supporting the infrared remote control. The software must support the other device.

## Downloading i-αppli from a Site

- Up to 100 i-αppli software can be saved. The number of i-αppli software that can be saved varies between 10 and 100 depending on the size of each i-αppli software to be saved.
- When downloading ends in failure due to the radio wave condition, the software is not saved.
- When downloading i-αppli with mail, software cannot be downloaded if there are already five mail folders for i-αppli with mail or if software using the same mail folder already exists.

### 1 While displaying the site, select the software and press .

The software is downloaded.

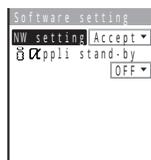
**When the screen for confirming whether to download the software appears**

Select [Yes].

### 2 Select a folder and press .

The downloaded software is saved in the selected folder.

### 3 Perform the Software setting.



- There are items that cannot be changed depending on the software.

**To connect to the network automatically when the software is started**

Select [NW setting] [Accept].

- Settings you made are applied to the NW setting and Stand-by NW setting of the Individual set (P.227).

**To set the software for the i-αppli stand-by display**

Select [i-αppli stand-by] [ON].

### 4 Press (Complete).

The screen for confirming whether to run the software appears.

### 5 Select [Yes] and press .

The downloaded software is started.

If you have deleted preinstalled software, you can download it from "SO@Planet".

[i Menu] [メニューリスト] [ケータイ電話メーカー] [SO@Planet]

The message "Terminal and UIM ID will be sent" may appear when downloading. Select [Yes] to download. Since the "serial number of your mobile phone/UIM (FOMA card)" is sent to IP (information service providers) via the Internet, it might be accessed by a third party. Note, however, that IP is not notified of your phone number, address, age, and sex by this operation.

The message "i-αppli DX may use saved data" may appear when downloading. Information on the saved data to be used can be confirmed by pressing [Description]. Select [Download] to download the software. The i-αppli uses the saved data in this case.

After downloading i-αppli with mail, i-αppli with mail folder is automatically created in Inbox, Outbox, and Draft. The folder is named based on the downloaded i-αppli with mail and cannot be changed.

If only the mail folder to be used remains when downloading i-αppli with mail, that folder can be used. If a folder name is different from the name of a downloaded i-αppli, this folder name is changed to the downloaded i-αppli name. If the i-αppli with mail does not use that folder, it can be deleted and a new folder can be created. Note that the i-αppli with mail cannot be downloaded without creating a new folder.

Even if there is enough memory, you may not be able to download an Osaifu-Ketai-compatible i-αppli depending on the volume of data saved on your IC card. If you cannot perform a download, delete unnecessary software data in accordance with the confirmation screen and download the i-αppli again. (You may not be able to delete some software data.) In some cases, you may need to start up the software before deleting related data on the IC card.

## Checking i-αppli Information When Downloading

The software information can be displayed when i-αppli software is downloaded from a site.

1 From the Menu, select [i-appli] [i αppli setting] [Soft description] and press .

2 Select [Yes]/[No] and press .

The Soft description is set.

## Running i-αppli

i-αppli software can be set to run manually.

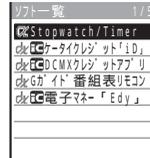
1 Press  (i-mode) for over a second in the stand-by display.

The i-αppli folder list appears.

- The following icons show the type of folder.

	Preset folder
	User-created folder

2 Select a folder and press .



The list of i-αppli software appears.

- The right end of the first line shows the order/the total number in the folder.
- A combination of the following icons shows the type of i-αppli software.

	Software supporting i-αppli stand-by display
	Software supporting i-αppli DX stand-by display
	Software supporting i-αppli with mail stand-by display
	Software not supporting i-αppli stand-by display
	Software not supporting i-αppli DX stand-by display
	Software not supporting i-αppli with mail stand-by display
	Software set for i-αppli stand-by display
	Software set for i-αppli DX stand-by display
	Software set for i-αppli with mail stand-by display
	Osaifu-Ketai-compatible i-αppli software
	Software downloaded from an SSL site
	Software set for automatic startup

3 Select the software and press .



The software is started up and "α" or "α" appears.

**To quit i-αppli software**

Press  and select [Yes].

**To check the detailed information**

Move the cursor to the software and from the Function menu, select [Soft description].

- Displayed items may vary depending on the software.
- The name of the software listed in the Soft description display cannot be changed.

**To display the certificate**

Move the cursor to the software and from the Function menu, select [Certificates].

## Setting i-αppli Operating Conditions

The sound from running i-αppli software is heard at the same volume level as set for the incoming call ring volume. It is heard at the volume level 3 when you set [STEP DOWN] or [STEP UP] for the incoming call ring volume.

Some i-αppli software performs network communications. The setting can be made beforehand not to perform it (P.227).

Some software applications start up immediately from the site. This means that the software has been downloaded, but not saved. Also note that you cannot save some downloaded software.

Some software applications that start up immediately from the site may require NW setting while it is running.

The software pauses when the Alarm or Schedule alarm time comes while running the software. The previous display returns when the alarm stops.

The software can be paused and the phone can be answered when you receive a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call while running the software. The previous display returns when a call is finished. You cannot receive a videophone call while i-αppli communications is in progress. When receiving a PushTalk call, the setting for the i-mode Arrival Act is applied.

When you receive mail/message while running the software, "㊦", "㊧", or "㊨" appears.

When the Receive option setting is [ON], "㊩" appears. When you display the stand-by display, "㊪" (Mail at center) appears. To check mail, use the Receive option (P.202).

Images used by i-αppli software and some of the data you entered may be automatically sent to a server via the Internet.

Images used by i-αppli software include those recorded by the camera activated from within i-αppli software with camera interface, obtained using the infrared communications function of i-αppli software, obtained from sites or Internet home pages using i-αppli software, and obtained from the Data box by i-αppli software.

There is i-αppli software that starts the specified software so that you can enjoy the software without returning to the software list. If software to start is not specified, you need to select it. Even if software to start is specified, however, you need to download it if it is not included in the software list.

The incorporated 3D Polygon engine enables i-αppli to display 3-dimensional image.

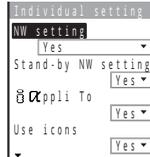
The 3D Polygon realizes a 3-dimensional perspective image using a combination of polygons (such as triangle or square shapes).

- It may not be possible to change some items of the saved software.

### 1 From the list of i-αppli software, select the software and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Individual set] and press .



#### [NW setting]:

Set whether to permit the software that uses network communications to connect to the network or alternatively set it to ask confirmation every time you start it.

#### [Stand-by NW setting]:

Set whether the FOMA terminal should connect to the network when you set an i-αppli software that uses network communications as the stand-by display.

#### [i-αppli To]:

Set whether to start the software from the currently displayed i-αppli link.

#### [Use icons]:

Set whether to use icon information (mail, message, radio wave condition, battery level, and Manner mode).

#### [Change tone/img]:

Set whether to permit the software to change the ring tone or image. Otherwise, set the software to ask for your permission every time before changing it.

#### [Phonebook/Records]:

Set whether to permit the software to look up the Phonebook, Redial/Received record, unread mail, or ToruCa cards.

### 3 Set each item.

If you set NW setting or Stand-by NW setting to [No], the software may not be started and information may not be provided in a timely manner.

If you set NW setting or Stand-by NW setting to [Yes], i-αppli automatically connects to the network. When the FOMA terminal is connected to the network, the packet communications charge is required.

When you set [Yes] for the Use icons, icon information might be accessed by a third party since it is sent to IP (information service providers) via the Internet just as it is the case with the "serial number of your mobile phone/UIM (FOMA card)".

Depending on the settings of the Individual set, the network connection and use of icon information (such as unread mail and battery level) from i-αppli software may not be available.

## Preinstalled Software

Default settings of the preinstalled software are indicated in the table below.

Item	Default setting	Item	Default setting
Stand-by display	No image	i-αppli To	Yes
Auto start	User set	Use icons	Yes
	SW set	Change tone/img	Yes
NW setting	Yes	Phonebook/Records	Yes
Stand-by NW setting	Yes		

### Stopwatch/Timer

Stopwatch/Timer is a SO902IWP + original i-αppli software in which the stopwatch and timer functions are integrated into one package.

#### Stopwatch



#### Timer



### Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Program List Remote Control)



The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display. The TV program list is displayed according to your location.

This convenient application is a TV program list integrated with an audiovisual remote control function and it is free. It enables you to get analog/digital ground-based TV program information for your preferred hour from anywhere, any time. The information includes a TV program title, details of the program, start/end time, etc. If you find any program interesting, you can let the DVD recorder to schedule recording of it remotely via the Internet. (A DVD recorder with a hard disk that features a remote scheduling function is required. Before using this function, the initial setting for this appli is also required.) You can also search for program information by entering a keyword such as a TV program category or your favorite TV personality.

Furthermore, you can also perform remote control operation of a TV/video player/DVD player. (Some models are not compatible with this function.)

- An additional packet communications charge is required for using this function.
- When you use the "G-GUIDE TV Program List Remote Control" for the first time, you need to perform initial settings and accept the Terms of Use.
- For further information, see the "i-mode User's Manual".

### About the remote scheduling function

If you have a DVD recorder that supports a remote scheduling function, you can schedule recording of a program from the program list provided by this appli. To use this function, the initial setting for this appli is required.

- Making initial setting
  1. Set the DVD recorder to connect to the Internet. (For more information, see the user's manual supplied with your DVD recorder.)
  2. Start this appli, select "リモート録画予約" (Remote scheduling) from the menu, and continue the initial setting as instructed by the displayed guidance.
- Scheduling recording of a program
 

Once you complete the initial setting, by selecting a desired program and selecting "リモート録画予約" from the menu, you can connect to the DVD recorder that has an entry in this appli via the Internet and let it to schedule recording of the program. The time for the program has been scheduled for another program, the message appears in the program list.
- An additional packet communications charge is required for using this function.

### "Edy" e-money

"Edy" e-money is a prepaid e-money service that is easy to operate for everybody.

This e-money service is operated by bitWallet, Inc. To use Edy, perform its initial settings after confirming the precautions and Terms of Use.

Initial settings/service registration (free)



#### Credit (deposit)

- Charge Edy value at store (deposit)
- Charge Edy value via i-mode (deposit)

#### Use (payment)

- Payment at store
- Mobile Edy (payment by net)

#### Convenient functions

- Look up the balance/history.
- Receive Edy gift.
- Edy to Edy (Send/Receive Edy money to/from other terminal)

#### Support

- Procedure for "Edy" when the FOMA terminal model is changed.
- Procedure for "Edy" when the FOMA terminal has a trouble.

Prior service registration is required.

For further information about "Edy" e-money services, stores that accept Edy payment, and procedures required when the FOMA terminal model is changed, has a trouble, see the i-mode site for Edy or its Internet home page, or dial Edy emergency.

- Contact office for this service: bitWallet, Inc.
- For more information about Edy, see the Edy i-mode site or website.

i-mode site : [i Menu] [メニューリスト]  
[くらしの情報] [生活総合の電子マネー「Edy」]



Home page : <http://www.edy.jp>

- If you have a problem regarding the procedures related to Edy

Dial Edy emergency: 0570-081-999 (Navi Dial)

Service hours: Weekdays 9:30 - 19:00

Saturday, Sunday, public holidays 10:00 - 18:00

Check and make sure you do not dial a wrong number.

- Please note that DoCoMo shall not be liable for the information you set on the FOMA terminal.
- For further information, see the "i-mode User's Manual".

An additional packet communications charge is required for the use of i-mode communications including the time you perform the "Edy" e-money initial settings and use "Main Menu" functions.

When the NW setting of the Software setting is set to [OFF] or the NW setting of the Individual set is set to [No], or when the Self mode is set, you cannot use i-mode communications. Therefore, you cannot perform the "Edy" e-money initial settings and use "Main Menu" functions.

To use Mobile Edy (payment by net), you need to receive a payment start mail from the Edy center. If you set to reject mail sent over the Internet using the Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) service, add "@bitwallet.co.jp" as an accepted domain.

Even if you change your mobile phone to a different model, you can still use your old Edy-compatible mobile phone as an Edy card. Therefore, be careful when you dispose of your mobile phone.

### Mobile Credit "iD"



The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display.

The mobile credit "iD" is a credit service that enables you to make payments for shopping and cash withdrawals by simply holding up your Osaifu-Keitai to a reader. It provides you with a convenient way of shopping because you need neither to take a card out of your purse nor give your signature as you did before.

- To use iD, a subscription to a credit card that adopts the iD brand, the iD appli, and a Card appli (the latter is provided by each credit card issuing company) are required.
- When you start the iD appli for the first time, you are asked to agree with "ご利用上の注意" (Note on using the program) and you need to download the Card appli after making preparations for using the iD appli.
- A fee for using a credit service that adopts the iD brand (annual membership fee, etc.) varies depending on the credit card issuing company.
- The packet communications charge is required for downloading the iD appli and a Card appli that is provided by each credit card issuing company.
- For further information, see the "i-mode User's Manual".
- For information on iD, see the i-mode site for iD or its Internet home page.

i-mode site : [i Menu] [メニューリスト]  
[ケータイクレジット「iD」]

Home page : <http://iD-credit.com>



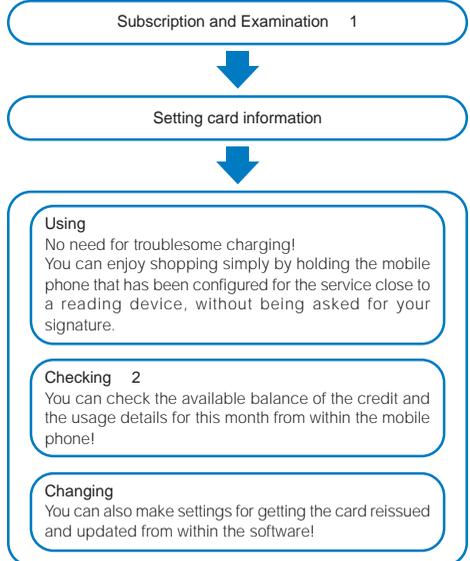
### "DCMX" credit appli



The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display.

"DCMX" is an "iD" compatible credit service provided by NTT DoCoMo group. Three types of services are available in DCMX: DCMX mini in which the total amount of credit is limited to ¥10,000, and DCMX and DCMX gold that also provide a credit card function. DCMX mini provides immediate use of a mobile credit service with an easy subscription that can be made from within this software.

#### <What you can do on this software>



#### Using

No need for troublesome charging!  
You can enjoy shopping simply by holding the mobile phone that has been configured for the service close to a reading device, without being asked for your signature.

#### Checking 2

You can check the available balance of the credit and the usage details for this month from within the mobile phone!

#### Changing

You can also make settings for getting the card reissued and updated from within the software!

- 1 We make a brief online examination for your qualification when we receive your subscription order. If your subscription is to other than DCMX mini, the connection is redirected to the i-mode site for subscription information.
- 2 A function, such as for checking the usage status is available only when you are a member of DCMX mini.

- For information on the contents of the service and on how to subscribe to the service, see the DCMX i-mode site or website.

i-mode site : [i Menu] [メニューリスト]  
[DCMX(ケータイクレジット)]

Home page : <http://www.dcmx.jp>

- For information on this service itself, call the "General Contact" on the backcover of this manual.



When you start this software for the first time, you are asked to agree with "ご利用上の注意" (Note on using the program). Agree with it to continue.

If i-mode communications take place due to using this software, network, the packet communications charge is required.

After the subscription is accepted and the configuration is completed, functions, such as checking the usage status and changing the settings cannot be performed from this software. To use these functions, first start iD appli and activate the DCMX appli by selecting it from within the iD appli.

## Running i-αppli Automatically

### Enabling/Disabling Auto Start

You can set whether to start i-αppli software automatically on the FOMA terminal.

- 1 From the Menu, select [i-αppli] [i αppli setting] [Auto start] and press .
- 2 Select [Yes]/[No] and press .  
Whether to start automatically is set.

### Setting the Start Date and Time

The i-αppli software can be started automatically. You can set the starting date/time and day of the week and whether to use the software's automatic start for each i-αppli software.

- 1 From the list of i-αppli software, select the software and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Auto start] and press .



[User set]:

Set the starting date/time and day of the week for each software.

[SW set]:

Set whether to start the software using the software's auto start function.

- 3 Select [User set] and press .



- 4 Select a style of the Auto start time at [Style].

[OFF]:

Do not set the start time.

[D/T]:

Start the software automatically at the specified date and time.

[Eyd]:

Start the software automatically at the specified time everyday.

[Week]:

Start the software automatically at the specified time on every specified day of the week.

- 5 Enter the date/time/day of the week.

- Enter the date/time/day of the week according to the style of the auto start time selected in step 4.

- 6 Press (Complete).

- 7 Select [SW set] and press .

The SW set display appears.

- 8 Select [Valid]/[Invalid] of the Auto start function of the software at [Set].

The Auto start is set.

The Auto start does not operate in the following cases.

- When the FOMA terminal is powered off
- During a call/communications
- When the date/time is not set
- When another function is executed
- If you set the same time for the Auto start of software, Schedule alarm, and Alarm
- When the Lock all/PIM lock is set
- When the Lock key is set

## Setting i-αppli for the Stand-by Display

Only one supporting software can be set for the i-αppli stand-by display. The software that supports the i-αppli stand-by display is identified by "/α/α".

- When the software using network transmission is set for the i-αppli stand-by display, it may not operate properly depending on the radio wave condition.
- When you set the i-αppli stand-by display, the image set for the Stand-by display is also changed (P.109).

- 1 From the list of i-αppli software, select the software and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Stand-by display] [Yes] and press .

The i-αppli stand-by display is set and the icon (P.226) changes to indicate that the software is set for the stand-by display.

To operate the software set for the i-αppli stand-by display

Press in the i-αppli stand-by display.

The message confirming whether to start the i-αppli stand-by display appears when the FOMA terminal is powered on if the i-αppli stand-by display is set. Select [No] not to start it. Select [Yes] or leave it for a while to start the i-αppli stand-by display.

The Web To cannot be used from the i-αppli stand-by display.

If an error which could disable the i-αppli stand-by display occurs, the time of error occurrence can be checked in the stand-by error history.

## Terminating the i-αppli Stand-by Display

The i-αppli stand-by display is terminated and the normal stand-by display is set.

- 1 From the list of i-αppli software, select the software and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Stand-by display] [Cancel] and press .

[End]:

End the i-αppli stand-by display once and redisplay without terminating it.

[Cancel]:

Terminate the i-αppli stand-by display.  
The i-αppli stand-by display is terminated.

## Managing i-αppli

- For some software, IP (information service providers) may access the software saved in the mobile phone and directly stop the use of it. In this case, most operations including running the software, setting the software for the stand-by display and upgrading the software are disabled and only deleting the software and displaying the software information are available. To use the software again, you need to request IP to resume the use of the software. For more details, contact IP.
- For some software, IP (information service providers) may send data to the software saved in the mobile phone.
- When IP (information service providers) sends a stop/resume request or data to the software, the mobile phone starts to communicate with IP and “” flashes. No packet communications charge is required.

## Upgrading i-αppli

The software saved in the FOMA terminal can be upgraded if a newer version of the downloaded software is available on a site.

- 1 From the list of i-αppli software, select the software and press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.
- 2 Select [Upgrade] [Yes] and press .  
Download of the new version of the software starts.

Some software can be upgraded automatically when it is started.

When the FOMA terminal is connected to the network for software upgrade, the packet communications charge is required.

## Adding/Deleting Folders

Folders in which software are saved can be added or deleted. Up to 10 folders can be used to manage software and folder names can also be changed.

- You cannot delete the top folder in the list (default: [ソフトウェア] (Software list)).

Example: Adding a folder

- 1 Press  (i-mode) for over a second in the stand-by display and press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.
- 2 Select [Edit folder] [Create folder], press , and enter a folder name.  
Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters. The folder is added.  
**To change a folder name**  
Move the cursor to a folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] [Edit folder name]. Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.  
**To delete a folder**  
Move the cursor to a folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] [Delete folder]. Enter the Security code and select [Yes].

## Moving i-αppli to a Different Folder

You can move software to a different folder using three methods.

Example: Moving a software

- 1 Press  (i-mode) for over a second in the stand-by display, select a folder, and press .  
**To move all software in the folder**  
From the Function menu, select [Move] [Move all] [Yes] a folder.  
**To move several software**  
From the Function menu, select [Move] [Select&move]. Select software and press  (Complete). Select [Yes] a folder.
- 2 Select the software and press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.
- 3 Select [Move] [Move one] [Yes] and press .  
The Select move to display appears.
- 4 Select a folder and press .  
The selected software is moved to the different folder.

## Deleting i-αppli

You can delete software using four methods.

Example: Deleting a software

- 1 Press  (i-mode) for over a second in the stand-by display.  
**To delete all software**  
From the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].
- 2 Select a folder and press .  
**To delete all software in the folder**  
From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].  
**To delete several software**  
From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete] and select software. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].
- 3 Select the software and press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.
- 4 Select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes] and press .  
The selected software is deleted.

When deleting i-αppli with mail or deleting all software including i-αppli with mail, you can select whether to delete the automatically created mail folder at the same time. However, if the i-αppli with mail folder contains protected mail at the time you select to delete both of them, neither the software nor the folder can be deleted. When you select to delete only the software and keep the folder intact, you can display only the mail main body from the Function menu (P.212). Some Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software may not be deleted. Some software requires to run i-αppli software and delete data stored in the IC card before you can delete the software.

When the IC card lock is set, you cannot delete an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli.

## Checking Error History and Trace Result

The error histories for the i-αppli stand-by display and the results output by the i-αppli trace feature can be displayed.

Stand-by err hist	When the i-αppli stand-by display is terminated by an error, etc., up to 10 records (including the time of error occurrence, etc.) are displayed.
Security err hist	When i-αppli software is terminated by a security error, such as being unable to use the saved data, up to 10 records (including the time of error occurrence, etc.) are displayed.
Trace result	When i-αppli software supporting the trace feature is terminated, a maximum of 16 trace results is displayed.
Auto start err hist	When the startup of i-αppli software supporting the Auto start feature is terminated by an error, up to 10 records (including the time of error occurrence, etc.) are displayed.

Example: Displaying the stand-by error history

- 1 From the Menu, select [i-αppli] [i αppli history] and press **⏏**.



- 2 Select [Stand-by err hist] and press **⏏**.



To display the security error history

Select [Security err hist].

To display the trace result

Select [Trace result].

To display the auto start error history

Select [Auto start err hist].

To delete the error history or trace result

Press **⏏** (Delete) and select [Yes].

To i-αppli authors

If the software does not operate properly during its programming, the trace result may be useful as a reference.

## Using Various i-αppli Functions

### Using the Camera Function from i-αppli

You can use the camera function (P.136) from the software running on the FOMA terminal.

- Images are used and saved in the software.
- Items that can be set and the startup procedure of the camera vary depending on the software.

- 1 While running the software, start the camera function. The Camera mode display appears.

- 2 Point the camera at the object and press **Ⓜ**. The image is recorded.

### Using the Bar Code Reader from i-αppli

You can use the bar code reader (P.149) from the software running on the FOMA terminal.

- The startup procedure of the bar code reader varies depending on the software.
- To scan the JAN/QR code, rotate the macro switch to the "⏏" position to set the Macro mode (close distance of about 7 cm) (P.137).
- The scanned data may be used in the software.

- 1 While running the software, start the bar code reader. The bar code reader display appears.

- 2 Locate at the JAN/QR code at the center of the display and press **Ⓜ**. The JAN/QR code is scanned.

### Using Infrared Communications from i-αppli

You can use the infrared communications (P.260) from the software running on the FOMA terminal.

- There are some data that cannot be exchanged even if the other device is equipped with the infrared communications function.
- The startup procedure of the infrared communications varies depending on the software.

- 1 While running the software, start the infrared communications.

- 2 Select [Yes] and press **⏏**. The infrared communications is started.

### Obtaining a ToruCa Card from i-αppli

You can obtain ToruCa cards from the software running on the FOMA terminal.

- You can obtain up to 100 ToruCa cards each up to 1,024 bytes for a ToruCa card or 100K bytes for a ToruCa(detail) card. The number of ToruCa cards that can be obtained varies between 10 and 100 depending on the size of each ToruCa card to be obtained.
- The obtaining method of ToruCa cards varies depending on the software.

- 1 While running the software, select a ToruCa card and press **⏏**.

The screen for confirming whether to save data appears.

- 2 Select [Yes] and press **⏏**. The ToruCa card is obtained.

# i-Channel

What is i-Channel? .....	234
Displaying the i-Channel .....	235

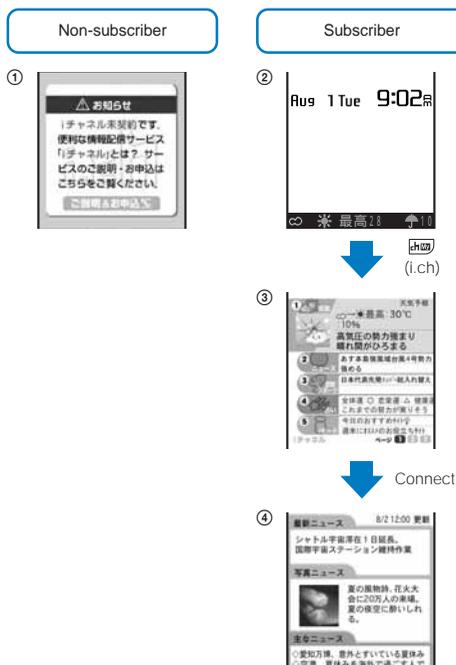
The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

## What is i-Channel?

The i-Channel service provided by DoCoMo or another IP (information service providers) distributes graphics-based information including news and weather to i-Channel-compatible terminals.

You can run the latest information updates in the stand-by display as Telop text by automatically getting this information on a regular basis. You can also display a list of channels and view the channel you want by pressing **[i.ch]** (P.235). The channel you select from the channel list gives you access to rich and detailed information.

- For information about precautions on the use of i-Channel and operating procedure, see the “i-mode User’s Manual”.
- The i-Channel service is provided only in Japanese.

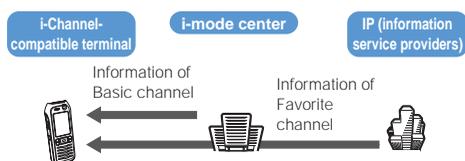


- ① When you are not subscribing to i-Channel
- ② After you start subscribing to i-Channel, the Telop text appears automatically on the stand-by display whenever you receive information or display the channel list.
- ③ When you press **[i.ch]** (i.ch), the channel list appears. You can view the information for each channel, displayed by the running Telop text, in a list form instead.
- ④ You can select a channel and view the detailed information display for each channel.

The displays shown here are examples and may be different from the actual displays.

There are two types of channels: “Basic channel” and “Favorite channel”. “Basic channel” is provided by DoCoMo and is pre-registered, and therefore you can use it from the moment you start using the i-Channel service. The packet communications charge required for automatic updates of information distributed for the “Basic channel” is included in the i-Channel service charge. IP (information service providers) other than DoCoMo offers “Favorite channel” that you can register and use according to your needs. The packet communications charge required for automatic updates of information distributed for “Favorite channel” is not included in the i-Channel service charge. Only “Basic channel” information can be run as Telop text on the stand-by display.

- The information may be charged in order to use some “Favorite channel”.
- You may need to apply separately for access to a “Favorite channel” to IP that provides it.
- The packet communications charge is required in addition to the i-Channel service charge when you view detailed information of “Basic channel” and “Favorite channel” from the channel list.



i-Channel is a paid service you have to subscribe to. (To apply for the i-Channel service, the subscription to i-mode is required.)

- Operation method (P.235)
- Compatible models: 7011, 9021 series, P8511, 7021 series, 9021S series, and D8511WMM

### Trial service

If you are subscribing to i-mode and have an i-Channel-compatible terminal but have not applied for an i-Channel subscriber’s line for i-Channel-compatible terminals, you can use the “Basic channel” service free of charge for a specific period. You must, however, pay a packet communications charge required for viewing detailed information from the channel list.

- For the precautions on using the trial service and its operating procedure, see the “i-mode User’s Manual”.

As a rule, the trial service starts automatically following a specific period after you insert the UIM and start using the i-Channel-compatible terminal. If the trial service does not start automatically, press **[i.ch]** to start it.

You can use the trial service only once per subscriber line.

The trial service automatically expires following a specific period after you start using it. For the procedure to stop the trial service before it expires, see the “i-mode User’s Manual”.

## Displaying the i-Channel

- 1 Press **[i.ch]** (i.ch) in the stand-by display.



The channel list appears.

- 2 Select a channel and press **[OK]**.



You may receive specific information when the channel list is displayed, depending on the terms of use.

## When You Receive i-Channel



When you receive information, the information is automatically run as Telop text on the stand-by display.

To display the channel list  
Press **[i.ch]** (i.ch).

Telop

When you receive i-Channel information, “**[i.ch]**” “**[OK]**” flashes. Even if you receive information, the FOMA terminal does not sound the ring tone or vibrate, and the incoming indicator does not operate, either.

You can adjust the scrolling speed of the Telop text and also set to hide the Telop text (P.109).

If you switch the UIM to another i-Channel-compatible terminal, the Telop text does not appear. When the information is automatically updated or if you press **[i.ch]** (i.ch) to receive latest information, the Telop text starts running automatically.

If you change the host, the Telop text may be turned off and information may not be automatically updated. To receive latest information, press **[i.ch]** (i.ch) and display the channel list. The Telop text starts running automatically.

You can change the i-Channel host using the Host selection (P.175). Normally, you do not need to change the host.

When you cannot receive information because the FOMA terminal is powered off or outside of the service area, etc., you can receive it by pressing **[i.ch]** (i.ch) and selecting a non-subscriber channel.

You may not be able to receive information in default status. In this case, you can press **[i.ch]** (i.ch) to receive information and the information is automatically run as Telop text on the stand-by display.

Telop text is not displayed in the following cases.

- When the Lock all is set
- When the PIM lock is set
- When the Public mode (Driving mode) is set
- When the UIM is not inserted
- When the i-Channel or i-mode service is canceled (When the i-mode service is canceled prior to cancellation of the i-Channel, the Telop text is left displayed.)



# Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

What is Osaifu-Keitai? .....	238
Starting an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-appli .....	239
What is ToruCa? .....	240
Obtaining a ToruCa Card .....	<ToruCa> 240
Displaying a ToruCa(detail) Card .....	<Display ToruCa(detail)> 240
Setting Whether to Obtain a ToruCa Card .....	<ToruCa receive> 241
Managing ToruCa Cards .....	241
Locking the IC Card Function .....	<IC card lock> 242

The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

## What is Osaifu-Keitai?

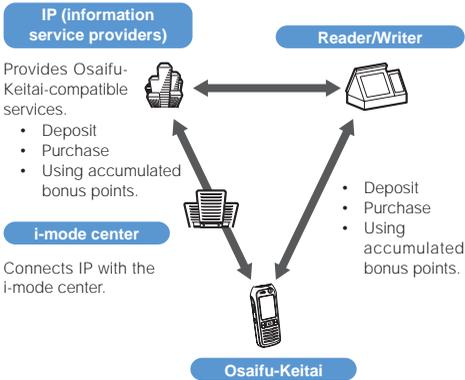
"Osaifu-Keitai" provides convenient i-mode functions (i-mode FeliCa) that can be performed using the IC card inserted in an i-mode terminal.

FeliCa adopts a contactless IC card technology that enables data to be read/written just by scanning.

You can simply hold up your Osaifu-Keitai to a reader/writer in stores that provide the FeliCa service to pay for your shopping using e-money, or use it as an airplane ticket or point card. With features like Osaifu-Keitai, your mobile phone becomes an increasingly handy tool in real life.

This latest FeliCa is even more convenient to use compared with previous versions of the FeliCa-compatible contactless IC card. For example, you can deposit e-money in Osaifu-Keitai on the IC card from a site, and check the balance and purchase history.

A device used for reading and writing an IC card.



To use IC card functions, download Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-appli software supporting IC card.

The application procedure for using Osaifu-Keitai-compatible services varies from one service to another. Please inquire at the relevant contact office, such as your IP (information service providers). For precautions on the use of each Osaifu-Keitai-compatible service, see the "i-mode Users Manual".

Note down the name of Osaifu-Keitai-compatible service you are using and its contact office phone number on a separate memo and keep it safely. The data on the IC card could be lost/changed due to an Osaifu-Keitai trouble/repair, change to another FOMA terminal, or handling condition. (Note that, as a rule, you are requested to delete the data yourself when your mobile phone is repaired.) Please note that DoCoMo shall not be liable for any data loss/change of the information saved on the IC card. The procedure for deleting data on the IC card and taking action for lost/changed data varies from one Osaifu-Keitai-compatible service to another. Please inquire at your IP (information service providers) beforehand.

You cannot ask our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.) to copy data on your IC card to a new mobile phone when you change your mobile phone to another Osaifu-Keitai phone or replace your defective mobile phone with a new one. The procedure for copying data varies from one Osaifu-Keitai-compatible service to another. Please inquire at your IP (information service providers) beforehand.

Be careful not to lose your Osaifu-Keitai. In case you lose your Osaifu-Keitai, inquire at your IP (information service providers) for the action to be taken regarding the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible service. You can restrict the IC card function using the Remote lock or IC card lock.

## Starting an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-appli

You have access to useful functions, for example, reading/writing data on the IC card using an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-appli in order to deposit e-money (such as train ticket deposit) or look up the balance or purchase history from the mobile phone.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Tools] [IC card content] and press .



- 2 Select the software and press .

The software is started up and \*\* or \*\* appears.

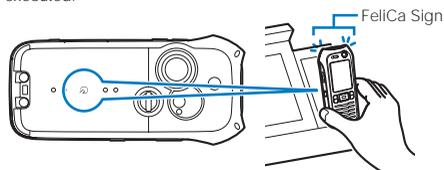
Reading/writing of data on the IC card from the software is interrupted in the following cases. Partially read/written data may be discarded.

- When the time preset for the Schedule alarm or Alarm occurs
- When receiving a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call (The operation that takes place after you hang up the call may be different depending on the service you use.)
- When the battery runs out

## Using the Osaifu-Keitai

When you hold up and show the FeliCa mark "FeliCa Sign" side of the FOMA terminal to a reader/writer (external device), you can use the FOMA terminal for payment as e-money or use it in place of a train ticket. You can use this function without starting up the associated software.

- You can use Osaifu-Keitai by holding up and showing the FeliCa mark to a reader/writer (external device) during a call or i-mode connection. You cannot start the software.
- Holding up and showing the FeliCa mark to a reader/writer (external device) may cause the associated software to be executed.



When the FOMA terminal comes within the communication range with the reader/writer (external device), the FeliCa Sign lights, and once the communication starts, it changes to flashing, accompanied by a brief vibration of the FOMA terminal.

If the FeliCa mark on the FOMA terminal is not recognized by a reader/writer (external device), move the terminal back and forth and side to side as you hold it up to the device.

Even when the FOMA terminal is powered off, you can use the Osaifu-Keitai by holding up and showing the FeliCa mark to a reader/writer (external device). You cannot use it if the battery pack is not attached. You may not be able to use Osaifu-Keitai if the attached battery pack has not been used for a long period of time or has not been charged after the battery alarm was sounded. In this case, charge the battery pack and power on the FOMA terminal. When the FOMA terminal is powered off, you cannot start an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-appli to read/write data on the IC card.

Note that if you leave the FeliCa Sign flashing, the battery drains faster.

When the battery level becomes low, the brightness of the FeliCa Sign may decrease.

## What is ToruCa?

ToruCa is an e-card that can be obtained using Osaifu-Keitai. This convenient e-card can be used for applications such as flier, restaurant card, or coupon. You can obtain ToruCa cards from a reader or site. These e-cards can be easily exchanged by way of e-mail, infrared communications, or the "Memory Stick Duo". To display the ToruCa card you get, select [Tools] [ToruCa].

- Compatible models: 902i series, 902iS series, and F702iD

### Flow of ToruCa Operation

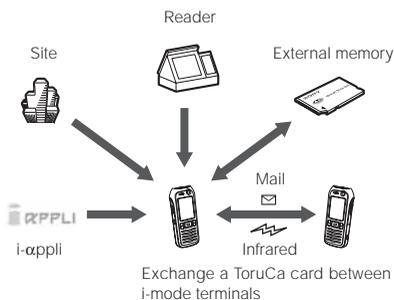


Hold up and show the Osaifu-Keitai to a reader in order to obtain a ToruCa card. When the FOMA terminal comes within the communication range with the reading device, the FeliCa Sign lights, and once the communication starts, it changes to flashing, accompanied by a brief vibration of the FOMA terminal.



Select an obtained ToruCa card from the ToruCa list. Select [詳細] (Detail) to view further information.

### Methods for Obtaining a ToruCa Card

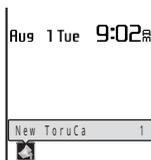


When you exchange a ToruCa card using i-mode communications, you have to pay the regular packet communications charge.

## Obtaining a ToruCa Card

You can hold up and show the FOMA terminal to a reader/writer (external device) to obtain a ToruCa card.

- You can obtain up to 100 ToruCa cards. The number of ToruCa cards that can be obtained varies between 10 and 100 depending on the size of each ToruCa card to be obtained.
- While the IC card lock is set, you cannot obtain a ToruCa card from a reader/writer (external device).



When you obtain a ToruCa card from a reader/writer (external device), the notification icon "🔔" (New ToruCa) appears in the stand-by display.

To display the ToruCa card

Press **[Link]** in the stand-by display and select "🔔".

## Displaying a ToruCa(detail) Card

You can display a saved ToruCa card any time. You can also obtain a ToruCa(detail) card from the ToruCa card.

- From the Menu, select [Tools] [ToruCa] and press **[Link]**.



The ToruCa folder list appears.

- The number of saved ToruCa cards in the folder at the cursor/the total number of ToruCa cards is displayed at the right end of the title line.
- The following icons show the status of the folder. The folder name is displayed next to the icon.

(Yellow)	Preset folder <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If it contains an unread ToruCa card, "🔔" (Yellow) appears instead.</li> </ul>
(Blue)	User-created folder <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If it contains an unread ToruCa card, "🔔" (Blue) appears instead.</li> </ul>

- Select a folder and press **[Link]**.



Obtained date/time

Index

Category icon

The ToruCa list appears.

- The title line shows the folder name and the figures at the right end of the title line show the order of the ToruCa card at the cursor/the total number of ToruCa cards in the folder.
- The following icons show the status of the ToruCa card.

	Unread ToruCa card
	Read ToruCa card
	Protected unread ToruCa card
	Protected read ToruCa card

- 3 Select a ToruCa card and press .



- 4 Select [詳細] (Detail)  [Yes] and press .



ToruCa(detail) card is obtained.

To update a ToruCa(detail) card to the latest status

From the Function menu, select [Updated ToruCa]  [Yes].

To save data such as a phone number in the Phonebook

Move the cursor to the phone number, etc. and from the Function menu, select [Add to phonebook].

- Follow the same steps as in the Save record (P.95, step 4 to 7).

When you obtain a ToruCa card from a reader/writer (external device) while displaying a list such as the ToruCa list, select [ToruCa] once again to display the obtained ToruCa card.

## Setting Whether to Obtain a ToruCa Card

You can set whether to obtain ToruCa cards from a reader/writer (external device) for the FOMA terminal.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings]  [Lock/Security]  [ToruCa receive] and press .

[Permitted]:

Obtain a ToruCa card from a reader/writer (external device).

[Not permit]:

Do not obtain a ToruCa card from a reader/writer (external device).

- 2 Select [Permitted]/[Not permit] and press .

The ToruCa receive is set.

## Managing ToruCa Cards

### Adding/Deleting Folders

You can create and delete a folder for saving a ToruCa card. You can manage up to 21 folders. You can also change the name of a folder or sort folders in the list.

- You cannot delete [ToruCa] or change the folder name.

Example: Adding a folder

- 1 Press  (Func) in the ToruCa folder list.

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit folder] , [Create folder], press , and enter a folder name.

Enter a folder name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.

The folder is added.

To change a folder name

Move the cursor to the folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder]  [Edit folder name]. Enter a folder name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.

To sort the folders

From the Function menu, select [Edit folder]  [Reorder folder]  a folder a position to move to and press  (Complete).

To delete a folder

Move the cursor to the folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder]  [Delete folder], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### Moving a ToruCa Card to Another Folder

You can move ToruCa cards to another folder using three methods.

Example: Moving a ToruCa card

- 1 From the ToruCa folder list, select a folder and press .

To move all ToruCa cards in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Move]  [Move all]  [Yes] a folder.

To move several ToruCa cards

From the Function menu, select [Move]  [Select&move], select ToruCa cards, and press  (Complete). Select [Yes] a folder.

- 2 Select a ToruCa card and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 3 Select [Move] , [Move one] , [Yes] and press .

The Select move to display appears.

- 4 Select a folder and press .

The selected ToruCa card is moved to another folder.

## Protecting a ToruCa Card

You can protect a ToruCa card from being overwritten. You can set protection for up to 50 ToruCa cards (up to 500K bytes).

- 1 From the ToruCa list, select a ToruCa card and press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.  
**To cancel the protection**  
Move the cursor to the protected ToruCa card and press  (Func).
- 2 Select [Protect ON/OFF] [Yes] and press .  
The ToruCa card is set for protection and "ON" or "OFF" appears.

## Deleting a ToruCa Card

You can delete ToruCa cards using four methods.

Example: Deleting a ToruCa card

- 1 From the Menu, select [Tools] [ToruCa] and press .  
**To delete all ToruCa cards**  
From the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].
- 2 Select a folder and press .  
**To delete all ToruCa cards in the folder**  
From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].  
**To delete several ToruCa cards**  
From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete], select ToruCa cards, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].
- 3 Select a ToruCa card and press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.
- 4 Select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes] and press .  
The selected ToruCa card is deleted.

## Sorting the List

You can temporarily sort the ToruCa cards in a folder and display them.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the ToruCa list.  
The Function menu appears.
- 2 Select [Sort] a sorting order and press .  
[Date]:  
Sort by obtained date/time from newest to oldest.  
[Category]:  
Sort in the order of category icons that identify the type of ToruCa.  
[Index]:  
Sort by index in Japanese alphabetical order.  
The ToruCa cards are displayed in accordance with the selected sort method.

## Searching a ToruCa Card

You can search for ToruCa cards by category icons.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the ToruCa folder list.  
The Function menu appears.  
**To search for ToruCa cards in the folder**  
Press  (Func) in the ToruCa list.
- 2 Select [Search] and press .



- 3 Select the category icon and press  (OK).  
The search result appears.  
**To delete all searched ToruCa cards**  
From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all item], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].  
**To move all searched ToruCa cards**  
From the Function menu, select [Move] [Move all item] [Yes] a folder.

## Locking the IC Card Function

You can lock the IC card function to prevent others from using it. If you set the Remote lock, the IC card function is automatically locked.

- 1 Press  for over a second in the stand-by display.  
The IC card function is locked and "LOCK" appears.  
**To cancel the IC card lock**  
Press  for over a second in the stand-by display, enter the Security code, and press .

# Displaying/Editing/ Managing Data

## Using Still Image

Displaying the Saved Image .....	<My picture> 244
Editing Still Images .....	<Edit photo> 245

## Using Movie

Playing Back Movie/i-motion .....	<i-motion> 247
Editing Movie .....	<Edit movie> 248

## Using Chara-den

What is Chara-den? .....	<Chara-den> 249
--------------------------	-----------------

## Using the Melody

Playing Back a Melody .....	<Melody> 250
-----------------------------	--------------

## Using the “Memory Stick Duo”

“Memory Stick Duo” .....	251
Displaying Data on the “Memory Stick Duo” .....	251
Folder Setup of the “Memory Stick Duo” .....	252
Data That Can Be Written/Read to and from the “Memory Stick Duo” .....	253
Copying/Moving Data from the FOMA Terminal to the “Memory Stick Duo” .....	254
Copying/Moving Data from the “Memory Stick Duo” to the FOMA Terminal .....	254
Managing the “Memory Stick Duo” .....	255

## Using the UIM

Copying Data from the FOMA Terminal to the UIM .....	255
Copying Data from the UIM to the FOMA Terminal .....	255

## Using Data Box

Managing Data Box .....	<Data box> 256
Checking the Memory of the FOMA Terminal .....	<Storage information> 260

## Using Infrared Communications

What is the Infrared Communications? .....	<Infrared communications> 260
Data That Can Be Sent/Received via Infrared Communications .....	261
Receiving Data Using the Infrared Communications .....	<Receive Ir data> 262
Sending Data Using the Infrared Communications .....	<Send Ir data> 262
Using the Infrared Remote Control .....	263

## Using PDF-compatible Viewer

Displaying PDF Data .....	<My document> 263
---------------------------	-------------------

The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

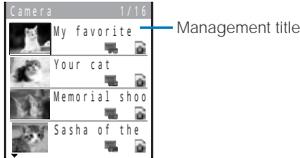
## Displaying the Saved Image

You can display images saved in My picture of the Data box of the FOMA terminal or the "Memory Stick Duo".

1 Press **[▲]** (**[□]**) in the stand-by display, select [My picture], and press **[■]**.

My picture folder list appears.

2 Select a folder and press **[■]**.



My picture file list appears.

- The title line shows the folder name and the figures at the right end of the title line show the order of the image at the cursor/the total number of images in the folder.
- The following icons show the type/size of an image and the source from where the image was obtained.

### Type and size

Icon	Type	Size
	JPEG image	sQCIF(128 × 96)
		QCIF(176 × 144)
		Stby(320 × 240)
		CIF(352 × 288)
		VGA(640 × 480)
		1.2M(1280 × 960)
		1.9M(1600 × 1200)
	3.1M(2048 × 1536)	
	Others	
	Frame image	-
	Stamp image	-
	GIF image	-
	Flash movie	-

- " appears on the upper right of the icon for images prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

### Source

Icon	Source
	Preinstalled images
	Images obtained from sites, i-mode mail, or i-appli
	Images recorded using the camera of the FOMA terminal
	Images scanned by a bar code reader, images moved/copied from the "Memory Stick Duo", images received using Infrared communications, and images retrieved from a PC, etc.

### To display the saved date/time

Press **[⏏]** to switch the display temporarily between the management title and saved date/time.

3 Select an image and press **[■]**.



The selected image appears.

### To hide the icons and guide display

Press **[F2]** (Display). When you press **[F2]** (Display), you can switch the display between standard and simple or turn off the display.

### To display the previous/next image

Press **[◀]** to display the previous image and **[▶]** to display the next image.

### To display a JPEG or GIF image in enlarged or original size

Press **[en]** (Enlarge/True img). Press **[re]** (True img/Reduce) to restore the original size.

### To display a Flash movie again

Press **[re]** (Retry).

### To change the orientation of a displayed JPEG image

From the Function menu, select [Change screen] [Vertical]/[Horizontal].

### To attach to i-mode mail

From the Function menu, select [Attach to mail] (P.199).

### To set an image for stand-by or other displays

From the Function menu, select [Display setting] a type of display.

### To start the camera

From the Function menu, select [Photo shoot mode].

It may take time to display a file list or images saved in the "Memory Stick Duo".

If you edit a recorded image on a PC, etc., a blue image may be displayed instead of the thumbnail.

When the image cannot be displayed, "" appears.

## Displaying Images as a Slideshow

JPEG images saved in My picture can be displayed by switching them automatically.

- 1 Press  (Func) in My picture file list.  
The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Slideshow] and press .



- 3 Select the time during which an image is displayed at [Interval].

- The image display interval is an estimated time during which an image is displayed. The display interval may vary depending on the size of the displayed images.

- 4 Select the image layout at [Direction].

- 5 Press  (Activate).

The slideshow starts.

To stop the slideshow

Press  (Stop).

## Editing Still Images

You can edit a JPEG image saved in My picture by adding a stamp, a frame, etc.

- You cannot edit preinstalled images or images prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.
- Images recorded by other than SO902IWP+ may not be edited.
- Some types of images may take time to save when saved after editing.
- Images may become inferior by editing repeatedly.

## Adding a Frame

A frame can be added to an image of [sQCIF(128 × 96)], [QCIF(176 × 144)], [Stby(320 × 240)], and [CIF(352 × 288)].

Example: Adding a frame and saving by overwriting

- 1 From My picture file list, select an image, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit photo] [Frame] a folder a frame and press .

To check a frame

Move the cursor to a frame and press  (Play).

- 3 Press , select [Overwrite], and press .

The image with the frame is saved by overwriting the original image.

To save as a new image

Select [Save new] a place to save to.

## Adding a Stamp

A stamp can be added to an image of [sQCIF(128 × 96)], [QCIF(176 × 144)], [Stby(320 × 240)], and [CIF(352 × 288)].

Example: Adding a stamp and saving by overwriting

- 1 From My picture file list, select an image, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit photo] [Image stamp] a folder a stamp and press .

To check a stamp

Move the cursor to a stamp and press  (Play).

- 3 Use   /   to adjust the position and press  (Paste).

To add the same stamp

Repeat step 3.

To paste another stamp

Press  (Retry) and perform step 2 to 3 again.

- 4 Press  (OK).

- 5 Press , select [Overwrite], and press .

The image with the stamp is saved by overwriting the original image.

To save as a new image

Select [Save new] a place to save to.

## Adding Text

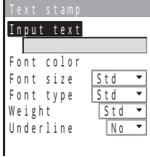
Text can be added to an image of [sQCIF(128 × 96)], [QCIF(176 × 144)], [Stby(320 × 240)], and [CIF(352 × 288)]. The style and color of the text can also be specified.

Example: Adding text and saving by overwriting

- 1 From My picture file list, select an image, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit photo]  [Text stamp] and press .



- 3 Enter a text to be added at [Input text].  
Enter a text within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters.
- 4 Select a color of a text at [Font color].
- 5 Select the size of a font to be pasted at [Font size].
- 6 Select the type of a font to be pasted at [Font type].
- 7 Select the thickness of a font to be pasted at [Weight].
- 8 Select [No]/[Yes] at [Underline].
- 9 Press  (OK).

- 10 Use   /   to adjust the position and press  (Paste).

To add the same text stamp

Repeat step 10.

To paste another text stamp

Press  (Retry) and perform step 3 to 10 again.

- 11 Press  (OK).

- 12 Press  (Save), select [Overwrite], and press .
- The image with the text is saved by overwriting the original image.

To save as a new image

Select [Save new]  a place to save to.

## Trimming Part of an Image After Zoom In

You can specify a part of an image after zooming in on it and trim it into a size of [sQCIF(128 × 96)], [QCIF(176 × 144)], [Stand-by(320 × 240)], or [CIF(352 × 288)].

- When the image size is [sQCIF(128 × 96)], you cannot trim this image.

Example: Trimming an image and saving by overwriting

- 1 From My picture file list, select an image, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit photo]  [Zoom&trim] a size of an image to be trimmed and press .



- The image size displayed in gray is not available for trimming.

- 3 Press  (Zoom(T))/ (Zoom(W)).



- Press  (Zoom(T)) to enlarge and  (Zoom(W)) to reduce an image.

The zoom is adjusted and the bar is displayed for the zoom magnification you have set.

- 4 Use   /   to select the area to be trimmed and press  (OK).

The image is trimmed to the selected size.

- 5 Press  (Save), select [Overwrite], and press .

The trimmed image is saved by overwriting the original image.

To save as a new image

Select [Save new]  a place to save to.

## Rotating an Image

An images of [sQCIF(128 × 96)], [QCIF(176 × 144)], [Sby(320 × 240)], [CIF(352 × 288)], and [VGA(640 × 480)] can be rotated.

Example: Rotating an image and saving by overwriting

- From My picture file list, select an image, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- Select [Edit photo]  [Rotate] and press .

- Press  (Rotate) and press .

Every time you press  (Rotate), the image rotates clockwise by 90 degrees.

- Press , select [Overwrite], and press .

The rotated image is saved by overwriting the original image.

To save as a new image

Select [Save new]  a place to save to.

## Converting the Image Size

You can convert an image size into [sQCIF(128 × 96)], [QCIF(176 × 144)], [Stand-by(320 × 240)], or [CIF(352 × 288)].

Example: Converting an image size and saving by overwriting

- From My picture file list, select an image, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- Select [Edit photo]  [Select size]  a size of an image to be converted and press .

- The image size displayed in gray is not available for size conversion.

- Press , select [Overwrite], and press .

The size-converted image is saved by overwriting the original image.

To save as a new image

Select [Save new]  a place to save to.

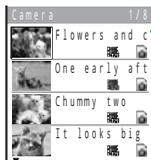
## Playing Back Movie/i-motion

You can play back a movie/i-motion (MP4 file only) saved in i-motion of the Data box of the FOMA terminal or the "Memory Stick Duo".

- Press  () in the stand-by display, select [i-motion], and press .

The i-motion folder list appears.

- Select a folder and press .



Management title

The i-motion file list appears.

- The title line shows the folder name and the figures at the right end of the title line show the order of the movie/i-motion at the cursor/the total number of movie/i-motion in the folder.
- The following icons show the type/size of a movie/i-motion, playback restrictions, and the source from where the movie/i-motion was obtained.

Type and size

Icon	Type	Size
	Movie/i-motion with video and sound tracks	sQCIF(128 × 96) QCIF(176 × 144) Sby(320 × 240) Others
	Movie/i-motion with video track only	sQCIF(128 × 96) QCIF(176 × 144) Sby(320 × 240) Others
	Movie/i-motion with sound track only	-

-  appears on the upper right of the icon for movie/i-motion prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

Playback restrictions

Icon	Playback restrictions
	Movie/i-motion with playback restrictions
	Movie/i-motion whose time limit on playback has expired

Source

Icon	Source
	Preinstalled movie/i-motion
	Movie/i-motion obtained from sites, i-mode mail, or i-αppli
	Movie/i-motion recorded using the camera of the FOMA terminal
	Movie/i-motion moved/copied from the "Memory Stick Duo", movie/i-motion received using infrared communications, and movie/i-motion retrieved from a PC, etc.

To play back movie in a folder repeatedly

From the Function menu, select [Continuous play], select [H]/[V] at [Direction], and press  (Activate). The files displayed in the list are played back sequentially. To stop the playback, press  (Stop).

To display the saved date/time

Press  to switch the display temporarily between the management title and saved date/time.

### 3 Select a movie/i-motion and press .



The selected movie/i-motion appears.

#### To turn off the icons and guide display of the display

Press  (Display). When you press  (Display), you can switch the display between standard/simple or turn it off.

#### To display an image of [sQCIF(128 x 96)] or [QCIF(176 x 144)] in enlarged or original size

Press  (Enlarge/True img).

#### To display the previous/next movie/i-motion

Press  to display the previous movie/i-motion and  to display the next movie/i-motion.

#### To change the orientation

From the Function menu, select [Change screen] [Vertical]/[Horizontal].

#### To attach to i-mode mail

From the Function menu, select [Attach to mail] (P.199).

#### To set a movie/i-motion for the stand-by display

From the Function menu, select [Stand-by display].

#### To start the camera

From the Function menu, select [Movie shoot mode].

### 4 Press (Play).



The selected movie/i-motion is played back.

#### Operating method

Operation	Key operation
Play	Press  (Play).
Pause	Press  (Pause).
Stop	Press  (Stop).
Volume adjustment	Press   .
Fast-forward	Press  during playback. Pressing and holding  also provides Fast-forward.
Fast-reverse	Press  during playback. Pressing and holding  also provides Fast-reverse.
Frame advance	Press  during pause.

It may take time to display a file list or movie/i-motion saved in the "Memory Stick Duo".

If you leave the FOMA terminal without a battery pack or with a fully expended battery pack for a long period of time, the date and time is reset, and a movie/i-motion that has a time limit on playback cannot be played back.

A movie/i-motion can be set for the ring tone and/or incoming image when [Ring tone] and/or [Receive display] is set to "Not restricted" as can be checked in the Detail info display. However, the following are the exceptions.

- A movie/i-motion restored from a PC, which was once saved to the PC using the infrared communications or Data Link Software
- A movie/i-motion saved from the "Memory Stick Duo" to the FOMA terminal (including the one that is restored to the FOMA terminal after once retrieved from there)

## Editing Movie

You can edit a movie recorded with the FOMA terminal.

### Clipping a Still Image from a Movie

You can save a paused movie image as a still image.

#### 1 From the i-motion file list, select a movie, press , and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

#### 2 Select [Edit movie] [Photo clipping] and press .



To move forward frame-by-frame

Press .

#### 3 Press (Play), press (Pause) at the clipping position, and press (Clip).

#### 4 Select [Yes] and press .

#### 5 Press (Save), select [Yes] a place to save to, and press .

The still image clip is saved in My picture.

### Clipping a Movie

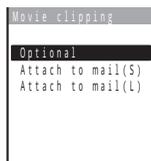
You can clip a part of a movie by specifying the range and size.

Example: Trimming a movie image by specifying size and saving by overwriting

#### 1 From the i-motion file list, select a movie, press , and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

#### 2 Select [Edit movie] [Movie clipping] and press .



[Optional]:

Clip a movie by specifying the start and end positions.

[Attach to mail(S)]:

Automatically clip a movie to a maximum of 290K-byte length from the specified start position.

[Attach to mail(L)]:

Automatically clip a movie to a maximum of 490K-byte length from the specified start position.

- 3 Select [Attach to mail(S)]/[Attach to mail(L)] and press .



To move forward frame-by-frame

Press .

- 4 Press  (Play), press  (Pause) at the clipping start position, and press  (Start).

When you select [Optional]

Press  (Play), press  (Pause) at the clipping end position, and press  (End).

- 5 Select [Yes] and press .

- 6 Press  (Save), select [Overwrite], and press .

The movie clip is saved by overwriting the original movie.

To save as a new movie

Select [Save new] a place to save to.

## Converting the Image Size

You can convert a [Stby(320 x 240)] image size movie into the [QCIF(176 x 144)] image size.

Example: Converting the image size and saving by overwriting

- 1 From the i-motion file list, select a movie, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit movie] [Select size] and press .

- 3 Select [Yes] and press .

- 4 Press  (Save), select [Overwrite], and press .

The converted movie is saved by overwriting the original movie.

To save as a new movie

Select [Save new] a place to save to.

It may take time to convert a movie/i-motion when it is saved in the "Memory Stick Duo".

When you convert the image size of a movie/i-motion exceeding 500K bytes in file size, it may be clipped into a file size that can be attached to mail.

## What is Chara-den?

You can send an avatar of your choice instead of your own image when you use the videophone function. You can make this avatar move by pressing the keys on the keypad. The mouth part of some avatars can be moved in response to the sound heard from the microphone.

### Preinstalled Chara-den characters

ブンブン (Dimo)

PUCCA

GARU



©BVIG



©VOOZ ©BVIG



©VOOZ ©BVIG

### Action lists of the preinstalled Chara-den characters

#### ブンブン (Dimo)

Full-body action

- |         |            |          |
|---------|------------|----------|
| 1: 嬉しい  | 2: ごめんなさい  | 3: びっくり  |
| 4: ラブラブ | 5: 病気      | 6: 酔っぱらい |
| 7: 着ぐるみ | 8: 拾ってください | 9: 成金    |

#### PUCCA

Full-body action

- |            |          |           |
|------------|----------|-----------|
| 1: Bye-bye | 2: うふふ   | 3: ダンス    |
| 4: エンピツ    | 5: ZZZ   | 6: ジャンプ   |
| 7: ビース     | 8: ごめんね  | 8: もじもじ   |
| #1: ルンルン   | #2: 元気一杯 | #3: うれしー! |
| #4: 疲れた    |          |           |

#### Parts action

- |          |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 11: YES  | 12: NO    | 13: Happy |
| 14: ラブラブ | 15: ブンブン  | 16: 号泣    |
| 17: 絶句   | 18: うっしっし | 19: しめしめ  |
| 21: ピンチ  | 22: え?    | 23: ツーン   |

#### GARU

Full-body action

- |            |        |            |
|------------|--------|------------|
| 1: Bye-bye | 2: 考え中 | 3: アレレ     |
| 4: とりゃー!   | 5: ダンス | 6: かかってこい! |
| 7: ジャンプ    | 8: 礼   | 9: ショック!   |
| #1: 俺にお任せ! | #2: 読書 | #3: 面目ない   |
| #4: ドキッ!   |        |            |

#### Parts action

- |          |          |                |
|----------|----------|----------------|
| 11: YES  | 12: NO   | 13: なるほど       |
| 14: ホの字  | 15: 絶句   | 16: ブンブン       |
| 17: 号泣   | 18: スマイル | 19: イライラ       |
| 21: ピンチ! | 22: びっくり | 23: 何とでも言えばいいさ |

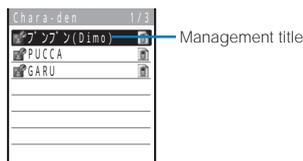
If you have deleted a preinstalled Chara-den file, you can download it from "SO@Planet".

[i Menu] [メニューリスト] [ケータイ電話メーカー]  
[SO@Planet]

## Displaying and Operating Chara-den

You can display Chara-den characters saved in the Chara-den folder of the Data box.

- 1 Press () in the stand-by display, select [Chara-den], and press .



The Chara-den file list appears.

- The order of the Chara-den files in the list at the cursor/the total number of Chara-den files is displayed at the right end of the title line.
- File restriction is set for Chara-den files and “” appears on the upper right of the Chara-den icon.
- The following icons show the source from where the Chara-den file was obtained.

Icon	Source
	Preinstalled Chara-den file
	Chara-den file obtained from sites

### To place a videophone call

Move the cursor to the Chara-den file and from the Function menu, select [Call Chara-den], enter a phone number, and press (V.phone).

### To set a substitute image of videophone

Move the cursor to the Chara-den file and from the Function menu, select [Set sub image].

- 2 Select a Chara-den file and press .



©VOOZ ©BVIQ

### Operating method

Operation	Key operation
Stop action	Press .
Switch the action mode	Press  (Change). Every time you press this key, the operation is switched between full-body action and parts action. (Full-body action) : The entire body is moved. (Parts action) : A part of the body is moved.
Display the action list	Press  (List). Select an action to check the movement of it. Move the cursor to an action and press  (Detail) to display the action name.
Display other Chara-den file	From the Function menu, select [Set Chara-den] [Change Chara-den] a Chara-den file.
Delete a Chara-den file	From the Function menu, select [Delete one] [Yes].

The action that you can perform varies depending on a Chara-den file. Some Chara-den files have no action to be performed.

## Playing Back a Melody

You can play back a melody saved in Melody of the Data box of the FOMA terminal and in Melody of the “Memory Stick Duo”.

- 1 Press () in the stand-by display, select [Melody], and press .

The melody folder list appears.

- 2 Select a folder and press .



The melody file list appears.

- The title line shows the folder name and the figures at the right end of the title line show the order of the melody at the cursor/the total number of melodies in the folder.
- “” appears on the upper right of the icon for melodies prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.
- The following icons show the source from where the melody was obtained.

Icon	Source
	Preinstalled melodies
	Melodies obtained from sites, i-mode mail, or i-appli
	Melodies scanned by a bar code reader, melodies moved/copied from the “Memory Stick Duo”, melodies received using infrared communications, and melodies retrieved from a PC, etc.

### To play a melody that has specified playback range

Move the cursor to the melody and from the Function menu, select [Play portion].

### To attach to i-mode mail

Move the cursor to the melody and from the Function menu, select [Attach to mail] (P.199).

- 3 Select a melody and press .



The selected melody is played and the indicator flashes.

### To stop playback

Press (Stop).

### To play back the previous/next melody during playback

Press / .

### To adjust the volume

Press / .

When you play back a melody, the FOMA terminal may start vibrating in concert with the melody, regardless of the Vibrator setting (P.103).

## “Memory Stick Duo”

You can save Phonebook, mail, Bookmark, and other data in the FOMA terminal to the “Memory Stick Duo”, as well as copy data in the “Memory Stick Duo” to the FOMA terminal. You can also use the FOMA terminal to view data in the “Memory Stick Duo”.

To use the “Memory Stick Duo”, you are required to obtain it separately. If you do not have a “Memory Stick Duo”, you can purchase it at a home electric appliance store or other similar store.

- Data saved in the “Memory Stick Duo” from other devices may not be displayed/played back on the FOMA terminal. Similarly, data saved in the “Memory Stick Duo” from the FOMA terminal may not be displayed/played back on other devices.

- The “Memory Stick Duo” of up to 2GB bytes is checked for normal operation on the FOMA terminal. Normal operation for those with larger capacity is not guaranteed on the FOMA terminal (as of June 2006).

You can confirm the latest support condition using the following methods.

From the FOMA terminal:

[i Menu] [メニューリスト] [ケータイ電話メニュー]  
[SO@Planet].

From a PC: Website of Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc.

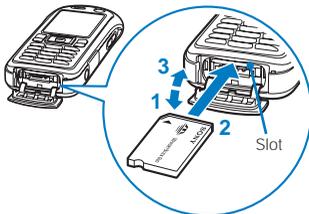
<http://www.SonyEricsson.co.jp/memorystick/>

- Do not remove the “Memory Stick Duo” from the FOMA terminal while accessing (loading or saving data, etc.). Doing so may cause malfunction, etc.
- When you save data in the “Memory Stick Duo”, it is recommended to make a backup copy of the saved data and keep it separately in a safety place. Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or modification of the data.

The FOMA terminal cannot use the “Memory Stick Duo” formatted on a PC or other devices. Be sure to use the “Memory Stick Duo” or “Memory Stick PRO Duo” formatted using the FOMA terminal (P.255).

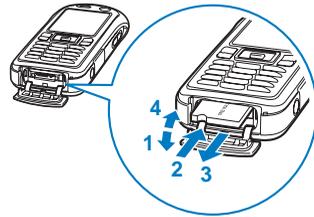
## Inserting and Removing the “Memory Stick Duo”

Inserting the “Memory Stick Duo”



- 1 Open the slot cover.
- 2 Insert the “Memory Stick Duo” into the slot.
  - Insert until it clicks into place.The data of the “Memory Stick Duo” is loaded and “■” appears in the display.
- 3 Close the slot cover.

Removing the “Memory Stick Duo”



- 1 Open the slot cover.
- 2 Press the “Memory Stick Duo” lightly.
  - Its end comes out and “■” disappears from the display.
- 3 Remove the “Memory Stick Duo”.
- 4 Close the slot cover.

## Displaying Data on the “Memory Stick Duo”

Data saved in the “Memory Stick Duo” can be displayed and checked.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Entertainment] [Memory Stick] and press .



The Memory Stick category list appears.

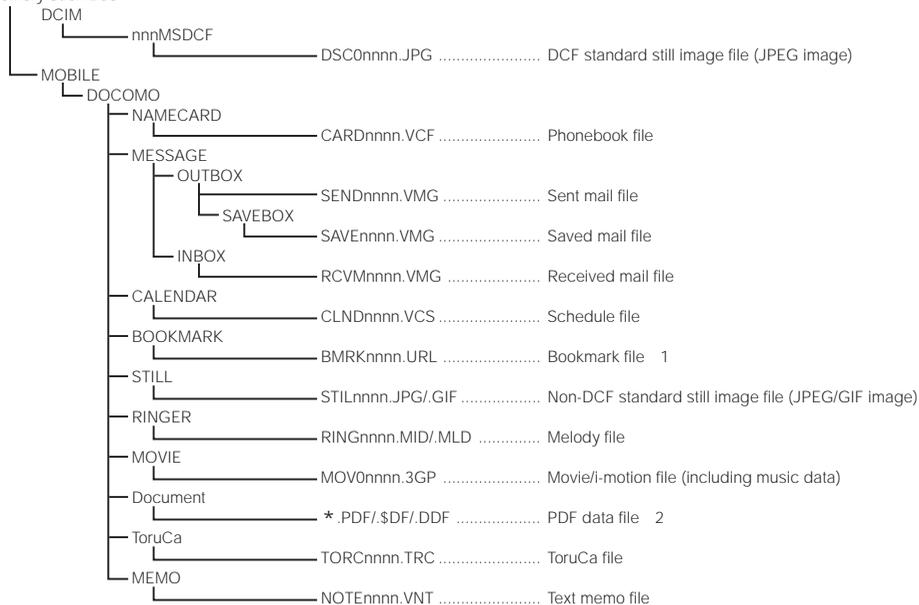
To display the Data box of the FOMA terminal  
Press (To Main).

- 2 Select a category and press .
  - To perform an operation while category/data is displayed, see the description about each function. You may not be able to perform some of the operations using the “Memory Stick Duo”.
    - My picture (P.244)
    - i-motion (P.247)
    - Melody (P.250)
    - My document (P.263)
    - Phonebook (P.97)
    - Text memo (P.275)
    - Schedule (P.270)
    - Received mail, sent/saved mail (P.208)
    - Bookmark (P.165)
    - ToruCa (P.240)
  - 3 Select data and press .
- The contents of the selected data are displayed.

# Folder Setup of the “Memory Stick Duo”

## When displaying the folders on a PC

When you copy data of the FOMA terminal to the “Memory Stick Duo”, a corresponding folder is created automatically. “Memory Stick Duo”



- 1 A “\*.VBM” file received via data communications is also processed as a bookmark file.
  - 2 If there is a file with the same name, a serial number is added to the end of the file name.
- The numbers “100” to “999” are assigned to “nnn” from the smallest available number in the order in which the folder was created.
  - The numbers “0001” to “9999” are assigned to “nnnn” from smallest available number in the order in which the file was created.
  - If you change or delete a folder name on your PC, the data in the “Memory Stick Duo” may not be displayed correctly.
  - When saving files in the “Memory Stick Duo”, a file name can be recognized up to 255 bytes in length including the drive name and its path name.
  - If you edit data in the “Memory Stick Duo”, a file with the file name “\$SO902IWP + ” may be created. If there is a file with the same name in the same folder, the older file is overwritten.

## Estimated maximum number of files you can save in the “Memory Stick Duo”

The number of files that you can save varies depending on the capacity of the “Memory Stick Duo” to be used. It also varies depending on the size of each file.

File		Folder	Maximum number of files that can be saved		
			16MB	32MB	
Still image	JPEG image (DCF standard)	DCIM	About 984 images (P.129)	About 1,976 images (P.129)	
	JPEG image (Non-DCF standard), GIF image	STILL	983	1,975	
Movie/i-motion		MOVIE	983	1,975	
Melody		RINGER	983	1,975	
Mail	Sent/Saved mail	MESSAGE	OUTBOX	982	1,974
			SAVEBOX	981	1,973
	Received mail	INBOX	982	1,974	
Phonebook		NAMECARD	983	1,975	
Text memo		MEMO	983	1,975	
Schedule		CALENDAR	983	1,975	
Bookmark		BOOKMARK	983	1,975	
PDF data		Document	491	987	
ToruCa		ToruCa	983	1,975	

- The number of files that can be saved is the estimated value for the blank “Memory Stick Duo”.
- You can check the used amount of the “Memory Stick Duo” on the Function menu [M.S.Duo info].

## Data That Can Be Written/Read to and from the “Memory Stick Duo”

- It may take time to save data depending on the data size.
- Data saved from the “Memory Stick Duo” may not be displayed/played back properly.
- You cannot copy/move a file prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

Category	Data you can/cannot save from the FOMA terminal			Data you can/cannot save from the “Memory Stick Duo”			Data you cannot save from the FOMA terminal and other information	Data you cannot save from the “Memory Stick Duo” and other information
	One file	Selected files	All files	One file	Selected files	All files		
Phonebook		x			x	x	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save the Designated Character, Des phone tone, Des mail tone, Select phone illum., and Select mail illum.</li> <li>• When you use Save one, you cannot save a Group number, Group name, and the data of the PushTalk phonebook. To save data using Save one, set the Secret to [OFF].</li> <li>• When you use Save all, the Own number is saved as the first data in the list. You cannot save the Call image if the Save image to M.S. is set to [OFF].</li> <li>• You cannot copy the UIM phonebook.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The first data in the list is saved as the Own number.</li> <li>• Data is saved in a memory space from the one with the smallest vacant memory number.</li> <li>• You cannot save a GIF/JPEG image exceeding 100 bytes.</li> <li>• You cannot save a GIF/JPEG image exceeding [Stby(320 x 240)].</li> </ul>
Text memo		x			x	x	-	-
Schedule		x			x	x	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To save data using Save one, set the Secret to [OFF].</li> </ul>	-
Received mail Sent/saved mail		x			x	x	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save a folder name, ToruCa card attachment, and i-appli To link.</li> <li>• Mail with a still image attachment exceeding 10,000 bytes is saved after the attachment is deleted.</li> <li>• Protected mail is saved as regular mail.</li> <li>• i-appli mail is saved as regular mail.</li> <li>• SMS delivery report mail cannot be saved.</li> </ul>	-
Bookmark		x			x	x	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save a folder name.</li> </ul>	-
ToruCa		x			x	x	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A ToruCa card is saved as it is before obtaining the ToruCa(detail) card.</li> <li>• You may not be able to save some ToruCa cards obtained using i-mode or i-appli software because of large data size.</li> <li>• A protected ToruCa card is saved as a regular ToruCa card.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save a ToruCa and ToruCa(detail) card exceeding 1,024 bytes and 100K bytes respectively.</li> </ul>
Melody							-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save a melody exceeding 200K bytes.</li> </ul>
My picture							<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save a frame image, stamp image, and Flash movie.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save a GIF and JPEG image exceeding 500K bytes and 1,235K bytes respectively.</li> <li>• You cannot save a GIF image and an i-anime exceeding [VGA(640 x 480)] and [Stby(320 x 240)] respectively, and some JPEG images.</li> </ul>
i-motion							<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save a movie/i-motion with playback restriction.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save a movie/i-motion exceeding 500K bytes.</li> </ul>
My document							<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save PDF data obtained by page.</li> <li>• The document definition file is saved together with PDF data.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save PDF data exceeding 2M bytes.</li> </ul>

When you copy a Phonebook entry, text memo, schedule, received mail, sent/saved mail, bookmark, and a ToruCa card from the “Memory Stick Duo” to the FOMA terminal, they are saved as a file formatted for the “Memory Stick Duo”. Multiple data records of above categories may be contained in a file of the “Memory Stick Duo”.

## Copying/Moving Data from the FOMA Terminal to the “Memory Stick Duo”

You can copy the FOMA terminal phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, mail, Bookmark, ToruCa card, melody, image, movie/i-motion, and PDF data from the FOMA terminal to the “Memory Stick Duo”. For a melody, image, movie/i-motion, and PDF data, you can also move them to the “Memory Stick Duo”.

- While you copy/move the Phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, mail, Bookmark, and ToruCa card data, you cannot use call or communication functions, such as placing/receiving a call and using i-mode and data communications, because the FOMA terminal is placed in the same condition as outside of the service area.

Example: Copying data

### 1 Select data and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

#### To copy several data

From the Function menu, select [Save to M.S.] [Select&save] and select data. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

#### To copy all data

From the Function menu, select [Save to M.S.] [Save all] [Yes].

#### To move data

From the Function menu, select [Move] [Move one] [Memory Stick].

#### To move several data

From the Function menu, select [Move] [Select&move] [Memory Stick] and select data. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

#### To move all data

From the Function menu, select [Move] [Move all] [Memory Stick].

### 2 Select [Save to M.S.] [Save one] [Yes] and press .

The selected data is copied.

## Copying/Moving Data from the “Memory Stick Duo” to the FOMA Terminal

You can copy the Phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, mail, Bookmark, ToruCa card, melody, image, movie/i-motion, and PDF data saved in the “Memory Stick Duo” to the FOMA terminal. For a melody, image, movie/i-motion, and PDF data, you can also move them to the FOMA terminal.

The copied/moved data is saved in the [Data transfer] folder of the respective category.

### Saving the Phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, Mail, Bookmark, or ToruCa Card Data

- While you save the Phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, mail, Bookmark, and ToruCa card data, you cannot use call or communication functions, such as placing/receiving a call and using i-mode and data communications, because the FOMA terminal is placed in the same condition as outside of the service area.

Example: Saving the data by adding to the existing data

### 1 From the Memory Stick category list, select a category and press .

### 2 Select data and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 3 Select [Save to main] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

### 4 Enter the Security code and press (OK).



[Add]:

Save the copied data by adding to the existing data.

[Overwrite]:

Save the copied data by overwriting the existing data. The screen for confirming whether to delete the existing data appears.

### 5 Select [Add] and press .

The selected data is copied.

### Saving a Melody, Still Image, i-motion, or PDF Data

Example: Copying data

### 1 From the Memory Stick category list, select a category and press .

### 2 Select data and press .

The Function menu appears.

#### To save several data

From the Function menu, select [Save to main] [Select&save] and select data. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

#### To save all data

From the Function menu, select [Save to main] [Save all] [Yes].

#### To move data

From the Function menu, select [Move to main] [Move one].

#### To move several data

From the Function menu, select [Move to main] [Select&move] and select data. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

#### To move all data

From the Function menu, select [Move to main] [Move all].

### 3 Select [Save to main] [Save one] [Yes] and press .

The selected data is copied.

Data created on a Memory Stick Duo compatible device other than SO902WP+ may not be copied/moved correctly.

When the data to be copied/moved exceeds the maximum number of data items that can be copied/moved to the FOMA terminal, only the data items within this number are copied/moved. The remaining data items are not copied/moved. The number of data items that can be copied/moved varies depending on the free space available on the FOMA terminal.

## Managing the “Memory Stick Duo”

### Formatting the “Memory Stick Duo”

You can format the “Memory Stick Duo” to be used with the FOMA terminal.

- If you format the “Memory Stick Duo” that contains written data, the data is deleted. Be careful not to delete important data unintentionally when you start formatting.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Memory Stick category list.  
The Function menu appears.
- 2 Select [Format] and press .  
The Security code screen appears.
- 3 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).
- 4 Select [Yes] and press .  
The “Memory Stick Duo” is formatted.

### Checking the Use Status of the “Memory Stick Duo”

- The displayed data amount and total capacity of the “Memory Stick Duo” are estimated values and may not be accurate.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Memory Stick category list.  
The Function menu appears.
- 2 Select [M.S.Duo info] and press .

Memory Stick info	
(Unit:KB)	
Full cap.	15,776
Using	9,045
My pict.	2,535
i-motion	1,555
Melody	685
My doc.	1,933

#### To change the unit

Press  (Unit chg) to switch temporarily between the KB and MB displays.

## Copying Data from the FOMA Terminal to the UIM

You can copy up to 50 FOMA terminal phonebook entries and up to 20 SMS from the FOMA terminal to the UIM (FOMA card).

- Only the “name”, “reading”, “first phone number”, and “first mail address” can be copied from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the UIM phonebook. The reading is converted from half-width katakana characters to full-width katakana characters. If “+” is included in a phone number, it is deleted.
- If a group with the same name exists in the UIM phonebook, data is saved in it and if not, data is saved in group .
- SMS report mail cannot be copied.

Example: Copying data from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the UIM phonebook

- 1 From the FOMA terminal phonebook, select data and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

#### To copy several data

From the Function menu, select [Copy to UIM] [Select&copy] and select data. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

#### To copy all data

From the Function menu, select [Copy to UIM] [Copy all] [Yes] and enter the Security code.

#### To copy SMS

Move the cursor to the mail in the mail list and from the Function menu, select [Copy to UIM] [Yes].

- 2 Select [Copy to UIM] [Copy one] [Yes] and press .

The selected data is copied.

## Copying Data from the UIM to the FOMA Terminal

You can copy UIM (FOMA card) phonebook data and SMS from the UIM to the FOMA terminal.

- When you copy UIM phonebook data to the FOMA terminal phonebook, the reading is converted from full-width katakana characters to half-width katakana characters.
- If a group with the same name exists in the FOMA terminal phonebook, data is saved in it and if not, data is saved in group .

Example: Copying data from the UIM phonebook to the FOMA terminal phonebook

- 1 From the UIM phonebook, select data and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

#### To copy several data

From the Function menu, select [Copy to Main] [Select&copy] and select data. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

#### To copy all data

From the Function menu, select [Copy to Main] [Copy all] [Yes] and enter the Security code.

#### To copy SMS

Move the cursor to the mail in the mail list and from the Function menu, select [Copy to Main] [Yes] a folder.

- 2 Select [Copy to Main] [Copy one] [Yes] and press .

The selected data is copied.

# Managing Data Box

Data handled by the FOMA terminal, such as downloaded data and data recorded using the camera, are saved in the categories of the Data box: My picture, i-motion, Melody, Chara-den, and My document. You can play back saved data any time.

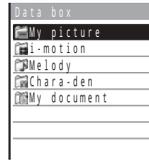
- You may not be able to operate some categories.

## Data saved in the Data box

Category	Folder name	Contents of data
My picture	i-mode	Images obtained from a site, i-mode mail, or i-appli
	Camera	Images recorded using the camera of the FOMA terminal
	Deco mail image	Images that can be used when you compose Deco-mail
	Preinstall	Preinstalled images
	Data transfer	Images scanned by the bar code reader, images moved/copied from the "Memory Stick Duo", images received using infrared communications, and images retrieved from a PC, etc.
i-motion	i-mode	Movie obtained from a site, i-mode mail, or i-appli
	Camera	Movie recorded using the camera of the FOMA terminal
	Preinstall	Preinstalled movie
	Data transfer	Movie moved/copied from the "Memory Stick Duo", movie received using infrared communications, and movie retrieved from a PC, etc.
Melody	i-mode	Melodies obtained from a site, i-mode mail, or i-appli
	Preinstall	Preinstalled melodies
	Data transfer	Melodies scanned by the bar code reader, melodies moved/copied from the "Memory Stick Duo", melodies received using infrared communications, and melodies retrieved from a PC, etc.
Chara-den	-	Preinstalled Chara-den files, Chara-den files downloaded from a site
My document	i-mode	PDF data obtained from a site
	Preinstall	Preinstalled PDF data
	Data transfer	PDF data moved/copied from the "Memory Stick Duo" and PDF data received using infrared communications

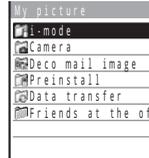
Example: Displaying the file list in the [Preinstall] folder in My picture

- 1 Press **▲** (**⏏**) in the stand-by display.



To display data in the "Memory Stick Duo"  
Press **⏏** (To M.S.).

- 2 Select [My picture] and press **⏏**.



My picture folder list appears.

- The following icons show the status of a folder. The folder name is displayed next to the icon.

	Preset folder
	i-mode
	Camera
	Deco mail image
	Preinstall
	Data transfer
	User-created folder

- 3 Select [Preinstall] and press **⏏**.



Management title

The file list appears.

To display the saved date/time

Press **⏏** to switch the display temporarily between the management title and saved date/time.

## Adding/Deleting Folders

You can create or delete a folder for saving data. You can add up to 10 folders by category. You can also change the name of a folder.

- You cannot delete the [i-mode], [Camera], [Preinstall], [Deco mail img], and [Data transfer] folders and cannot change their names.

### 1 Press (Func) in the category folder list.

The Function menu appears.

#### To change a folder name

Move the cursor to the folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] [Edit folder name]. Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.

#### To delete a folder

Move the cursor to the folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] [Delete folder], enter the Security code, and select [Yes]. To delete several folders, from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] [Select&delete], enter the Security code, and select folders. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes]. To delete all folders, from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### 2 Select [Edit folder] [Create folder], press , and enter a folder name.

Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters. The folder is added.

## Moving Data to a Different Folder

You can move a data item to another folder or the "Memory Stick Duo" using three methods.

- You cannot move preinstalled data and Chara-den files.

### 1 From the Data box, select a category a folder and press .

#### To move several data

From the Function menu, select [Move] [Select&move] a place to move to and select data. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes] a folder.

#### To move all data in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Move] [Move all] a place to move to a folder.

### 2 Select data and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 3 Select [Move] [Move one] and press .

The screen for selecting where to move appears.

#### [Main memory]:

Move data to a folder in the FOMA terminal.

#### [Memory Stick]:

Move data to a folder in the "Memory Stick Duo".

#### [Back to origin]:

Restore data to its original folder.

### 4 Select [Main memory] a folder and press .

The selected data is moved to the selected folder.

## Deleting Data

You can delete data using three methods.

- You cannot delete preinstalled data other than Chara-den files.

### 1 From the Data box, select a category a folder and press .

#### To delete all data in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

#### To delete several data

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete] and select data. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

### 2 Select data and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 3 Select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes] and press .

The selected data is deleted.

## Sorting Data

Data in a folder can be sorted for display temporarily.

### 1 From the Data box, select a category a folder, press , and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Sort] a sorting order and press .

#### [Title]:

Sort data by the management title in Japanese alphabetical order.

#### [Date]:

Sort data from newest to oldest saved date.

#### [Size]:

Sort data in decreasing order of file size, the largest file first.

#### [Originated(icon)]:

Sort data according to the source from where it was obtained, in the order of "Preinstall" "i-mode" "Camera" "Data transfer" folders.

The data is listed in the selected order.

## Setting How to Display a List of Images

You can select the display style of My picture and i-motion file list using the following three methods. The set display style is applied to all folders.



- From the Data box, select a category a folder, press , and press (Func).  
The Function menu appears.
- Select [Change display] the display style and press .  
The display style of a file list is set.

## Displaying the Data Box/Data Information

### Displaying the Data Box Information

- Press (Property) in the Data box.

Data box info	
(Unit:KB)	
Full cap.	25,310
Using	13,178
My picture	7,473
i-motion	4,638
Melody	80
Chara-den	45

**To change the unit**  
Press (Unit chg) to switch temporarily between the KB and MB displays.

### Displaying Information of Folders in Data Box

- From the Data box, select a category, press , and press (Func).  
The Function menu appears.
- Select [Folder info] and press .

My picture info	
(Unit:KB)	
Remaining	17,016
Using	7,473
Registerable	1000
Registered	32

**To change the unit**  
Press (Unit chg) to switch temporarily between the KB and MB displays.

## Displaying/Editing Data Information

You can change the data management title and file name, and set file restrictions. The management title is displayed in the file list.

- You cannot edit the detailed information of preinstalled data.

- From the Data box, select a category a folder and press . Select a data item and press (Detail).

Detail info	
[Management title]	Sasha of the next do
[File name]	20060812091836
[File format]	JPEG
[Restriction]	Not restricted

The detailed information of data appears.

- Press (Edit).

Edit file info	
Management title	Sasha of the next do
File name	20060812091836
Restriction	No

- Enter a title at [Management title].

Enter a title within 18 full-width or 36 half-width characters.

**To reset the management title**

Press (Rset Tit).

- You can reset the management title only of the data that has an original title to be displayed.

- Enter a file name at [File name].

Enter a file name within 36 half-width alphanumeric characters.

- You cannot use half-width symbols " \* / : < > ? ¥ | . You cannot enter "." at the beginning of a file name.

- Select [Yes]/[No] at [Restriction].

[Yes]:

Set file restriction. Once you send the file as a mail attachment, it cannot be sent or forwarded from the recipient's FOMA terminal.

[No]:

Do not set file restriction.

- Press (Complete).

## List of display items and items that can be edited

: Can be edited    : Display only    - : Not displayed

Display item	My picture			Movie/ i-motion	Melody	Chara-den	My document	Description
	JPEG image	GIF image	Flash movie					
Management title								Title to be displayed on the FOMA terminal
File name								Name of file to be displayed when the mail has a data attachment.
Original title	-	-	-				-	Original title
File format							-	File type
Restriction								Whether the file can be sent or forwarded from the recipient's FOMA terminal when it is sent as a mail attachment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You may not be able to change the restriction for an i-motion and melody obtained from a site, etc.</li> <li>You cannot change the restriction for a frame image and stamp image.</li> </ul>
Size			-		-		-	Data display size <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This item is not displayed for i-motion with sound track only (i-motion such as a singer's voice without video track).</li> </ul>
File size								Data file size
Mail attach size		-	-	-	-	-	-	File size of an Exif-format file excluding the size of its thumbnail
Transf. for repair				-			-	Whether your data can be transferred to a new FOMA terminal at our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.) when the FOMA terminal is replaced due to a trouble or some other reason. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Please note that DoCoMo shall not be liable if your data cannot be transferred or if the data is lost or altered.</li> </ul>
Replay restriction	-	-	-		-		-	Playback restriction Restriction of the number of times: "(YY) times left (YY/XX)" (YY: Remaining number of times to play back, XX: Total number of times to play back) Expiry date for playback: "Until the expiry date/time" Term limitation on playback: "From the date/time that you can start playback to the expiry date/time"
Ring tone	-	-	-		-		-	Whether setting as the ring tone is available
Receive display	-	-	-		-		-	Whether setting as the receive display is available
Creator	-	-	-		-		-	Author information of a file
Copyright	-	-	-		-		-	Copyright information of a file
Description	-	-	-		-		-	Description of a file
Video	-	-	-		-		-	Yes/No (with/without video track)/Not supported
Audio	-	-	-		-		-	Audio format/No (without sound track)/Not supported
Text	-	-	-		-		-	Yes/No (with/without text track)
Originated								Source from where the file is obtained
Download date								Date on which the file was saved
Create date			-					Date on which the file was created
Record time	-	-	-		-		-	Recording time
Setting								Type of stand-by display or ring tone currently set
D.T.Original		-	-	-	-		-	Date on which the image was recorded
D.T.Digitized		-	-	-	-		-	Date on which the image was edited
AE		-	-	-	-		-	The value that indicates the amount of light passing through a lens (F4/F2.8).
Shutter speed		-	-	-	-		-	Period during which light is stored in CMOS
EV		-	-	-	-		-	EV correction
ISO		-	-	-	-		-	The value that indicates the level of sensitivity to light (equivalent to the ISO sensitivity of a film).
Photometry		-	-	-	-		-	Photometry mode

This item is not displayed for a preinstalled image.

- When there is no information for the displayed item, "unknown" or a blank is indicated.
- Even if " : Can be edited" is indicated for an item in the above table, you may not be able to change some of the data.
- Regardless of the file restriction setting, you can use mail attachment or data transfer to send a still image/movie recorded using the FOMA terminal and an image, movie/i-motion, or melody obtained via data transfer or from the "Memory Stick Duo".
- Detailed information of data saved in the "Memory Stick Duo" may be different from the information displayed on the FOMA terminal.

## Checking the Memory of the FOMA Terminal

You can display the memory use status of the FOMA terminal. You can also check the volume used up by the category-specific Data box and i-appli memories.

- The displayed data amount is an estimated value and not accurate.

- From the Menu, select [Settings] [Management] [Storage info] and press **[OK]**.

Storage information	
(Unit:KB)	
Full cap.	30,720
Using	14,289
My picture 7,473	
i-motion 4,638	
Melody 80	
Chara-den 45	

### To change the unit

Press **[F2]** (Unit chg) to switch temporarily between the KB and MB displays.

- Select an item and press **[OK]**.

My picture info	
(Unit:KB)	
Remaining	17,016
Using	7,473
0% 50% 100%	
Registerable	1000
Registered	32

Preinstalled data other than i-appli is not included in the data amount.

## In Case of Insufficient Memory

If there is not enough memory when you save or download data or software in My picture, i-motion, melody, Chara-den, My document of the Data box, or i-appli, select and delete data that is no longer required from the same category, allocate the save area, and then save the new data/software.

Example: When there is not enough memory while downloading software

- Download the software.

The screen informing memory shortage appears.

### [Slct delete data]:

Delete unnecessary software and continue to download the software.

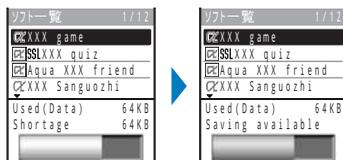
### [Cancel]:

Cancel downloading.

- Select [Slct delete data] and press **[OK]**.

i-appli 12/24	
ソフトウェア一覧	
Downloaded software	
Used(Folder)	320KB
Shortage	64KB

- Select a folder software and press **[OK]**.



### To cancel the selection

Press **[Rel.]**.

- Press **[Del]** (Delete), select [Yes], and press **[OK]**.

The selected software is deleted and then downloading starts.

If you delete preinstalled Chara-den files, it does not help you increase the save area.

## What is the Infrared Communications?

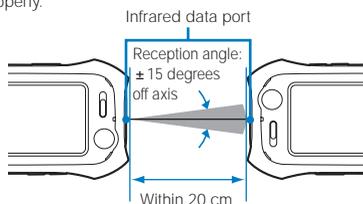
You can send and receive the Phonebook, Schedule, Text memo, Bookmark, mail, image, movie, melody, PDF data, and ToruCa card to/from a mobile phone equipped with the infrared communications function. To send/receive all entries, you need a 4-digit authentication password preset with a communication target recipient/sender.

The FOMA terminal can also do much more in conjunction with other devices equipped with the infrared communications function by using the infrared communications feature of i-appli.

- There are some data that cannot be exchanged even if the other device is equipped with the infrared communications function.
- The infrared communications of the FOMA terminal follows IrMC version 1.1. Even if the other device follows IrMC version 1.1, there may be data that cannot be exchanged properly depending on the software.
- You cannot use infrared communications or the infrared remote control during a call or i-mode/packet/64K data communications, or when the Lock all, PIM lock, Self mode, or Lock key is set.
- Phone call, i-mode, data exchange, etc. are not available during the infrared communications because the FOMA terminal is in the similar state as outside of the service area.

## Using the Infrared Communications

- The FOMA terminal and the other device can be used within 20 cm apart. The infrared data port must be kept pointed at the other device until the data exchange ends.
- If used under direct sunlight, fluorescent lamp or near other infrared devices, the infrared data exchange may not function properly.



## Data That Can Be Sent/Received via Infrared Communications

You can send and receive your Own number, Phonebook, Schedule, Text memo, Bookmark, mail, image, movie, melody, PDF data, and ToruCa card between mobile phones and other devices equipped with the infrared communications function.

- It may take time to exchange or save data depending on the data size.
- When the received data exceeds the maximum number of data items that can be saved in the FOMA terminal, only the maximum number of data items is saved. The remaining data items are not saved. However, when you use Save one to save received mail, the unprotected received mail is overwritten from the oldest.
- Data received using the infrared communications may not be displayed/played back properly.

Type of data	Reception		Transmission		Storage for received data	Items that cannot be sent/received, etc.
	One item	All items	One item	All items		
Own number	×	-		-	FOMA terminal phonebook 1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot send/receive Additional No. 1 and No. 2, and images.</li> <li>• Data is sent by setting the Secret to [OFF].</li> <li>• When you send/receive all data, the Own number (excluding your phone number) is also included in the sent/received data.</li> </ul>
FOMA terminal phonebook					FOMA terminal phonebook 1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot send/receive a Call image, Chara-den, Des phone tone, Des mail tone, Select phone Illum., and Select mail Illum.</li> <li>• When you send/receive one data item, the group number, group name, memory number, and the data of the PushTalk phonebook are not sent/received. Data is sent by setting the Secret to [OFF].</li> <li>• If you select [Overwrite] when you receive all data, the first Phonebook entry is received as the Own number.</li> </ul>
UIM phonebook			×	×	FOMA terminal phonebook 1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you receive the data, it is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.</li> <li>• When you receive one data item, the group name is not transmitted.</li> </ul>
Schedule					Schedule 2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot send ON/OFF of the holiday setting for a repeated schedule.</li> <li>• When you send/receive one data item, the data is sent/received by setting the Secret to [OFF].</li> </ul>
Text memo					Text memo 3	-
Bookmark					Bookmark 4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot send/receive a folder name.</li> </ul>
Mail	Received				[Inbox] 5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot send/receive a folder name, ToruCa card attachment, and i-appli To link.</li> <li>• Mail with a still image attachment exceeding 10,000 bytes is sent/received after the attachment is deleted.</li> <li>• Protected mail is sent/received as regular mail.</li> <li>• i-appli mail is sent/received as regular mail.</li> <li>• SMS delivery report mail cannot be sent/received.</li> </ul>
	Sent				[Outbox] 5	
	Saved				[Draft] 5	
JPEG/GIF image		×		×	[Data transfer] folder in My picture 4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot receive a GIF and JPEG image exceeding 500K bytes and 1,235K bytes respectively.</li> <li>• You cannot receive a GIF image and an i-anime exceeding [VGA(640 × 480)] and [Stby(320 × 240)] respectively, and some JPEG images.</li> <li>• You cannot send/receive a frame image, stamp image, and Flash movie.</li> </ul>
Movie/i-motion		×		×	[Data transfer] folder in i-motion 4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot receive a movie/i-motion exceeding 500K bytes and that with playback restriction.</li> </ul>
Melody		×		×	[Data transfer] folder in Melody 4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot receive a melody exceeding 200K bytes.</li> </ul>
PDF data		×		×	[Data transfer] folder in My document 4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot receive PDF data exceeding 2M bytes.</li> <li>• You cannot send/receive PDF data that you obtained by page or failed to obtain.</li> <li>• The document definition file is sent/received together with PDF data.</li> </ul>
ToruCa					[ToruCa] folder in ToruCa 4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot receive a ToruCa and ToruCa(detail) card exceeding 1,024 bytes and 100K bytes respectively.</li> <li>• A ToruCa card is sent as it is before obtaining the ToruCa(detail) card. However, the recipient can obtain the ToruCa(detail) card, if necessary.</li> <li>• You may not be able to send some ToruCa cards obtained using i-mode or i-appli software because of large data size.</li> <li>• A protected ToruCa card is sent/received as a regular ToruCa card.</li> </ul>

- When you send/receive bookmark or mail data, the folder allocation setting may not be applied depending on the terminal model of a caller/recipient.
- You cannot send/receive a file prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

- 1 Saved in a memory space with the smallest vacant memory number.
- 2 Saved in the order of date and time when they start.
- 3 Saved in the order of date and time when they were created.
- 4 Saved at the top of the list.
- 5 Saved in the order of date and time when they were received/sent/saved.

# Receiving Data Using the Infrared Communications

## Receiving Data

**1** From the Menu, select [Tools] [Rcv Ir Data] [Receive] and press .  
“” changes to “” and the screen for confirming whether to begin the infrared communications appears.

**2** Select [Yes] and press .  
The infrared communications is started and data exchange is started.  
The screen for confirming whether to save data appears.

**3** Select [Yes] and press .  
**When you receive Phonebook data**  
The screen for confirming whether to save data in the PushTalk phonebook appears. If you select [Yes], the data is saved in both the PushTalk and FOMA terminal phonebooks. If you select [No], the data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook only. When there are several phone numbers, select the phone number to be saved in the PushTalk phonebook.

## Receiving All Data

• It is necessary that you and the sender determine the 4-digit authentication password beforehand.

Example: Adding received data

**1** From the Menu, select [Tools] [Rcv Ir Data] [Receive all] and press .  
“” changes to “”.



[Add]:  
Save received data by adding to the existing data.  
[Overwrite]:  
Save received data by overwriting the existing data. The screen for confirming whether to delete the existing data appears. Note that all existing data is deleted.

**2** Select [Add] and press .  
The Security code screen appears.

**3** Enter the Security code and press (OK).  
The Authentication password screen appears.

**4** Enter the authentication password.  
The screen for confirming whether to begin the infrared communications appears.

**5** Select [Yes] and press .  
The infrared communications is started. Data exchange is started and the data is added to the existing data.

**To cancel receiving**  
Press (Cancel).

# Sending Data Using the Infrared Communications

## Sending Data

**1** Select data to be sent and press (Func).  
The Function menu appears.

**2** Select [Send Ir data] and press .  
“” changes to “” and the screen for confirming whether to begin the infrared communications appears.

**To send one entry in the Phonebook/Text memo**  
Move the cursor to the data and from the Function menu, select [Send Ir data] [Send Ir data].

**3** Select [Yes] and press .  
The infrared communications is started and data exchange is started.

## Sending All Data

• It is necessary that you and the receiver determine the 4-digit authentication password beforehand.

**1** Press (Func) in the folder list of data to be sent.  
The Function menu appears.

**2** Select [Send all Ir data] and press .  
“” changes to “” and the Security code screen appears.  
**To send all entries in the Phonebook/Text memo**  
In the data list, from the Function menu, select [Send Ir data] [Send all Ir data].

**To send all entries in the Schedule**  
In the calendar display, from the Function menu, select [Send all Ir data].

**3** Enter the Security code and press (OK).  
The Authentication password screen appears.

**4** Enter the authentication password.  
The screen for confirming whether to begin the infrared communications appears.

**5** Select [Yes] and press .  
The infrared communications is started and data exchange is started.  
**To cancel sending**  
Press (Cancel).

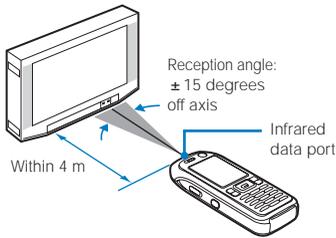
## Using the Infrared Remote Control

Once infrared remote control software is downloaded from a site and saved in the FOMA terminal, the FOMA terminal can be used as the TV or VCR remote control.

- To use the infrared remote control, it is necessary to download the software corresponding to the target equipment. Even if the corresponding software is used, some equipment may not be operated.
- The infrared remote control key operations vary depending on the software.

### Remote control operation

When using this function, point the FOMA terminal's infrared data port at the remote control receiver of the TV or VCR and operate the FOMA terminal within 4 m remote control range. Note that communication may be affected by the target equipment or ambient brightness.



## Displaying PDF Data

You can display PDF data saved in My document of the Data box of the FOMA terminal or the "Memory Stick Duo". You can also download PDF-compatible data from a site to the FOMA terminal and display/save it.

- It may take time to display some PDF data. Note also that PDF data written in a format incompatible with the PDF-compatible viewer or containing a complicated design may not be displayed correctly.
- When you obtain PDF data on separate pages, you can get all the pages by selecting, from the Function menu, [Download all] [Yes] in the PDF data display.
- To display PDF data protected with a password, you need to enter the password.

**1** Press **[▲]** (**[□]**) in the stand-by display, select [My document], and press **[OK]**.

My document folder list appears.

**2** Select a folder and press **[OK]**.



My document file list appears.

- The title line shows the folder name and the figures at the right end of the title line show the order of the PDF data at the cursor/the total number of PDF data in the folder.
- The following icons show the type of PDF data and the source from where the PDF data was obtained.

### Type

Icon	Type
	PDF data retrieved all pages
	PDF data retrieved in pages
	PDF data that you could not retrieve

- appears on the upper right of the icon for PDF data prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

### Source

Icon	Source
	Preinstalled PDF data
	PDF data retrieved from a site
	PDF data moved/copied from the "Memory Stick Duo" and received using infrared communications

**3** Select PDF data and press **[OK]**.



### Operating method

Operation	Key operation
Display the data in original size or by adjusting the page width to the display size	Press <b>[Fit/Tr img]</b> .
Scroll	Press <b>[▲]</b> / <b>[▼]</b> / <b>[◀]</b> / <b>[▶]</b> .
Zoom in	Press <b>[Zoom In]</b> .
Zoom out	Press <b>[Zoom Out]</b> .
Move to previous page	Press <b>[Previous]</b> or <b>[Left]</b> .
Move to the specified page	Press <b>[Page No.]</b> , enter a page number, and press <b>[OK]</b> .
Move to next page	Press <b>[Next]</b> or <b>[Right]</b> .
Rotate counterclockwise by 90 degrees	Press <b>[Rotate]</b> .
Rotate clockwise by 90 degrees	Press <b>[Rotate]</b> .
Turn on/off the enlargement rate/number of pages display	Press <b>[Zoom]</b> .
Turn on/off the scrollbar display	Press <b>[Scrollbar]</b> .
Display key assignment list	Press <b>[Help]</b> (Help).

### To change the page layout

From the Function menu, select [Page layout] [Single page]/[Continuous-facing].

### To move to the first/last page

From the Function menu, select [Move page] [First page]/[Last page].

### To use a link

From the Function menu, select [Display link].

- You can use a link set in PDF data to use the Phone To, Mail To, and Web To functions and move to other page within the PDF data.

### To display the detailed information

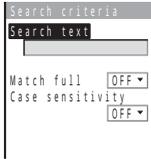
From the Function menu, select [Property].

### To save PDF data

From the Function menu, select [Save] a place to save to.

## Searching a Character String of PDF Data

- 1 Press **[F5]** (Search) in the PDF data display.



[Search text]:

Enter a character string you want to search for.

[Match full]:

Set whether to search for an exact character string match.

[Case sensitivity]:

Set whether to distinguish uppercase and lowercase characters.

- 2 Enter a character string at [Search text].

Enter a character string within eight full-width or 16 half-width characters.

- 3 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Match full].

- 4 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Case sensitivity].

- 5 Press **[F6]** (OK).

The searched character string is displayed in reverse video.

To display the previous/next search result

Press **[F4]** (Back) / **[F7]** (Next).

## Using a Bookmark/Mark

Once you save a bookmark or mark in pages that you use frequently, you can display the linked page by simply selecting the bookmark or mark. You can save a mark for the number of the currently displayed page and location in the page. Some PDF data is preset with bookmarks or marks.

- The two types of bookmarks that you can use are as follows.
  - Bookmark: Saved in PDF data in advance. You cannot change it.
  - i-mode bookmark: You can add/delete this bookmark.

## Adding an i-mode Bookmark/Mark

You can add up to 10 i-mode bookmarks and marks each.

Example: Adding an i-mode bookmark

- 1 In the PDF data display, display the page for which you want to add an i-mode bookmark and press **[F5]** (Func).

The Function menu appears.

To add a mark

From the Function menu, select [Mark] [Add mark]. "P" appears at the location where the mark is added.

- 2 Select [Bookmark] [Add i-mode bkmk] and press **[F6]**.

The i-mode bookmark is added.

The i-mode bookmarks/marks that you have added may be deleted if they are copied to a PC, etc. using infrared communications or the "Memory Stick Duo".

## Displaying the i-mode Bookmark/Mark List

Example: Displaying the i-mode bookmark list

- 1 Press **[F5]** (Func) in the PDF data display.

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Bookmark] [i-mode bkmk list] and press **[F6]**.

The list of i-mode bookmarks is displayed.

To display the list of marks

Select [Mark] [Mark list].

To check the title of a bookmark/i-mode bookmark

Press **[F6]** (Confirm).

To change the title of an i-mode bookmark

Move the cursor to the i-mode bookmark and from the Function menu, select [Edit title]. Enter a new title within 64 full-width or 128 half-width characters.

To delete an i-mode bookmark/mark

Move the cursor to the i-mode bookmark/mark and from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes]. To delete several i-mode bookmarks/marks, from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete] and select i-mode bookmarks/marks. Press **[F6]** (Complete) and select [Yes]. To delete all i-mode bookmarks/marks, from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 3 Select an i-mode bookmark and press **[F6]** (Disp).

The page set with the i-mode bookmark appears.

## Clipping a Still Image

You can clip a part of the currently displayed PDF data and save it as a JPEG image.

- You may not be able to clip an image of some PDF data.
- You cannot retrieve the image clip out of the FOMA terminal.

- 1 Press **[F5]** (Func) in the PDF data display.

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Capture screen] [Yes] and press **[F6]**.

- 3 Select a folder and press **[F6]**.

The image clip is saved in My picture of the Data box.

# Other Useful Functions

Multiaccess Feature .....	<Multiaccess>	266
Multitask Feature .....	<Multitask>	267
Starting the Alarm at a Specified Time .....	<Alarm>	268
Saving Schedules .....	<Schedule>	269
Performing Frequently Used Functions Quickly .....	<My Selection>	272
Recording Recipient's or Your Own Voice .....	<Voice memo>	272
Checking the Call Duration and Charge .....	<Call duration/cost>	273
Setting the Limit for Alert on the Total Call Charge .....	<Cost limit notice>	273
Using the Calculator .....	<Calculator>	274
Using a Memo .....	<Text memo>	274
Displaying the Settings of Various Functions .....	<Application>	275
Using EV-Link .....	<EV-Link>	275
Using the Switched Earphone Mic .....	<Switched earphone mic>	276
Receiving a Call Automatically with Earphone .....	<Auto answer>	277
Resetting to the Default Settings .....	<Reset>	277
Deleting All Saved Data .....	<Delete all data>	277
List of Reset Items .....		278

The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

## Multiaccess Feature

Multiaccess is a function that enables you to use a voice call, packet communications, and SMS functions at the same time.

- For multiaccess combinations, see P.313.

Voice call	1 line
i-mode, i-appli, i-mode mail, packet communications by connecting a PC, and PushTalk	1 line
SMS (Short Message)	1 line

Charge is required for the use of each communications line during multiaccess.

You cannot use multiaccess during a videophone call or 64K data communications, but you can receive SMS.

## Main Functions That Can Be Performed Using Multiaccess

### Starting Other Communications during a Voice Call

Example: Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

- Press (MENU) during a voice call.



**To perform packet communications using a connected PC**  
Establish connection for packet communications using PC operation (P.288).

- Select [i-mode] [i Menu] [メニューリスト] (Menu List) and press .

You can access i-mode while the call is being connected.

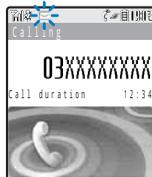
#### To send mail

Select [Mail] [Compose message] and compose mail and send it.

#### To switch the display

Press (MENU), press , and select a task icon.

### Receiving Mail during a Voice Call



You receive mail while the call is being connected.

If you receive i-mode mail, SMS, or Message R/F while you are talking on the phone, the ring tone, incoming indicator, and vibrator do not operate.

## Placing a Voice Call during i-mode/Packet Communications

Example: Placing a voice call during i-mode

- Press (MENU) during i-mode or packet communications and press .
- The menu display appears.

- Select " " (stand-by display) and press .



The stand-by display appears.

- Enter a phone number and press .



Place a voice call while you continue to use i-mode or packet communications.

#### To switch the display during a call

Press (MENU), press , and select a task icon.

When you place a videophone call while i-mode is being used, the i-mode connection is disconnected and your videophone call is placed.

## Receiving a Voice Call during i-mode/Packet Communications

- When you receive a call, press .



When you receive a voice call, the receive call display appears. You can answer a voice call while you continue to use i-mode or packet communications.

#### To switch the display during a call

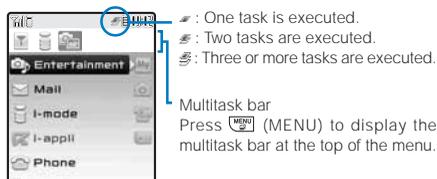
Press (MENU), press , and select a task icon.

## Multitask Feature

Multitask is a function that enables you to perform several functions at the same time, each of which you can access by switching the displays.

- For multitask combinations, see P.314.

### Using the Display during the Multitask Operation



#### Task icons

Icon	Function name	Icon	Function name
	Stand-by		Message
	Phone Phone number entry		i-appli
	PushTalk Dial PushTalk		Own number
	My Selection		Phonebook
	Camera/Viewer		Call record
	Movie/Viewer		PushTalk phonebook
	Memory Stick		Record message
	Mail		Bar code reader
	Mail box		ToruCa
	Compose message		IC card
	Compose SMS		Alarm setting
	Receive mail		Alarm
	Check new message		Schedule
	Receive SMS Check new SMS		Schedule alarm
	Mail setting		Text memo
	Mail/i-mode common setting		Calculator
	i-mode setting Settings Storage information Input method setting		Data box
	i-mode		NW Services
	i-Channel		

## Activating a New Function

- Press **MENU** (MENU) during the activation of a function.

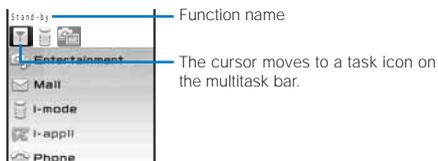


- From the Menu, select a new function and press **OK**.

## Switching Functions

While running multiple functions, you can switch to the display that provides access to the function you want to use.

- Press **MENU** (MENU) and press **▲**.



- Use **◀** **▶** to select a task icon and press **OK**.

The selected function display appears.

## Stopping All Functions Currently Activated

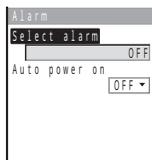
- Press **MENU** (MENU) and press **▲**.
- Press **EXIT** (Quit all).
- Select [Yes] and press **OK**.  
All functions currently activated are stopped.

When you execute multiple functions, you can press **EXIT** to quit the current function.

## Starting the Alarm at a Specified Time

The alarm is activated for about one minute at a specified time. You can set the alarm to be activated every day at the same time.

- From the Menu, select [Tools] [Alarm] and press .



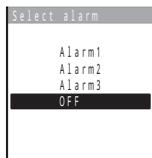
[Select alarm]:

Select one alarm you want to activate and set the details of its operation. You can set up to three alarms, but you can select and activate only one alarm.

[Auto power on]:

Set the operation of the alarm during power off.

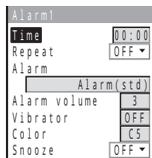
- Select [Select alarm] and press .



To disable the alarm

Select [OFF].

- Select an alarm to be activated and press .



- Enter a time to start the alarm at [Time].

Enter a time in 24-hour format.

- Select the repeat type at [Repeat].

[OFF]:

Do not repeat the alarm.

[Eyd]:

Repeat the alarm every day.

[Day]:

Repeat the alarm on the same day of the week. Select a day of the week and press  (OK).

- Select an alarm tone from Melody/i-motion of the Data box at [Alarm].

- You can set a melody in the SMF/MFI format from Melody and an i-motion with sound track only or with video and sound tracks of an image size of [sQCIF(128 x 96)]/[QCIF(176 x 144)] from i-motion. You may not be able to set some i-motion.

To mute the alarm tone

Select [Silent].

To check the alarm tone

Move the cursor to the alarm tone and press  (Play).

- Set the volume at [Alarm volume].

Select from [OFF] and [1 to 5].

To set the volume to [OFF]

Press  at level 1.

- Select a vibration type at [Vibrator].

[Pattern1]:

Set short intermittent vibration.

[Pattern2]:

Set long intermittent vibration.

[Link melody]:

Vibrates in accordance with the alarm tone. If you have set the alarm tone to [Silent] or to a melody that cannot be synchronized with the vibrator operation, the vibrator vibrates using [Pattern1].

[OFF]:

Do not set the vibrator.

To check the vibration

Move the cursor to the pattern and press  (Confirm).

- Select an indicator color at [Color].

Select from 12 indicator colors or [C13:ALL] (indicator flashes in 12 colors in sequence).

When you move the cursor, the indicator flashes accordingly.

- Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Snooze].

[ON]:

Repeat the alarm operation.

[OFF]:

Do not repeat the alarm operation.

- Press  (Complete).

The Alarm is set and \*\* appears in the stand-by display.

- Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Auto power on].

[ON]:

When the alarm time comes during power off, the FOMA terminal is automatically powered on and the alarm sounds.

[OFF]:

When the alarm time comes during power off, the alarm does not sound.

If you set the same time for the Alarm and Schedule alarm, the Schedule alarm has priority.

## At the Alarm Time

The alarm tone sounds for about one minute with the indicator flashing.



### To stop the alarm tone

Press any key.

### When you do not stop the alarm tone

The display informing the release of the alarm appears. To turn off the display, press **[Mute]** or **[Power]**.

### When [Snooze] is set to [ON]

After the alarm tone sounds for about one minute, the alarm tone is repeated every five minutes up to six times. To stop the Snooze, press **[Mute]**.

If you set an i-motion with video and sound tracks to the alarm tone, a movie in the i-motion is displayed.

If the alarm time comes during a voice call or PushTalk communications, the Alarm (std) sounds from the earpiece. The vibrator does not operate.

If the alarm time comes while performing any other function, the alarm may operate when the status changes to during a call or stand-by.

If another function is executed during the Snooze or Alarm operation, the alarm is stopped and the screen informing the release of the alarm appears.

When the PIN1 code setting and the Auto power on for the Alarm are set to [ON], the FOMA terminal is automatically powered on at the alarm time and the PIN1 code input screen appears after the Alarm operation. If you set any data for which the UIM operation restriction function is set to the alarm tone, the default melody sounds.

If you leave the FOMA terminal with the battery pack removed or fully expended for a long period of time, the date and time is reset, and the Alarm may not operate correctly.

## Saving Schedules

Up to 300 schedules, such as date and events/appointments can be saved for management. When a Schedule alarm is set, the FOMA terminal activates the alarm at the scheduled time.

- An entry is required at **[Event]**.

**1** From the Menu, select **[Tools]** **[Schedule]** and press **[Enter]**.

The calendar is displayed.

**2** Select a starting date and press **[Enter]** (Create).



The selected date is automatically entered.

### To change the starting date

Select **[Date]** and change the date. Enter from 2000/01/01 to 2050/12/31.

**3** Enter a starting time at **[Time]**.

Enter a time in 24-hour format.

### To set the schedule period to all day

Select [ON] at [All day]. When it is set to [All day], you cannot set the starting time, ending date, ending time, and alarm.

**4** Enter an ending date at **[Date]**.

Enter from the starting date to 2050/12/31.

**5** Enter an ending time at **[Time]**.

Enter a time in 24-hour format.

**6** Enter the event at **[Event]**.

Enter the event within 128 full-width or 256 half-width characters.

**7** Select a category icon at **[Icon]**.

**8** Enter an event outline at **[Outline]**.

Enter an outline within 20 full-width or 40 half-width characters.

**9** Select [ON]/[OFF] of the alarm at **[Alarm]**.

[ON]:

Sound the alarm tone. Select how many minutes before the starting time of schedule the alarm should sound. Select [00min.before] if you want to sound the alarm at the same time as the starting time.

[OFF]:

Do not sound the alarm tone.

**10** Select the schedule repeat type at **[Repeat]**.

[OFF]:

Do not repeat the schedule. Go to step 12.

[Eyd]:

Repeat the schedule every day.

[Week]:

Repeat the schedule on the same day of the week.

[Month]:

Repeat the schedule every month on the same day.

[Year]:

Repeat the schedule every year on the same day of the same month.

### When the schedule repeat type is set to other than [OFF]

Enter the repeat count within 01 to 99 times.

**11** Select [ON]/[OFF] of a holiday at **[Holiday]**.

[ON]:

The schedule repeats even on a holiday.

[OFF]:

The schedule does not repeat on a holiday, but it is included in the repeat count.

**12** Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Secret at **[Secret]**.

[ON]:

Save the schedule as Secret. Details of the schedule are masked with "\*" except for the time when you display the schedule and at the schedule alarm time.

[OFF]:

Do not save the schedule as Secret.

### To display the data saved as Secret

Set the Secret display to [ON].

**13** Press **[Enter]** (Complete).

The schedule is saved. When the Alarm is set to [ON], "Alarm" appears in the stand-by display.

The schedule dates are highlighted on the calendar.

If the schedule set for the 31st is set to the [Month] repeat type, the schedule is set for the last day of the month for months with less than 31 days. This is the same when the schedule set for the 29th of February in a leap year is set to the [Year] repeat type.

### At the Schedule Alarm Time

The alarm sounds for about 30 seconds with the indicator flashing and the schedule data is displayed.

If there are several overlapping schedules with the same start time of the alarm, the number of schedules you have in addition is shown as "XXX" on the upper right of the display.



**To stop the alarm tone**  
Press any key.

If you set an i-motion with video and sound tracks to the alarm tone, a movie in the i-motion is displayed.

When the FOMA terminal is powered off, the Schedule alarm is not activated.

If the alarm time comes during a voice call or PushTalk communications, the Alarm (std) sounds through the earpiece. The vibrator does not operate.

If the alarm time comes while performing any other function, the alarm may operate when the status changes to during a call or stand-by.

If you leave the FOMA terminal with the battery pack removed or fully expended for a long period of time, the date and time is reset, and the Schedule alarm may not operate correctly.

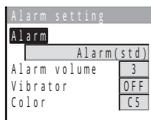
### Setting the Schedule Alarm Operations

You can set the details of the operations of the Schedule alarm.

**1** Press **[Func]** in the calendar.

The Function menu appears.

**2** Select **[Schedule setting]** **[Schedule alarm]** and press **[OK]**.



**3** Select an alarm tone from Melody/i-motion of the Data box at [Alarm].

- You can set a melody in the SMF/MFI format from Melody and an i-motion with sound track only or with video and sound tracks of an image size of [sQCIF(128 x 96)]/[QCIF(176 x 144)] from i-motion. You may not be able to set some i-motion.

**To mute the alarm tone**

Select [Silent].

**To check the alarm tone**

Move the cursor to the alarm tone and press **[Play]**.

**4** Set the volume at [Alarm volume].

Select from [OFF] and [1 to 5].

**To set the volume to [OFF]**

Press **[V]** at level 1.

**5** Select a vibration type at [Vibrator].

[Pattern1]:

Set short intermittent vibration.

[Pattern2]:

Set long intermittent vibration.

[Link melody]:

Vibrates in accordance with the alarm tone. If you have set the alarm tone to [Silent] or to a melody that cannot be synchronized with the vibrator operation, the vibrator vibrates using [Pattern1].

[OFF]:

Do not set the vibrator.

**To check the vibration**

Move the cursor to the pattern and press **[OK]** (Confirm).

**6** Select an indicator color at [Color].

Select from 12 indicator colors or [C13:ALL] (indicator flashes in 12 colors in sequence).

When you move the cursor, the indicator flashes accordingly.

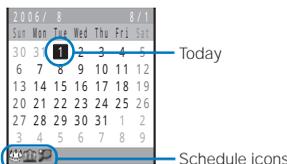
**7** Press **[Complete]**.

The Schedule alarm operations are set.

### Displaying the Schedule

The saved schedule can be checked using the calendar.

**1** From the Menu, select **[Tools]** **[Schedule]** and press **[OK]**.



The calendar is displayed.

- Press **[Next]** to display the calendar of the next month and **[Previous]** to display the calendar of the previous month.

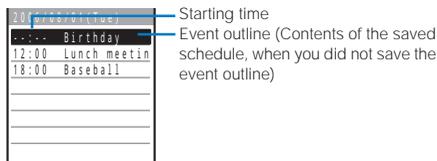
**When the calendar is set for the stand-by display**

Press **[Link]** in the stand-by display and select the calendar to start the schedule.

**To display the calendar for a specified date**

From the Function menu, select [Select date] and enter the date. Enter the date within the period of 2000/01/01 to 2050/12/31.

**2** Select a date and press **[OK]**.



The schedule list is displayed.

- Press **[Next]** to display the next day's schedule and **[Previous]** to display the previous day's schedule.

### 3 Select the schedule and press .

Schedule detail
2006/08/01 Tue
12:00
2006/08/01 Tue
12:50
Lunch meeting
Conference
Lunch meeting
ON

The details of the schedule appear.

To edit the saved schedule

Press  (Edit).

If you set a repeat count beyond 2050/12/31, [To 2050/12/31] is displayed as the last day of the repeat when you display the schedule.

## Deleting a Schedule

You can delete schedules using the following five methods.

Delete one	Delete a schedule. If you delete a schedule set to repeat, all its repeats are also deleted.
Select&delete	Delete the selected schedules. You can select up to 30 schedules over days at a time. If you delete a schedule set to repeat, all its repeats are also deleted.
Delete day	Delete all schedules for the selected date. Schedules set to repeat cannot be deleted.
Del up to ysd	Delete all schedules before the selected date. Schedules set to repeat on and after the selected date cannot be deleted.
Delete all	Delete all schedules.

Example: Deleting a schedule

### 1 From the Menu, select [Tools] [Schedule] and press .

To delete all schedules

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete all schedules before the selected date

Move the cursor to the date and from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Del up to ysd]. Enter the Security code and select [Yes].

To delete all schedules for the selected date

Move the cursor to the date and from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete day] [Yes].

### 2 Select a date and press .

To delete several schedules

From the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete] and select schedules. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

### 3 Select a schedule and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 4 Select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes] and press .

The selected schedule is deleted.

## Setting Holiday

You can set a day or a day of the week as a holiday and cancel the holiday settings. A day set as a holiday is displayed in red. Sundays and holidays are set as default holidays in the FOMA terminal.

For today	Set a specific day as a holiday or cancel a holiday. Up to 1,000 days can be set or canceled.
Day of the week	Set a specific day of the week as a holiday or cancel a holiday of the week.
Rel up to yesterday	Cancel all holidays set by the For today before the selected date.
Release all	Cancel all holidays set by the For today and Day of the week.
Reset	Reset the holiday settings to the default settings.

Example: Setting a specific day as a holiday or canceling the holiday setting of a day

### 1 From the Menu, select [Tools] [Schedule] and press .

To cancel all holidays

From the Function menu, select [Schedule setting] [Holiday] [Release all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To cancel all holidays before the selected date

Move the cursor to the date and from the Function menu, select [Schedule setting] [Holiday] [Rel up to yesterday] [Yes].

To set/cancel holidays by a day of the week

From the Function menu, select [Schedule setting] [Holiday] [Day of the week]. Select the day of the week and press  (Complete).

To reset to the default settings

From the Function menu, select [Schedule setting] [Holiday] [Reset], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### 2 Select a date and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 3 Select [Schedule setting] [Holiday] and press .

The Holiday display appears.

### 4 Select [For today] [Yes] and press .

The selected day is set as a holiday or the holiday setting of the day is canceled.

The public holidays are based on the "Law Partially Revising the National Holidays Law and the Old-Age Welfare Law" (Law No.59, 2001) and (Law No.43, 2005). Note that the Vernal Equinox Day and Autumn Equinox Day may fall on the dates other than those set on the FOMA terminal because they depend on the announcement by the official gazette on February 1st of the previous year (as of June 2006).

Perform the required setting when a holiday is changed or newly added.

## Checking the Number of Schedules Saved

The number of schedules saved can be checked as well as the number of schedules still available to be saved or saved as Secret.

- 1 Press **[Func]** (Func) in the calendar.

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select **[Memory status]** and press **[Enter]**.

Memory status	
Remained	279
Used	21
Secret	5

**[Remained]:**

Display the number of schedules still available to be saved.

**[Used]:**

Display the number of schedules saved (including schedules as Secret).

**[Secret]:**

Display the number of schedules saved as Secret (this data is displayed only when the Secret display is set to [ON]).

## Performing Frequently Used Functions Quickly

You can save frequently used functions in My Selection and select a saved function directly.

Up to 20 functions can be added to My Selection.

- 1 Press **[Func]** (i.ch) for over a second in the stand-by display and press **[Add]** (Add).

Add to My Selection	
Entertainment	
Mail	
i-mode	
Appli	
Phone	
Tools	
Data box	
Settings	

**To delete a saved menu**

Press **[Func]** (i.ch) for over a second in the stand-by display. Move the cursor to the menu and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] [Yes].

**To reset My Selection to the default setting**

Press **[Func]** (i.ch) for over a second in the stand-by display and from the Function menu, select [Reset] [Yes].

**To reorder menus in My Selection**

Press **[Func]** (i.ch) for over a second in the stand-by display and from the Function menu, select [Reorder] a menu. Move the cursor to a position to move to, press **[Move]** (Move), and press **[Complete]** (Complete).

- 2 Select a function and press **[Save]** (Save).

The screen for confirming whether to add to My Selection appears.

- 3 Select **[Yes]** and press **[Enter]**.

The selected function is added to My Selection.

## Recording Recipient's or Your Own Voice

Your own voice during stand-by and the recipient's voice during a voice call can be recorded.

Up to three voice memos of up to about 15 seconds each can be recorded.

- When you record a voice memo during a call in addition to the already recorded three voice memos, the oldest memo is automatically overwritten by the new one. When you record a voice memo during stand-by, the screen for confirming whether to overwrite the oldest voice memo appears.

## Recording Your Own Voice during Stand-by

- 1 Press **[Rec voice memo]** in the stand-by display, select [Rec voice memo] [Yes] and press **[Enter]**.



The recording starts. When the recording ends, a beep sounds.

**To stop the recording on the way**

Press **[Stop]** (Stop).

## Recording Recipient's Voice during a Call

- 1 Press **[Rec voice memo]** during a call.

The recording starts. When the recording ends, a beep sounds.

**To stop the recording on the way**

Press **[Stop]** (Stop).

If there is an incoming call/mail or the alarm/schedule alarm time comes while recording a voice memo during stand-by, the recording stops and the voice memo recorded until then is saved.

For information on playing back and deleting the voice memo, see P.68.

## Checking the Call Duration and Charge

You can check the call duration and charge for the last and total voice and videophone calls.

- The call duration and charge displayed are estimated and may not be real values. The call charge does not include consumption tax.

### 1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Call Cost/Duration] and press .

The Call Cost/Duration display appears.

#### [Last call cost]:

Display the call charge for the last voice call at [Voice call] and the last videophone call/64K data communications at [Digital]. The call charge is counted only when you place a call.

#### [Last call duration]:

Display the call duration for the last voice call at [Voice call] and the last videophone call/64K data communications at [Digital]. The call duration is counted when you receive a call as well as place a call.

#### [Total call cost]:

Display the total call charge from the last reset to the present time.

#### [Total calls dur.]:

Display the total call duration from the last reset to the present time.

### 2 Select the item and press .

When you place a call to a toll-free number such as NTT Free Dial or Directory Assistance (104), \*¥0\* or \*¥××××××\* indicated for the call charge.

The accumulated call charges are stored in the UIM. Therefore, if you switch the UIM, the accumulated total call charge (starting from December 2004) is displayed.

FOMA terminals manufactured earlier than the 901i Series are not capable of displaying the accumulated call charges stored in the UIM. (The charges, however, are stored in the UIM used by the older terminals.)

The duration and charge for i-mode, packet, and PushTalk communications are not counted. For information on how to check charges for i-mode, etc., see the "i-mode User's Manual" that you receive when you subscribe to i-mode.

When the call duration for the last voice call or digital communications exceeds 99 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds or the total call duration for voice calls or digital communications exceeds 9,999 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds, "Over" is displayed.

The ring time for incoming and outgoing calls are not counted.

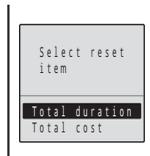
When you switch between voice and videophone calls during a call, the call duration and call charge are counted separately for each call type and incremented at [Voice call] or [Digital] alternately every time you switch the call.

## Resetting the Total Call Duration and Charge

The display of the total call duration and charge can be reset. The count starts from 0 after the reset.

Example: Resetting the total call duration

### 1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Call Cost/Duration] [Reset] and press .



### 2 Select [Total duration] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

#### To reset the total call charge

Select [Total cost], enter the PIN2 code, and select [Yes].

### 3 Enter the Security code and press (OK).

The screen for confirming whether to reset appears.

### 4 Select [Yes] and press .

The total call duration is reset and the reset date/time are updated.

## Automatically Resetting the Total Call Charge

You can set to automatically reset the total call charge at 00:00 a.m. on the first day of every month.

### 1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Call Cost/Duration] [Auto reset] and press .

The PIN2 code input screen appears.

### 2 Enter the PIN2 code and press (OK).

The Auto reset display appears.

### 3 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Auto reset is set.

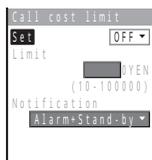
## Setting the Limit for Alert on the Total Call Charge

You can set an upper limit amount of call charges to alert yourself with an icon or alarm tone when the total call charge exceeds this limit value.

### 1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Call Cost/Duration] [Cost limit notice] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

- Enter the Security code and press **[OK]**.



- Select **[ON]/[OFF]** for the Call limit notice at **[Set]**.

- Enter a value at **[Limit]**.

Enter from ¥10 to ¥100,000 (in increments of ¥10).

- Select a notification method at **[Notification]**.

**[Alarm+Stand-by]:**

Display the icon in the stand-by display and sound an alarm tone to alert you at the same time.

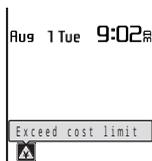
**[Stand-by]:**

Display the icon in the stand-by display to alert you.

- Press **[Complete]**.

The Call cost limit is set.

### When the Call Charge Exceeds the Limit



When the upper limit value of the call charge you have set is exceeded during a call or data communications, the notification icon **[▲]** (Exceed cost limit) appears in the stand-by display.

When you set the notification method to **[Alarm+Stand-by]**, an alarm tone sounds when the stand-by display reappears.

**To check the call charge**

Press **[Link]** in the stand-by display and select **[▲]**.

The alarm for the Call cost limit is heard at the same volume level as set for the incoming call ring volume. It is heard at the volume level 2 when you set the volume of the ring tone to [3] or higher level, **[STEP DOWN]**, or **[STEP UP]**.

### Canceling the Icon for Limit Alert

Turn off the notification icon **[▲]**.

- From the Menu, select **[NW Services]** **[Call Cost/Duration]** **[Dlt max cost icon]** and press **[OK]**.

The Security code screen appears.

- Enter the Security code and press **[OK]**.

The screen for confirming whether to delete the maximum cost icon appears.

- Select **[Yes]** and press **[Complete]**.

**[▲]** disappears.

## Using the Calculator

The FOMA terminal has a calculator that can perform basic operations (addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division).

Example: Calculating  $64 \times 5$

- From the Menu, select **[Tools]** **[Calculator]** and press **[OK]**.



- Enter numbers and operators to display the result.

Press **[0-9]**, **[←]**, **[+]**, **[\*]**, and **[=]** in this order.

0 to 9	<b>[0-9]</b> to <b>[9]</b>
Add (+)	<b>[+]</b>
Subtract (-)	<b>[-]</b>
Multiply (×)	<b>[*]</b>
Divide (÷)	<b>[÷]</b>
Decimal (.)	<b>[.]</b>
Calculate (=)	<b>[=]</b> or <b>[C]</b>
Clear (C)/Clear All (AC)	<b>[C]</b> or <b>[AC]</b>

Numbers up to nine digits can be entered and displayed. Any more digits than this are discarded for display (excluding a decimal point (.) and minus sign (-)).

If the result of the calculation is 10 digits or more, or if you attempt an illegal calculation (e.g. division by 0), the error code "OE" appears.

Minus numbers can be calculated only when you enter a minus number first.

## Using a Memo

Necessary information can be saved in the Text memo. Up to 10 text memos can be saved.

- When you enter **[Contents]** of a memo, **[Complete]** appears and you can save the memo.

- From the Menu, select **[Tools]** **[Text memo]**, press **[OK]**, and press **[Create]**.



- Enter a memo at **[Contents]**.

Enter a memo within 256 full-width or 512 half-width characters.

- Select a category icon at **[Category]**.

- Press **[Complete]**.

The memo is saved.

## Displaying a Memo

The contents of a saved memo can be checked.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Tools] [Text memo] and press .



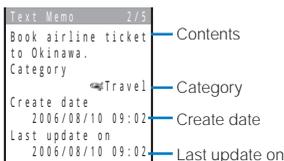
### To copy [Contents] of a memo

Move the cursor to a memo and from the Function menu, select [Copy text memo] [Yes].

### To delete memos

Move the cursor to a memo and from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes]. To delete several memos, from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete], and select memos. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes]. To delete all memos, from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2 Select a memo and press .



The memo appears.

### To edit the memo

Press  (Edit).

## Displaying the Settings of Various Functions

You can directly display the settings of each function and set each item. For further information about settings, see the relevant pages.

Display	Setting data
Mail	Set the functions used for i-mode mail and SMS (P.214, 222, etc.).
i-mode	Set the functions used for i-mode (P.105, 174, etc.).
i appli	Set automatic activation of software and software information display during a download (P.226, 230).
Phonebook	Set the display style and font size of the Phonebook (P.98).
Call record	Set the Redial/Received record display ON/OFF (P.126).
PushTalk	Set the operation for originating/receiving a PushTalk call (P.87).
Record msg	Set ON/OFF and the answer time of the Record message and the answering/recording image of the Videophone message (P.67).
Schedule	Set the operation of holidays and the Schedule alarm (P.270, 271).
Input method	Set the function for character input (P.291, 294, etc.).

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Application] and press .



- 2 Select a function and press .

The setting display of each function appears.

## Using EV-Link

EV-Link enables you to easily start mail (E-mail) from audio call (Voice) and vice versa. Using this function, you can send reply mail to a redial/received record as well as place a reply call to mail with simple operation.

### Sending Mail Using the Redial/Received Record

When the mail address and phone number of a recipient are saved in the Phonebook, mail can be easily sent from a redial/received record.

- 1 Select a record and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit mail] and press .

The Edit mail display appears.

The selected mail address is entered as the address.

#### When several mail addresses are saved

Select a mail address.

- 3 Compose mail and send it.

- Follow the same steps as in the Compose and send mail (P.193, step 3 to 5).

## Placing a Call Using i-mode Mail

You can easily place a voice or videophone call or originate a PushTalk call from mail when the mail address and phone number of the recipient are saved in the Phonebook.

- 1 From the received mail list, select mail, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Call back] and press .

- 3 Press .

The call is connected.

To place a videophone call

Press  (V.phone).

To originate a PushTalk call

Press .

When several phone numbers are saved

Select a phone number and press ,  (V.phone), or .

## Using the Switched Earphone Mic

When you connect the Flat-Plug Switched Earphone Mic (optional), etc. to the earphone mic jack, you can answer a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call or place a voice call by simply pressing its switch. You can also set Earphone Mic operation.

- When the PIM lock is set, the call cannot be placed.

Do not wind the cord of the Earphone Mic around the FOMA terminal. Doing so may cause the radio wave condition to be degraded.

Placing the cord of the Earphone Mic close to the antenna may cause noise.

## Using the Switch to Place a Call

You can place a voice call to the first phone number saved as the Memory number (P.276) of the Phonebook by simply pressing the switch on the Earphone Mic.

- 1 Connect the Earphone Mic to the FOMA terminal.

- Open the cover of the earphone mic jack and insert the plug of the Earphone Mic into the jack.

- 2 Press the switch on the Earphone Mic for over a second in the stand-by display.

The beep sounds and the call is connected to the recipient. Talk when the recipient answers the call.

- 3 Press the switch on the Earphone Mic for over a second to hang up.

The beep sounds and the call is disconnected.

If a Phonebook memory number that is saved as Secret is set for the Memory number, set the Secret display to [ON] if you want to use the switch on the Earphone Mic to place a call.

## Using the Switch to Receive a Call

- 1 When receiving a call, press the switch on the Earphone Mic for over a second.

The beep sounds and the call is connected.

- 2 Press the switch on the Earphone Mic for over a second to hang up.

The beep sounds and the call is disconnected.

## Setting the Operation of the Switched Earphone Mic

You can set whether to permit the switch on the Earphone Mic to receive a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call. You can also set a Phonebook memory number to be used for placing a voice call by pressing the switch on the Earphone Mic.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Earphone] [Earphone SW] and press .



- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the switch on the Earphone Mic at [Set].

[ON]:

Use the switch on the Earphone Mic to place/receive a voice call or receive a videophone or PushTalk call.

[OFF]:

Do not use the switch on the Earphone Mic.

- 3 Enter a memory number from the Phonebook used for placing a voice call at [Memory number].

Enter from 000 to 999.

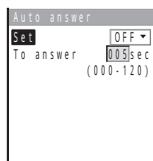
- 4 Press  (Complete).

The Earphone switch is set.

## Receiving a Call Automatically with Earphone

You can set to automatically answer a voice or video-phone call when the Flat-Plug Switched Earphone Mic (optional), etc. is connected.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Call] [Earphone] [Auto answer] and press .



- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Auto answer at [Set].
- 3 Enter the time before receiving a call automatically at [To answer].  
Enter from 000 to 120 seconds.
- 4 Press  (Complete).  
The Auto answer is set.

When the Record message, Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, and Auto answer are set simultaneously, and if you want to give priority to the Auto answer, set the time before starting the answering message for the Auto answer shorter than that for the Record message and the ring time for the Voice Mail and Call Forwarding Services.

## Resetting to the Default Settings

You can reset the settings of each function to the default settings. For the functions that are reset by the Reset settings and the default settings of these functions, see the list of reset items (P.278) and the list of menus (P.296).

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Management] [Reset] [Reset settings] and press .
- The Security code screen appears.
- 2 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).  
The screen for confirming whether to reset all settings appears.
- 3 Select [Yes] and press .
- The settings are reset.

## Deleting All Saved Data

You can delete saved data and reset the settings of each function to the default settings. For the functions to be reset by the Delete all data, see the list of reset items (P.278) and the list of menus (P.296).

- The following data is not deleted.
  - Preinstalled data in My picture, i-motion, Melody, Chara-den, and My document of the Data box
  - Preinstalled Deco-mail templates
  - i-Channel
  - Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-appli
- Preinstalled i-appli software "Stopwatch/Timer" and "Gガイド番組表リモコン" are deleted.
- Even if you delete a preinstalled Chara-den file, it is restored if you execute the Delete all data function.
- The preset folders are not deleted. The folder names at the time of purchase are restored, however.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Management] [Reset] [Delete all data] and press .
- The Security code screen appears.
- 2 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).  
The screen for confirming whether to delete all data appears.
- 3 Select [Yes] and press .
- The screen for confirming whether to execute restart operation appears.
- 4 Select [Yes] and press .
- The FOMA terminal is initialized and restarts.

## List of Reset Items

The items in which settings, that are made through the associated Function menus, etc., are reset by executing the Reset settings or Delete all data are as follows. For functions that can be accessed through the menu display, see the list of menus (P.296).

: Items restored to their default settings

Menu		Default setting	Reset settings	Delete all data	Page
Main menu	Size of the menu display	Regular size			P.33
Phonebook	Group setting	-			P.96
PushTalk phonebook	Group setting	-			P.84
Data box	My picture	Change display	4 images		P.258
		Slideshow	Interval: 3sec, Direction: H		P.245
	i-motion	Change display	4 images		P.258
		Continuous play	Direction: H		P.247
		Volume adjustment	25		P.248
My document	Fit width/True img	True img		P.263	
Memory Stick (Same as described for the Data box)					-
Camera	Select size	Still image: Stby(320 x 240), Movie: QCIF(176 x 144)			P.142
	Select save to	Data box			P.148
	Auto save	OFF			P.148
	Image quality	Standard			P.146
	Shutter sound	Sound1			P.147
	File size	Attach to mail(S)			P.147
	Shoot mode	Image+Sound			P.146
Alarm	Alarm	Time: 00:00, Repeat: OFF, Alarm: Alarm (std), Alarm volume: 3, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C5: Color 5, Snooze: OFF			P.268
SW Update	Scheduled update time	-			P.332

# Network Services

This manual provides a brief description of each Network Service using the approach of operating from the menu of the FOMA terminal. For detailed information on operation of the Network Services, see the "Network Services Operation Guide". Also, see the "Multi Number Operation Guide" for information on the Multi Number Service.

Available Network Services .....	280
Using the Voice Mail Service .....	280
Using the Call Waiting Service .....	281
Using the Call Forwarding Service .....	281
Using the Nuisance Call Blocking Service .....	281
Using the Caller ID Display Request Service .....	282
Using the Dual Network Service .....	282
Using the English Guidance Service .....	282
Using the Service Numbers .....	282
Selecting an Operation for an Incoming Call during a Call .....	<In-call Arrival Act> 283
Setting Remote Control .....	<Remote control> 283
Using the Multi Number Service .....	283
Saving a New Service to Use It .....	<Additional service (USSD) registration> 284

The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

## Available Network Services

This manual provides a brief description of each Network Service using the approach of operating from the menu of the FOMA terminal. For detailed information on operation of the Network Services, see the "Network Services Operation Guide". Also, see the "Multi Number Operation Guide" for information on the Multi Number Service.

Service name	Application	Monthly charge	Page
The Voice Mail Service	Required	Paid	P.280
The Call Waiting Service	Required	Paid	P.281
The Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free	P.281
The Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Required	Free	P.281
Notify Caller ID	Not required	Free	P.44
The Caller ID Display Request Service	Not required	Free	P.282
The Dual Network Service	Required	Paid	P.282
The English Guidance Service	Not required	Free	P.282
The Multi Number Service	Required	Paid	P.283
Additional service (USSD) registration	Not required	Free	P.284
Public mode (Driving mode)	Not required	Free	P.62
Public mode (Power off)	Not required	Free	P.64

- For a service that requires a subscription, call the "General Contact" on the backcover of this manual.
- When DoCoMo adds and provides a new network service, you can save the new service in the menu (P.284).
- To use the network services, you have to connect to the Network Service Center. Therefore, you cannot use the network services when you are outside of the service area.
- "Deactivating the service" of the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, etc. does not cancel your subscription to the service itself.

## Using the Voice Mail Service

The Voice Mail Service takes messages for you if there is an incoming voice or videophone call when you are outside of the service area or the FOMA terminal is powered off.

If there are any messages held at the Voice Mail Service Center when placing or receiving a call, the notification icon  (Voice Mail) appears in the stand-by display to notify you of new messages.

- Up to three minutes of recording time is allowed for each message and up to 20 messages for each of the voice and videophone calls are held each for up to 72 hours.
  - You can answer the call if it is before forwarding to the Voice Mail Service Center starts. The duration before forwarding to the Voice Mail Service Center starts (ring time) can be changed (P.280).
  - When the Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate", the Voice Mail Service is automatically deactivated.
- For the videophone call, this service is not available as of May 2006.

### Basic Flow of the Voice Mail Service

- Step 1 Activate the service.
- Step 2 The caller leaves a message.
- Step 3 Play back the Voice Mail message.

1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Voice Mail] and press .

2 Set each item.

Menu item	Function/Operation
Activate	[Activate] [Activate/Ring+Activate]([Ring time)] [Yes]  . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To change the ring time before starting the Voice Mail Service, select [Ring+Activate] and enter the ring time (000 to 120 seconds).</li> </ul>
Set ring time	[Set ring time] Enter the ring time (000 to 120 seconds) at [Ring time]  (Complete). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the ring time is set to 0 seconds, the receiving operation is not performed and the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center. The call is not saved in the Received record.</li> </ul>
Deactivate	[Deactivate] [Yes]  .
Check setting	[Check setting]  .
Play messages	[Play messages] [Yes]  . Operate as instructed by the guidance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The displayed number is the number that the guidance announces when playing back new Voice Mail messages. Already saved Voice Mail messages are not included.</li> <li>• You can also play back the record message by pressing  (Link) in the stand-by display and selecting  (Voice Mail).</li> </ul>
Voice Mail setting	[Voice Mail setting] [Yes]  . Operate as instructed by the guidance.
Check messages	Check whether you have new messages at the Voice Mail Service Center. [Check messages]  .
Tone/Vibrate notice	Set whether to alert you of a new message with the ring tone when it is received at the Voice Mail Service Center. [Tone/Vibrate notice] [ON]/[OFF]  .
Delete VM icon	[Delete VM icon] [Yes]  .
Missed Call notice	Activate Set to notify you of a new message by SMS when it is received while the FOMA terminal is powered off or outside of the service area. [Missed Call notice] [Activate] [All calls]/[With Caller ID] [Yes]  . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When [With Caller ID] is set, only incoming messages with the caller ID are notified.</li> <li>• Up to five incoming messages can be notified per SMS.</li> <li>• Notification of incoming messages is performed even if SMS一拒拒否 (Reject all SMS) is set.</li> <li>• The Missed Call notice setting and the notifications (SMS receptions) are made free of charge.</li> <li>• Even if the caller is saved in the Phonebook, the caller ID of the caller is notified and the name saved in the Phonebook is not displayed.</li> </ul>
	Deactivate [Missed Call notice] [Deactivate] [Yes]  .
	Check setting [Missed Call notice] [Check setting]  .

### Notes on the service for the videophone

When the Voice Mail Service takes a videophone message for you, it is notified to you by SMS.

To change the settings of the Voice Mail Service for videophone support, press **1 8.8.1** **4.8.8.1** **1 8.8.1** **2 7.8.1** **7.8.1** in the stand-by display and operate as instructed by the guidance.

A videophone of AV32K type is disabled for connection to the Voice Mail Service Center.

When you connect to the Voice Mail Service Center using Chara-den, the DTMF operation does not work. From the function menu, select [DTMF send mode].

The service is not available as of May 2006.

## Using the Call Waiting Service

The beeps notify you of an incoming call that arrives during a call. You can answer the incoming call by putting the current call on hold.

The Call Waiting Service cannot be used when you receive a call during a videophone call. The call is saved in the Received record.

- To use the Call Waiting Service, set the Arrival Call Act to [Answer]. You can use the Call Waiting Service regardless of the Activate/Deactivate operation of the In-call Arrival Act.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Call Waiting] and press **7.8.1**.

**2** Set each item.

Menu item	Function/Operation
Activate	[Activate] [Yes] <b>7.8.1</b>
Deactivate	[Deactivate] [Yes] <b>7.8.1</b>
Check setting	[Check setting] <b>7.8.1</b>

To put the current call on hold and answer an incoming call, press **7.8.1** (Call). Every time you press **7.8.1** (Switch), you can switch between the calls. To disconnect the put on hold call, from the Function menu, select [Release Hold Call].

To disconnect the current call and answer an incoming call, press **7.8.1** and **7.8.1**.

## Using the Call Forwarding Service

If there is an incoming call when you are outside of the service area or the FOMA terminal is powered off, it is forwarded to a forwarding number saved in advance, such as to your office or home.

- You can save one phone number to which calls can be forwarded.
- You can answer the call if it is before forwarding starts. The duration before forwarding starts (ring time) can be changed (P.281).
- When you receive a videophone call, the call is disconnected if the forwarding number does not support a videophone feature compliant with 3G-324M.

### Basic Flow of the Call Forwarding Service

- Step 1 Save the forwarding number.
- Step 2 Activate the Call Forwarding Service.
- Step 3 Receive a call on the FOMA terminal.
- Step 4 If you do not answer the call, it is automatically forwarded to the specified forwarding number.
- Step 5 The caller is connected to the forwarding number.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Call Forwarding] and press **7.8.1**.

**2** Set each item.

Menu item	Function/Operation
Activate	[Activate] [Activate]/[Set+Activate]([Forwarding No. set] [Set ring time]) [Yes] <b>7.8.1</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the forwarding number and ring time before starting the Call Forwarding Service, select [Set+Activate] and enter a forwarding number (within 26 digits) and the ring time (000 to 120 seconds).</li> <li>When the ring time is set to 0 seconds, the receiving operation is not performed and the call is forwarded to the forwarding number. The call is not saved in the Received record.</li> </ul>
Deactivate	[Deactivate] [Yes] <b>7.8.1</b>
Change FWD number	[Change FWD number] Enter the forwarding number (within 26 digits) [Set]/[Set+Activate] <b>7.8.1</b>
At FWD number busy	Set whether to connect to the Voice Mail Service Center when the forwarding number is busy. [At FWD number busy] [Not connect]/[Connect] <b>7.8.1</b>
Check setting	[Check setting] <b>7.8.1</b>

To setting ON/OFF of the Call Forwarding Guidance, press **1 8.8.1** **4.8.8.1** **2 7.8.1** **9.5.8.1** **7.8.1** in the stand-by display and operate as instructed by the guidance.

## Using the Nuisance Call Blocking Service

You can set a nuisance call to be blocked automatically. By saving a nuisance call, further calls from the same phone number are disconnected after playing back the call rejection guidance on the caller's phone.

- Up to 30 phone numbers can be saved.
- When you receive a videophone call from a caller who is saved as a nuisance caller, it is disconnected after playing back the call rejection video guidance on the caller's phone.
- When you receive a PushTalk call from a caller who is saved as a nuisance caller, the call rejection guidance is not played back on the caller's phone and the call is disconnected.
- Confirmation or inquiry about the saved phone numbers is not available. It is recommended to take notes of the saved phone numbers.
- The ring tone does not sound when there is an incoming call from the saved phone number. The call is not saved in the Received record, either.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Bar Nuisance Calls] and press **7.8.1**.

## 2 Set each item.

Menu item	Function/Operation
Register Caller	Save the phone number of the last received call. [Register Caller] [Yes] <input type="checkbox"/>
Reg. selected No	[Reg. selected No] Enter the phone number (within 22 digits) [Yes] <input type="checkbox"/>
Delete all entries	[Delete all entries] [Yes] <input type="checkbox"/>
Delete last entry	Delete the last saved phone number only. [Delete last entry] [Yes] <input type="checkbox"/>
Check No. of entry	[Check No. of entry] <input type="checkbox"/>

## Using the Caller ID Display Request Service

When you receive a call without a caller ID, this service answers the call with the guidance requesting the caller to send the caller ID and then automatically disconnects the call.

- When you receive a videophone call without a caller ID, it is disconnected after playing back the caller ID display request video guidance on the caller's phone.
- When you receive a PushTalk call without a caller ID, the caller ID display request guidance is not played back on the caller's phone and the call is disconnected.

1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Caller ID Request] and press .

## 2 Set each item.

Menu item	Function/Operation
Activate	[Activate] [Yes] <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you receive a "User unset" voice call when the Caller ID Display Request Service is set to "Activate", the ring tone does not sound. The call is not saved in the Received record.</li> </ul>
Deactivate	[Deactivate] [Yes] <input type="checkbox"/>
Check setting	[Check setting] <input type="checkbox"/>

## Using the Dual Network Service

The Dual Network Service allows you to use either the FOMA or Movia terminal with a single phone number depending on which service area you are in, the FOMA's or Movia's service area.

1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Dual Network] and press .

## 2 Set each item.

Menu item	Function/Operation
Switch Dual Network	Switch the Dual Network Service to enable using the FOMA terminal for this service. [Switch Dual Network] Enter the network security code [Yes] <input type="checkbox"/>
Check status	[Check status] <input type="checkbox"/>

## Using the English Guidance Service

You can set English voice guidance to be played during incoming/outgoing calls and various network service settings such as the Voice Mail and Call Forwarding Services.

If a caller is also using this service, the settings of a call from this caller have priority over the settings on the recipient's phone.

1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] [English Guidance] and press .

## 2 Set each item.

Menu item	Function/Operation
Guidance setting	[Guidance setting] A target to be set for the guidance ([Call+Income]/[Call]/[Income]) A language used for the guidance during outgoing calls ([Japanese]/[English]) A language used for the guidance during incoming calls ([Japanese]/[Japanese+English]/[English+Japanese]) <input type="checkbox"/> <p>Target to be set for the guidance [Call+Income]: Set both the guidance that you hear when you place a call and that a recipient hears when receiving your call. [Call]: Set the guidance that you hear when you place a call. [Income]: Set the guidance that a recipient hears when receiving your call.</p>
Check setting	[Check setting] <input type="checkbox"/>

## Using the Service Numbers

You can call the DoCoMo representative of Contact for Repair and the DoCoMo information desk of General Contact (DoCoMo Information Center).

- Depending on the UIM in use, the request numbers indicated by the DoCoMo representative of Contact for Repair and the DoCoMo information desk of General Contact may be different or may not be displayed.

1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Service Numbers] and press .

## 2 Select a contact office.

Menu item	Function/Operation
ドコモ故障問合せ (Contact for Repair)	Call the DoCoMo representative of Contact for Repair. [ドコモ故障問合せ] (Contact for Repair) [Yes] <input type="checkbox"/>
ドコモ総合案内・受付 (General Contact)	Call the DoCoMo information desk of General Contact (DoCoMo Information Center). [ドコモ総合案内・受付] (General Contact) [Yes] <input type="checkbox"/>

## Selecting an Operation for an Incoming Call during a Call

You can use the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, etc. to respond to an incoming call while you are making a voice call. Select the operation you want to perform when you receive another call.

- A call that is received during a call is saved in the Received record.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Arrival Call Act] and press .

**2** Select an operation.

Menu item	Function/Operation
Answer	Answer a call or forward a call manually to the Voice Mail Service Center or the forwarding number set in the Call Forwarding Service. [Answer]  .
Voice Mail	Respond a call using the Voice Mail Service. [Voice Mail]  .
Call Forwarding	Forward a call to the forwarding number saved in advance. [Call Forwarding]  .
Call Rejection	Reject a call. [Call Rejection]  .

## Starting/Stopping the In-call Arrival Act

You can start or stop the operation you have selected for the Arrival Call Act.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] [In-call Arrival Act] and press .

**2** Set each item.

Menu item	Function/Operation
Activate	[Activate] [Yes]  .
Deactivate	[Deactivate] [Yes]  .
Check setting	[Check setting]  .

## Setting Remote Control

You can set to be able to operate the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, etc. from a general push-button telephone, public phone, DoCoMo mobile phones, etc.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Remote Control] and press .

**2** Set each item.

Menu item	Function/Operation
Activate	[Activate] [Yes]  .
Deactivate	[Deactivate] [Yes]  .
Check setting	[Check setting]  .

## Using the Multi Number Service

You can add up to two numbers, Additional No.1 and No.2, and use them along with your basic subscription number.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Multi Number] and press .

**2** Set each item.

Menu item	Function/Operation
Set Multi Number	Set a phone number to be used for placing a call. [Set Multi Number] [Basic Number]/[Additional No.1]/[Additional No.2] [Yes]  .
Check Multi Number	[Check Multi Number]  .
Number Setting	Set a name for the Basic Number and a name, phone number, and ring tone for the Additional No.1 and No.2. [Multi Number call] [ON]/[OFF] Enter a name at  (within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters) Enter a phone number at  (within 26 digits) Select a ring tone at  (Complete). Multi Number call When [ON] is set, the phone number saved here is displayed on the Call menu, allowing you to select it from the Call menu. Basic Number You can set a name for the Basic Number. Additional No.1 and No.2 You can set a name, phone number, and ring tone for the Additional No.1 and No.2. For the ring tone, you can set a melody in the SMF/MFI format and an i-motion with sound track only selecting respectively from Melody and i-motion of the Data box. However, some i-motion may not be set for the ring tone. To mute the ring tone, select [Silent].

If you do not yet subscribe to the Multi Number Service, use the FOMA terminal with the Multi Number call set to [OFF].

The Multi Number call is set to [ON] and a phone number selected from the Call menu is displayed.



When you receive a call, the caller's phone number and name are displayed.



If the UIM is switched to another card, the name and phone number set for the additional Nos. are deleted. You need to set them again.

You can select a phone number manually in the Call menu when you place a call (P.53).

When you placed a call using the Redial/Received record, the call is originated using the phone number saved in the Redial/Received record.

## Saving a New Service to Use It

You can save up to 10 services in the menu when a new network service is added by DoCoMo.

1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Additional service] [Register USSD] and press .

2 Set each item.

Item	Function/Operation
Save a new service	[Unsaved] <input type="checkbox"/> (Edit) Enter a name of the service at [Service] (within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters) Enter a USSD command at [USSD] (within 20 digits) <input type="checkbox"/> (Complete).
Delete a service	Move the cursor to a service Function menu [Delete one] [Yes] <input type="checkbox"/> .
Delete all services	Function menu [Delete all] Enter the Security code [Yes] <input type="checkbox"/> .
Use a saved service	Move the cursor to a service <input type="checkbox"/> .

## Saving an Answering Message

1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Additional service] [Add answer wording] and press .

2 Set each item.

Item	Function/Operation
Save a new answering message	[Unsaved] <input type="checkbox"/> (Edit) Enter an answering message at [Answer wording] (within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters) Enter a USSD command at [USSD] (within 20 digits) <input type="checkbox"/> (Complete).
Delete an answering message	Move the cursor to an answering message Function menu [Delete one] [Yes] <input type="checkbox"/> .
Delete all answering messages	Function menu [Delete all] Enter the Security code [Yes] <input type="checkbox"/> .

# Data Communication

For detailed information on Data Communications, see the "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF format) included in the supplied CD-ROM. You need Adobe Reader (Version 6.0 or later is recommended) to read the "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF format). If this software is not installed on your PC, download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (A separate communications charge is required for downloading the software.)  
For details, see the Adobe Systems Incorporated website.

About Data Communications .....	286
Preparations and Flow of Data Communications .....	288
AT Commands .....	288

## About Data Communications

You can use the FOMA terminal for three types of data communications, packet communications, 64K data communications, and data transfer.

- The FOMA terminal does not support Remote Wakeup.
- The FOMA terminal does not support FAX communications.
- If you are going to connect the FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's "sigmarion" or "musea" PDA to perform data communications, you should update "sigmarion" or "musea". For details about updating, see the DoCoMo website.

### Packet Communications

A charge applies to this type of communications based on the volume of exchanged data (maximum reception speed 384K bps, maximum transmission speed 64K bps). You can perform packet communications by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC using the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) and making the necessary settings. Use a FOMA packet communications-compliant access point such as DoCoMo's Internet connection service "mopera U"/"mopera". You can also exchange data by accessing an in-house LAN connected to the FOMA network.

- Note that packet communications could be expensive if you exchange large volumes of data.

### 64K Data Communications

A charge applies to this type of communications based on the duration of a communication (communication speed 64K bps).

You can perform 64K data communications by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC using the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) and making the necessary settings. Use a FOMA 64K data communications-compliant access point such as DoCoMo's Internet connection service "mopera U"/"mopera" or ISDN synchronous 64K access points.

- Note that 64K data communications could be expensive if you exchange data over a long period of time.

### Data Transfer

This type of communications is used to exchange data using infrared rays or FOMA USB connection cable (optional) and no charge is required. Using infrared communications, you can exchange data with a device such as the FOMA terminal or a PC that is equipped with the infrared communications function.

## Precautions on Use

### Usage Fee of Internet Service Provider

When you use the Internet, a usage fee is required for your Internet service provider. This usage fee, which is separate from the FOMA service charges, must be paid directly to the Internet service provider. For details about usage fees, contact your Internet service provider.

You can use DoCoMo's Internet connection service "mopera U"/"mopera".

To use "mopera U", you need to subscribe to this service (paid service). No monthly charge is required to use "mopera" and you do not need to subscribe to it.

### Setting a Host (Such as an Internet Service Provider)

The host for packet communications is different from the host for 64K data communications. To use packet communications, use a packet communications-compliant host; to use 64K data communications, use a FOMA 64K data communications-compliant host or ISDN synchronous 64K-compliant host.

- You cannot connect to a DoPa access point.
- You cannot connect to a PHS 64K/32K data communications access point such as PIAFS.

### User Authentication for Network Access

User authentication (ID and password) may be required when connecting to some hosts. If user authentication is required, enter your ID and password on the communication software (dial-up network) for connecting to the host. The Internet service provider or the network administrator of the host assigns an ID and password. For details, contact your Internet service provider or the network administrator of the host.

## Access Authentication for the Use of a Browser

When a FirstPass-compatible site that you access through the Internet browser on your PC requires the FirstPass (user certificate) as an access authentication, install the FirstPass PC software from the supplied CD-ROM and perform necessary settings. For details, see "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) in the [FirstPassPCSoft] folder on the CD-ROM. You need Adobe Reader (Version 6.0 or later is recommended) to read "FirstPassManual" (PDF format). If this software is not installed on your PC, download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (A separate communications charge is required for downloading the software.)

For details, see the Adobe Systems Incorporated website.

### Operating environment of the FirstPass PC software

Item	Required environment
PC main unit	PC/AT-compatible
OS	Windows 98SE, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP (All Japanese versions) (No Windows 98 support.)
Required memory	32MB or more (Windows XP: 128MB or more)
Hard drive capacity	10MB or more free space
Internet browser	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 or later (Windows XP: Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later)

The required memory and hard drive capacity may vary depending on the PC system configuration.

## Conditions of Packet and 64K Data Communications

The following conditions are necessary to perform communications using the FOMA terminal.

- The FOMA USB connection cable (optional) can be used on your PC.
- Your PDA must have FOMA packet and 64K data communications support.
- You must be inside of the FOMA's service area.
- The host for packet communications must have FOMA packet communications support.
- The host for 64K data communications must have FOMA 64K or ISDN synchronous 64K data communications support.

Note, however, that even if you comply with the above conditions, you may not be able to perform communications if the base station is congested or radio wave condition is poor.

## Definition of terms

### Administrator

An administrator is authorized access to all Windows XP and Windows 2000 Professional systems. At least one user with Administrator privilege is set for each PC. Normally, a user without Administrator privilege cannot install the communication configuration files (drivers). For more information on Administrator privilege, contact the manufacturer of your PC or a representative of Microsoft Corporation.

### APN (Access Point Name)

A character string used for identifying the Internet service provider host or in-house LAN for packet communications. For example, the APN of "mopera U" is "mopera.net".

### cid (Context Identifier)

A registration number available when you save a packet communications host (APN) in the FOMA terminal. You can save up to 10 numbers from one to 10 for the FOMA terminal.

### Default cid of the FOMA terminal

Registration number (cid)	Host (APN)
1	mopera.ne.jp (mopera)
2	Undefined
3	mopera.net (mopera U)
4-10	Undefined

### DNS (Domain Name System)

DNS is a system that converts a domain name (example: ntdocomo.co.jp) into an IP address, which is used by a PC.

### IrDA (Infrared Data Association)

IrDA is an organization that establishes infrared communications-related standards.

### IrMC (Ir Mobile Communications)

Standards established for the purpose of data transfer between mobile phones and between PDAs (personal digital assistant). You can exchange phone numbers and schedule data between mobile phones or PDAs equipped with an IrMC-compliant infrared jack.

### OBEX (Object Exchange)

OBEX is one of the global standards for data communications. You can exchange data between OBEX-compliant mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras, and printers.

### QoS (Quality of Service)

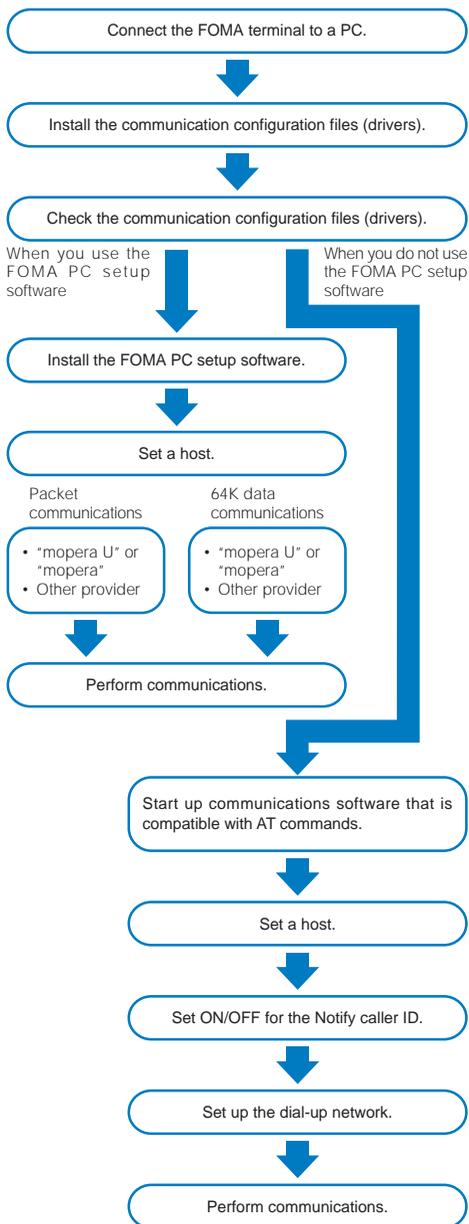
Service quality technology that enables the user to use a communications line in accordance with requirements. If you are using the FOMA terminal, you can set the communication speed for connection.

### W-TCP

TCP parameter that makes optimal use of TCP/IP transmission capabilities for packet communications on the FOMA network. To take full advantage of the communications performance of the FOMA terminal, you must perform this communication settings.

## Preparations and Flow of Data Communications

The preparations required for performing packet and 64K data communications by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC are given below.



## Operating environment of communication configuration files (drivers)/FOMA PC setup software

Item	Required environment
PC main unit	1 PC/AT-compatible
OS	2 Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP (All Japanese versions)
Required memory	3 Windows 98, Windows Me: 32MB or more Windows 2000 Professional: 64MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard drive capacity	3 5MB or more free space

- 1 USB port (USB specification 1.1/2.0-compliant) is required.
- 2 Normal operation of the drivers after upgrading the OS is not guaranteed.
- 3 The required memory and hard drive capacity constitute the operating environment for the FOMA PC setup software. These specifications may vary depending on the PC system configuration.

## AT Commands

AT commands are the commands (instructions) that are executed on a PC for setting and changing the functions of the FOMA terminal.

For more information on the AT commands, see the "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF format) included in the supplied CD-ROM.

# Entering Text

About Entering Text .....	290
Entering Text .....	290
Entering Common Phrases .....	292
Entering Pictographs/Symbols .....	292
Editing/Saving Common Phrases .....	<Edit common phrases> 292
Quoting Data from the Phonebook, etc. ....	292
Cutting/Copying/Pasting Text .....	293
Entering Text Using Kuten Codes .....	<Input kuten> 293
Saving the Frequently Used Kanji Words .....	<Save prediction/user> 293
Resetting to the Default Settings .....	<Reset data> 294
Using the Downloaded Dictionary .....	<Download dictionary> 294

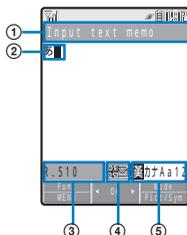
The default setting for each function is provided in the list of menus (P.296).

## About Entering Text

The overview of the text entry is described here.

- Characters including JIS level 1 and level 2, 6,355 kanji are available.
- Some complicated kanji characters are abridged or simplified in part.

### Text input display



The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose.

- ① The name of a function for which characters are input
- ② Entered characters
- ③ Number of bytes of characters that can be entered  
A half-width character is counted as one byte and a full-width character as two bytes. The number of characters is displayed for SMS. While composing mail, it appears with a " - " (minus sign) when the number of entered characters exceeds the limit. When the number of entered characters exceeds the limit by 10,000 characters, " - 9999" is displayed. In some cases, "ap" (approximate) appears before the number.
- ④ "Deco-mail" appears while you edit Deco-mail.
- ⑤ Character mode or pictograph/symbol mode
  - The character mode or pictograph/symbol mode available varies depending on the contents to be edited.

Character mode	
Half-width	Full-width
[ 漢 ] Kanji/Hiragana	[ 漢 ] Kanji/Hiragana
[ カ ] Half-width katakana	[ カ ] Full-width katakana
[ Aa ] Half-width alphabet	[ A ] Full-width alphabet
[ 12 ] Half-width numeric	[ 1 ] Full-width numeric

Characters are always entered in full-width in the kanji/hiragana mode even if the character mode is set to half-width.

Pictograph/Symbol mode
[ 絵 ] Pictograph/Symbol ranking
[ 絵 ] Pictograph
[ 記 ] Full-width symbol
[ 記 ] Half-width symbol

### Changing the character mode or pictograph/symbol mode

#### Character mode for half-width

Every time you press (Mode), the character mode changes in the order of [漢] [カ] [Aa] [12].

#### Character mode for full-width

Every time you press (Mode), the character mode changes in the order of [漢] [カ] [A] [1].

#### Pictograph/symbol mode

Every time you press (Pict/Sym), the character mode changes in the order of [絵] [記] [記] [記].

### Changing the character mode between full-width and half-width

From the Function menu, select [Multi/Single].

### Entering a character assigned to the same key twice or more in succession

After entering the first character, move the cursor.

### Deleting a character

Move the cursor to the character and press .

- The character at the cursor is deleted by pressing for less than a second. The last character is deleted when the cursor is at the end of the text.
- All characters at and after the cursor position are deleted by pressing for over a second. All characters are deleted when the cursor is at the end of the text.

### Inserting a character

Move the cursor to the position to insert a character and enter the character. The characters after the cursor position are shifted to the right of the inserted character.

### If the matching kanji word does not appear

If you cannot get the desired conversion, change the block of characters to be converted. Moving the cursor with changes the matching words list/conversion target words displayed according to the cursor position.

### Undoing text

If you have performed an incorrect operation, you can select, from the Function menu, [Undo] to cancel the last operation and restore the previous status.

- [Undo] is available for the following actions:
  - Confirming character entry ()
  - Cutting or pasting (P.293)
  - Kuten code entry (P.293)
  - Deleting characters ()
  - Quoting data from Phonebook, My data, etc. (P.292)
  - [Undo]

## Entering Text

### Entering Text in the Prediction Conversion Mode

Example: Entering "健闘" (けんとう)

#### 1 Check the character mode in the text input display.

Check that the kanji/hiragana mode is selected.

#### 2 Press four times.



Matching words list

The first character "け" is entered and the matching words list for "け" is displayed.

- Pressing for over a second allows you to switch the Japanese alphabet letters assigned to this key continuously in a manner like +かきくけこか...".

#### To return to the previous character

When passing the target character by pressing extra keys, press . Every time you press it, the character returns to the previous one.

- 3 Press **[PRN]** three times and press **[ENT]** five times.



The characters “ん” are entered and the matching words list for “けん” is displayed.

**To set the User conversion mode temporarily**

When you press **[ALT]**, the conversion target words for the User conversion mode appear.

- 4 Select **[健闘]** and press **[SELECT]**.



“健闘” is entered. A selection of words that are expected to succeed the word “健闘” appears in the matching words list.

- 5 Select **[閉じる]** and press **[SELECT]**.

The matching words list closes and “健闘” is finalized.

The selected words from the matching words list are displayed with priority over other words next time.

### Entering Text in the User Conversion Mode

Example: Entering “健闘” (けんとう)

- 1 Change the conversion mode to **[User conversion]**.
  - Follow the same steps as in “Changing the Conversion Mode” (P.291).
- 2 Check the character mode in the text input display. Check that the kanji/hiragana mode is selected.
- 3 Enter a text.



- Press **[ENT]** four times: け
- Press **[PRN]** three times: けん
- Press **[ENT]** five times: けんとう
- Press **[CLOSE]** three times: けんとう

- 4 Press **[DOWN]**.



The first conversion target word appears.

**To finalize this word**

Press **[SELECT]** (Select).

- 5 Select **[健闘]** and press **[SELECT]**.

“健闘” is finalized.

**To cancel the conversion**

Press **[CANCEL]** (Cancel).

A word entered in the User conversion mode is automatically saved in the Prediction dictionary. This word is displayed in the matching words list from the next time.

### Changing the Conversion Mode

Select the conversion mode from Prediction conversion or User conversion when the character mode is the kanji/hiragana mode.

- 1 From the Menu, select **[Settings]** **[Application]** **[Input method]** **[Select conversion]** and press **[SELECT]**.

**[Prediction]:**

When entering characters, a selection of words predicted by the characters appears in the matching words list. This is a conversion mode that a look-ahead strategy is applied to by the FOMA terminal.

**[User conversion]:**

Enter the entire reading of the word before conversion. This is the conventional conversion mode.

- 2 Select a conversion mode and press **[SELECT]**.

The selected conversion mode is set.

To change the conversion mode in the text input display, from the Function menu, select **[Input method]** **[Select conversion]**.

## Entering Common Phrases

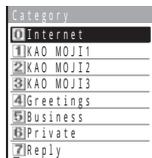
For common phrases, see P.306.

- Common phrases that are available vary depending on the contents to be edited. Unavailable categories are disabled for selection.

1 Press **[Func]** in the text input display.

The Function menu appears.

2 Select **[Input phrases]** a category a common phrase and press **[OK]**.



The selected common phrase is entered.

To check a common phrase

Move the cursor to the common phrase and press **[OK]** (Confirm).

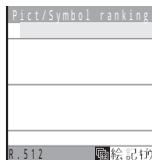
## Entering Pictographs/Symbols

Pictographs and symbols you entered are listed in the Pict/Symbol ranking display in the order of number of times you entered them, from which you can select a desired one when you enter characters.

For pictographs and symbols, see P.304.

Example: Entering several pictographs all at once

1 Press **[Pict/Sym]** in the text input display.



Every time you press **[Pict/Sym]**, the pictograph/symbol mode changes in the order of **[絵]** **[記]** **[物]**.

To enter only one pictograph/symbol

Move the cursor to a pictograph/symbol and press **[OK]**.

2 Press **[Pict/Sym]** **[Cont]**, select a pictograph and press **[OK]**.



The selected pictograph is displayed on the top of the text input display. To select the next pictograph, move the cursor to the desired one and press **[OK]**.

To cancel the selection

Press **[Quit]**. The last pictograph displayed on the top of the text input display is canceled. When you press **[Quit]** for over a second, all selected pictographs are canceled.

3 Press **[OK]** (OK).

The selected pictographs are entered all at once.

## Editing/Saving Common Phrases

The preinstalled common phrases can be edited according to the intended use. Your own common phrases can also be added as new entries.

For common phrases, see P.306.

Example: Editing ".co.jp" saved in the "Internet" category

1 From the Menu, select **[Settings]** **[Application]** **[Input method]** **[Edit common phrases]** and press **[OK]**.

The Common phrases display appears.

2 Select **[Internet]** **[".co.jp"]** and press **[OK]**.

To reset the common phrase to the default setting

Move the cursor to the common phrase and from the Function menu, select **[Reset]** **[Reset one]** **[Yes]**. To restore the default set of common phrases in a category, from the Function menu, select **[Reset]** **[Reset all]**, enter the Security code, and select **[Yes]**. To restore the default set of common phrases in all categories, press **[Rset]** **[Rset all]** in the Common phrases display, enter the Security code, and select **[Yes]**.

To delete a common phrase

Move the cursor to the common phrase and from the Function menu, select **[Delete one]** **[Yes]**.

3 Press **[Edit]** and edit the contents.

Enter a common phrase within 64 full-width or 128 half-width characters.

Editing is completed.

## Quoting Data from the Phonebook, etc.

You can quote data saved in the Phonebook or Own number (my data) or characters scanned by the bar code reader to enter in the main body of your mail or in the text input display while displaying a site.

Example: Quoting from the Phonebook

1 Press **[Func]** in the text input display.

The Function menu appears.

2 Select **[Quoted phonebook]** and press **[OK]**.

The Phonebook appears.

To quote the Own number

Select **[Quoted my data]**.

To quote data of JAN/Qr code after scanning them by the bar code reader

Select **[Bar code reader]**.

3 Select a name an item to be quoted and press **[OK]**.

The selected item appears in the text input display.

When the selected item contains more characters than the maximum number of characters that can be entered, the extra characters are deleted.

## Cutting/Copying/Pasting Text

The entered characters can be pasted to the other input display by cutting or copying. Use this function when you enter i-mode text or compose mail.

The characters cut or copied are saved in the clipboard and pasted when the Paste function is selected. The contents of the clipboard can be pasted as many times as needed.

- The clipboard is a special memory area where cut or copied data is temporarily saved. The clipboard can hold only one item and it is replaced with new data when copying or cutting next data to it.
- The data in the clipboard is deleted when the FOMA terminal is powered off or the Reset is performed.
- A character that cannot be entered to the destination display is replaced with a half-width space when pasted. Any extra characters that exceed the maximum allowable number of characters are deleted.

### Cutting

Cut the selected characters and save them in the clipboard (the selected characters are deleted from the source display).

Function menu	Setting option
Cut	Cut the selected text.

### Copying

Copy the selected characters and save them in the clipboard (the selected characters are not deleted from the source display).

Function menu	Setting option
Copy	Copy the selected text.
Attach No.	Copy a phone number.
Item copy	Copy a phone number, mail address, etc. item by item.
Copy text memo	Copy the contents of the text memo.

### Pasting

Paste the contents of the clipboard.

Function menu	Setting option
Paste	Paste the copied or cut data.

## Copying/Cutting Text

- 1 Press  (Func) in the text input display.  
The Function menu appears.
- 2 Select [Copy] and press .  
**To cut**  
Select [Cut].
- 3 Select the Start point and press .  
The first character to be copied is set.  
**To select all characters**  
Press  (Slt all).
- 4 Select the End point and press .  
The range of characters to be copied is set and saved in the clipboard.

## Pasting Text

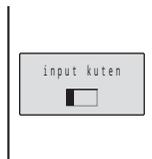
- 1 Select the position to paste in the text input display and press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.
- 2 Select [Paste] and press .  
The copied/cut text is pasted.

## Entering Text Using Kuten Codes

You can enter characters, numbers and symbols using corresponding 4-digit kuten codes as listed in the Kuten code list.

For kuten codes, see P.309.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the text input display.  
The Function menu appears.
- 2 Select [Input kuten] and press .



- 3 Enter a kuten code.  
The character corresponding to the entered kuten code is entered.

## Saving the Frequently Used Kanji Words

Frequently used Kanji words can be saved in the Prediction or User dictionary. Saved words are displayed in the matching words list/conversion target words by priority when you convert characters.

Prediction dictionary	Save words that you want to display in the matching words list by priority when you use the Prediction conversion. Up to 300 words can be saved.
User dictionary	Save words that you want to display in the conversion target words by priority when you use the User conversion. Up to 200 words can be saved.

- The words saved in the User dictionary are automatically saved in the Prediction dictionary, but not vice versa.
- When you delete a saved word, delete it from the dictionary to which it is saved.

Example: Saving a word in the Prediction dictionary

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Application] [Input method] [Edit prediction] and press .

The Prediction dictionary display appears.

#### To add a word to the User dictionary

Select [Settings] [Application] [Input method] [Edit user].

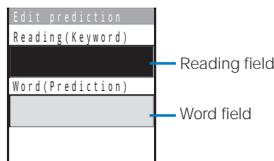
#### To delete a word

Move the cursor to the word and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] [Yes]. To delete several words, from the Function menu, select [Select&delete] and select words, press  (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all words, from the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

#### To edit a word

Move the cursor to the word and press .

- 2 Press  (Create).



- 3 Enter the reading in the reading field.

Enter a reading within 16 hiragana characters.

- 4 Enter the word in the word field.

Enter a word within 16 full-width or 32 half-width characters.

- 5 Press  (Complete).

The entered word is saved in the Prediction dictionary.

## Resetting to the Default Settings

The FOMA terminal's dictionary has a data learning feature. The data learning feature memorizes the frequency in which individual words are used and give priority to the frequently used words when displaying them in the matching words list/conversion target words. If you reset the learning data, the order of priority is reset to the default setting.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Application] [Input method] [Reset data] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

- 2 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

The screen for confirming whether to reset the learning data appears.

- 3 Select [Yes] and press .

The learning data is reset.

## Using the Downloaded Dictionary

Up to 20 dictionaries can be downloaded using i-mode for use with the FOMA terminal. When enabling a downloaded dictionary, words saved in it appear in the matching words list.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Application] [Input method] [Dictionaries] and press .



#### To display the detailed information

Move the cursor to the dictionary and from the Function menu, select [Information].

#### To change the name

Move the cursor to the dictionary and from the Function menu, select [Edit name]. Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.

#### To delete a dictionary

Move the cursor to the dictionary and from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete one] [Yes]. To delete several dictionaries, from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Select&delete] and select dictionaries, press  (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all dictionaries, from the Function menu, select [Delete] [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2 Select a dictionary and press  (Set).

The Valid/Invalid display appears.

- 3 Select [Valid]/[Invalid] and press .

When it is set to [Valid], the dictionary is enabled and "■" (gray) changes to "■" (green).

If many dictionaries are enabled simultaneously, some words may not be displayed in the matching words list.

The dictionary can be downloaded from "SO@Planet".

[i Menu] [メニューリスト] [ケータイ電話メーカー]  
[SO@Planet]

## Sorting the Downloaded Dictionaries

When you download several dictionaries, you can change the order of the dictionaries in the list to display words of a frequently used dictionary by priority.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Dictionary folder display.

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Reorder] and press .

- 3 Select a dictionary and press .

The Reorder display appears.

- 4 Select a position to move to and press  (Move).

- 5 Press  (Complete).

The searching priority is set.

# Appendix/ External Device Interface/ Troubleshooting

List of Menus .....	296
Characters Assigned to Keys .....	303
Special Symbols .....	304
Pictographs .....	304
Face Marks .....	305
Common Phrases .....	306
Preinstalled Images .....	307
Deco-mail Templates .....	308
Kuten Codes .....	309
Multiaccess Combinations .....	313
Multitask Combinations .....	314
Services Available on the FOMA Terminal .....	315
Optional and Related Devices .....	316
<b>External Device Interface</b>	
Introduction of Data Link Software .....	317
Introduction of Movie Player Software .....	318
<b>Music Playback</b>	
Playing Back i-motion (Including Music Data) Created on a PC Using the FOMA Terminal ....	318
<b>Troubleshooting</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	319
Error Messages .....	321
Warranty and After Sales Services .....	327
Updating the Software .....	<Software update> 329
Protecting Your Mobile Phone from Harmful Data .....	<Scan function> 333
SAR Certification Information .....	336
Export Controls and Regulations .....	336

# List of Menus

- You can enter the figure next to some menu names listed below in the menu display to execute the associated function.

## Normal mode

: The default setting/s is/are restored.

: Items deleted

Menu		Default Setting	Reset settings	Delete all data	Page		
Entertainment [1]	My Selection [11]	BC reader, Receive Ir data, ToruCa, IC card content			P.272		
	Camera [12]	-			P.136		
	Movie [13]	-			P.139		
	Memory Stick [14]	-			P.251		
Mail [2]	Mail box [21]	Inbox	-		P.208		
		Outbox	-				
		Draft	-				
	Compose msg [22]	-			P.193		
	Compose SMS [23]	-			P.220		
	Check new msg [24]	-			P.178, 203		
	Check new SMS [25]	-			P.221		
	Receive option [26]	-			P.202		
	Mail setting [27]	Templates		-	1	P.198	
		Common setting	Melody auto play	Auto play			P.218
			i-mode inquiry set	Mail/MessageR/F: Valid			P.216
			Connection timeout	60sec			P.174
			Host selection	i-mode (UIM)		2	P.175
			Dur multi task disp	Prefer alarm			P.218
		Edit signature		-			P.215
		Signature		Auto			P.215
		Mail list		List name: List 0 to 9, Member List: None			P.217
		Font size		Medium			P.114
		Sort inbox		Sort method/Sort to folder: None			P.214
		SMS setting	Language	JPN			P.222
			SMS report	Invalid			
			Validity	3days			
SMSC			DoCoMo				
Type of Number	International						
Address	81903101652						
Rcv opt setting		OFF			P.216		
Attached file set	Attached file	Accept all			P.219		
	Image	Accept					
	Melody	Accept					
Clear Recv ranking		-			P.219		
Clear Send ranking		-			P.219		

1 Preinstalled data is not deleted.

2 Hosts you added are deleted.

Menu		Default Setting	Reset settings	Delete all data	Page		
i-mode [3]	i Menu	-			P.158		
	Bookmark	-			P.165		
	Screen Memo	-			P.168		
	Go to location	URL address	-			P.164	
		URL list	-			P.164	
	i-Channel	-			P.235		
	Message	MessageR	-			P.178	
		MessageF	-				
	Check new messages	-			P.178, 203		
	i-mode setting	Common setting (See [Mail] [Mail setting] [Common setting])				-	
		Font size	Medium			P.114	
		Display img	ON			P.176	
		Auto detect	OFF			P.176	
		Use phone info	Yes			P.176	
		i-motion setting	Auto replay	ON			P.184
			i-motion type	Std			
		Sound effect	3			P.105	
		i-mode Arrival Act	Prefer PushTalk			P.174	
		Auto-display	Prefer msgR			P.177	
		SSL list	CA certify	Valid			P.180
DoCoMo cert.1			Valid				
DoCoMo cert.2			-				
User certificate	-			P.180			
Host selection	ドコモ		3	P.182			
i-appli [4]	i appli list	-		4	P.226		
	i appli setting	Auto start	Yes		P.230		
		Soft description	No			P.226	
	i appli history	Stand-by err hist	-			P.232	
		Security err hist	-				
		Trace result	-				
Auto start err hist		-					
Phone [5]	Own number	[51]	-		P.45		
	Phonebook	[52]	-		P.91		
	Call record	[53]	-		P.51, 60		
	PushTalk phonebook	[54]	-		P.83		
	Record msg [55]	Play rec msg		-		P.68	
		Play Vphone msg		-		P.68	
		Set rec msg	Set	OFF			P.67
			To answer	8sec			
			Answer img(V.phone)	テレビ電話動作中			
	Record img(V.phone)		テレビ電話動作中				
Rec voice memo		-		P.272			
Play voice memo		-		P.68			
Tools [6]	BC reader [61]	Bar code reader	-		P.149		
		Saved data	-		P.150		
	Rcv Ir Data [62]	Receive	-			P.262	
		Receive all	-			P.262	
	ToruCa	[63]	-		P.240		
	IC card content	[64]	-		P.239		
	Alarm [65]	Select alarm	OFF			P.268	
		Auto power on	OFF				
	Schedule	[66]	-		P.269		
	Text memo	[67]	-		P.274		
Calculator	[68]	-		P.274			

3 Hosts you added are deleted.

4 Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-appli is not deleted.

Menu			Default Setting	Reset settings	Delete all data	Page	
Data box [7]	My picture		-		5	P.244	
	i-motion		-		5	P.247	
	Melody		-		5	P.250	
	Chara-den		-		5	P.250	
	My document		-		5	P.263	
Settings [8]	Display	Stand-by	Stand-by display	Aqua Crystal			P.109
			Ticker	Std			
			Calendar/Clock	Type: Digital clock-S, Font color: Blk, Clock style: 12h			
			Soft key	ON			
	Backlight	Adjust light	3				P.111
		Keypad light	1				
		Display light	Charging/Internet: OFF, Videophone/Photo shoot/Movie shoot/Movie play: ON				
	Power saver		3min				P.112
	Menu setting	Menu mode	Normal				P.113
		Icon setting	Entertainment/Mail/I-mode/i-appli/Phone/Tools/Data box/Settings/NW Services: None				
	Select theme		P1:Aqua				P.112
	Anim setting	Sending	音声発着信中				P.110
		V.phone sending	テレビ電話発着信中				
		Mail sending	バケット通信				
		Check new message	バケット通信				
	Font size	Phonebook	Large				P.114
		Call record	Large				
		Mail	Medium				
		Internet	Medium				
	Call	Incoming set	Call	Ring tone: 着信音1, Ring volume: 3, Incoming image: 音声発着信中, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C1: Color1			P.102
			Videophone	Link incoming call: OFF, Ring tone: 着信音1, Ring volume: 3, Incoming image: テレビ電話発着信中, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C1: Color1			
PushTalk			Ring tone: 着信音1, Ring volume: 3, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C1: Color1				
Mail			Ring tone: 着信音1, Ring volume: 3, Incoming image: メール受信完了, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C1: Color1 Alert time: Play once: OFF, Alert duration: 4sec				
MessageR/MessageF			Link receive mail: ON, Ring tone: 着信音1, Ring volume: 3, Incoming image: メール受信完了, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C1: Color1 Alert time: Play once: OFF, Alert duration: 4sec				

5 Preinstalled data is not deleted.

Menu			Default Setting	Reset settings	Delete all data	Page		
Settings [8]	Call	Missed call	ON			P.113		
		Videophone	Display setting	Main-Other side			P.76	
			Set outgoing image	Camera image: ON, Substitute image: プンブン (Dimo)			P.76	
			Visual preference	Normal			P.77	
			Auto redial(voice)	OFF			P.77	
			Hands-free	ON			P.77	
		Call display	Phonebook image	ON			P.111	
			Name	ON				
		Call assist	Sub-address	ON			P.56	
			Prefix setting	-			P.54	
			Int'l dial	Auto assist: Auto, IDD prefix: Name: World Call, Number: 009130010 Country code: Country: 日本, Country code: +81			P.55	
			Any key ans	ON			P.59	
			Set ring start time	Set: OFF, Ring time: 4sec, Missed call display: OFF			P.128	
		Call setting	Volume	3			P.105	
			Recnct ALM	High			P.57	
		Call quality	Quality alarm	OFF			P.106	
			Reduce noise	ON			P.57	
		Earphone	Auto answer	Set: OFF, To answer: 5sec			P.277	
			Earphone	Earph.+speaker			P.106	
			Earphone SW	Set: OFF, Memory number: 999			P.276	
	Self mode	OFF			P.123			
	Application	Mail (See [Mail] [Mail setting])					-	
		i-mode (See [i-mode] [i-mode setting])					-	
		i appli (See [i appli] [i appli setting])					-	
		Phonebook	Display style	Alphabet				P.98
			Font size	Large				
			Set image display	ON				
			Save image to M.S.	ON				
		Call record	Record display	ON				P.126
			Font size	Large				P.114
		PushTalk	Auto answer setting	OFF				P.87
			Set ring time	30sec				P.88
			Caller ID	OFF				P.88
			i-mode Arrival Act	Prefer PushTalk				P.174
			P-Talk Arrival Act	Call Rejection				P.88
		Record msg (See [Phone] [Record msg] [Set rec msg])						-
		Schedule	Holiday	For today: Annual holidays established by the Japanese National Holidays Law, Day of the week: Sun				P.271
			Schedule alarm	Alarm: Alarm(std), Alarm volume: 3, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C5: Color5				P.270
		Input method	Edit user	-				P.293
			Edit prediction	-				
			Dictionaries	-				P.294
	Select conversion		Prediction				P.291	
	Edit common phrases		See Common Phrases (P.306)				P.292	
	Reset data		-				P.294	

Menu		Default Setting	Reset settings	Delete all data	Page	
Settings [8]	Lock/ Security	Lock all	OFF		P.121	
		IC card lock	OFF		P.242	
		Remote lock	Set	OFF		P.121
			Monitoring	3min		
			Times	5Count		
			List	-		
		PIM lock	OFF		P.123	
		Secret display	OFF		P.126	
		Key dial lock	OFF		P.124	
		Acpt/Rjct call	Set	OFF		P.127
			List	-		
			Group list	-		
		Reject unknown	OFF		P.129	
		Denied no ID	User unset	OFF		P.128
			PublicPhone	OFF		
	Not support		OFF			
	ToruCa receive	Permitted		P.241		
	Management	Date/time	Date	---/-/-- ---		P.44
			Time	--:--		
		Language	日本語		P.114	
		Manner mode	Set	OFF		P.108
			Mode	Manner		
			Original manner	Vibrator: OFF, Phone volume: SD (STEP DOWN), Mail volume/ Alarm volume: 3, Keypad sound: 1, Keyguard rel/Charge sound/Battery ALM: ON, Whisper mode: OFF		
		Change code	0000		P.118	
		UIM setting	PIN1 code setting	OFF		P.118
			Change PIN1 code	0000		P.119
			Change PIN2 code	0000		
		Scan function	Update	-		P.334
			Auto-update setting	-		P.334
			Set Scan	Valid		P.333
			Definition version	-		P.335
		SW Update	-		P.330	
		Battery level	-		P.41	
Set basic tone		Keypad sound	1		P.104	
		Keyguard rel	ON			
		Stereo&3D	OFF			
		Charge sound	ON			
Storage info	-		P.260			
Reset	Reset settings	-		P.277		
	Delete all data	-		P.277		
Init. Setting	Date/time	Date: ---/-/-- --- Time: --:--		P.43		
	Change code	0000				
	Keypad sound	1				
	Font size	Phonebook/Call record: Large, Mail/Internet: Medium				
	PushTalk caller ID	OFF				

Menu		Default Setting	Reset settings	Delete all data	Page	
NW Services [9]	Voice Mail	Activate	-		P.280	
		Set ring time	-			
		Deactivate	-			
		Check setting	-			
		Play messages	-			
		Voice Mail setting	-			
		Check messages	-			
		Tone/Vibrate notice	ON			
		Delete VM icon	-			
		Missed Call notice	Activate	-		
		Deactivate	-			
		Check setting	-			
	Call Waiting	Activate	-		P.281	
		Deactivate	-			
		Check setting	-			
	Call Forwarding	Activate	-		P.281	
		Deactivate	-			
		Change FWD number	-			
		At FWD number busy	-			
		Check setting	-			
	Bar Nuisance Calls	Register Caller	-		P.281	
		Reg. selected No	-			
		Delete all entries	-			
Delete last entry		-				
Check No. of entry		-				
Notify Caller ID	Set Notification	Not notify		P.44		
	Check status	-				
Caller ID Request	Activate	-		P.282		
	Deactivate	-				
	Check setting	-				
Call Cost/ Duration	Last call cost	Voice call	*****YEN	P.273		
		Digital	*****YEN			
	Last call duration	Voice call	0:00			
		Digital	0:00			
	Total call cost	Total calls cost	0YEN			
		Reset date/time	---/-/-- --:--			
	Total calls dur.	Voice call	0:00			
		Digital	0:00			
		Reset date/time	---/-/-- --:--			
	Reset	-			P.273	
	Auto reset	OFF			P.273	
	Cost limit notice	Set	OFF			P.273
		Limit	-			
Notification		Alarm+Stand-by				
Dlt max cost icon	-		P.274			
In-call Arrival Act	Activate	-		P.283		
	Deactivate	-				
	Check setting	-				
Arrival Call Act	Answer		P.283			
Remote Control	Activate	-		P.283		
	Deactivate	-				
	Check setting	-				
Dual Network	Switch Dual Network	-		P.282		
	Check status	-				

Menu			Default Setting	Reset settings	Delete all data	Page	
NW Services [9]	English Guidance	Guidance setting	-			P.282	
		Check setting	-				
Service Numbers	ドコモ故障問合せ (Contact for Repair)		-			P.282	
		ドコモ総合案内・受付 (General Contact)	-				
Additional service	Register USSD		Service: Unsaved, USSD: -			P.284	
		Add answer wording	Answer wording: Unsaved, USSD: -				
Multi Number	Set Multi Number		-			P.283	
		Check Multi Number	-				
	Number Setting	Multi Number call	OFF				
			Basic Number	Name: 基本契約番号			
		Additional No.1	Name: 付加番号1				
			Phone number: -				
	Additional No.2	Ring tone: 着信音1					
		Name: 付加番号2					
Phone number: -							
	Ring tone: 着信音1						
V.ph switch notice	Activate		-			P.78	
	Deactivate		-				
	Check setting		-				

## Simple mode

Menu			Page
Phone [1]	Phonebook [11]		P.91
	Call record [12]		P.51, 60
	Record message [13]	Set rec msg [131]	P.67
		Play rec msg [132]	P.68
		Play Vphone msg [133]	P.68
Own number [14]		P.45	
Mail [2]	Inbox [21]		P.208
	Outbox [22]		P.208
	Draft [23]		P.208
	Compose message [24]		P.193
	Check new msg [25]		P.178, 203
i-mode [3]	i Menu [31]		P.158
	Bookmark [32]		P.165
	Screen Memo [33]		P.168
	i-Channel [34]		P.235
Camera [4]	Shoot [41]		P.136
	Play [42]		P.244
Settings/Tools [5]	Stand-by disp. [51]		P.109
	Incoming set [52]	Call [521]	P.102
		Mail [522]	P.102
	Alarm [53]		P.268
	Calculator [54]		P.274
	Call Cost/Durat [55]		P.273, 274
	Voice Mail [56]		P.280
Main menu [6]		P.296	

# Characters Assigned to Keys

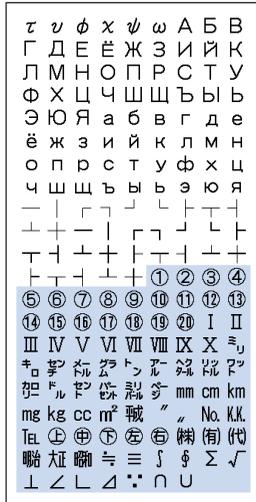
Character mode Keys	Kanji/Hiragana mode	Katakana mode	Alphabetic mode	Numeric mode
	あいうえお あいうえお	アイウエオ アイウエオ	. @ / : - ~ 1	1
	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	A B C a b c 2	2
	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	D E F d e f 3	3
	たちつとっ	タチツテトツ	G H I g h i 4	4
	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	J K L j k l 5	5
	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	M N O m n o 6	6
	まみむめも	マミムメモ	P Q R S p q r s 7	7
	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	T U V t u v 8	8
	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	W X Y Z w x y z 9	9
	わをんわ、 。-・!?	ワラン <sup>ワ</sup> 、。 -・!?「」	! ? - , ; ( ) " _ ~ & ¥ 0	0
	、。-・!?	*、。-・!?「」	! ? - , ; ( ) " _ ~ & ¥	*
	Display character assignments in the reverse order (before acceptance of characters)/Line feed (after acceptance of characters)			#
	Move cursor left			
	Move cursor right/Insert half-width space (blank) (only when there is no character after the cursor)			

- indicates a space (blank). A space (blank) is provided in two sizes: a full-width and half-width sizes and counted as one full-width or half-width character.
- Characters marked with appear in the full-width character mode only.
- Blue colored characters appear in the half-width character mode only.
- Every time you press a key, the character changes to the next one that is assigned to that key. If you press and hold the key, the characters change continuously.
- Press after finalizing a character to start a new line. "␣" appears to indicate it. A new line is counted as a full-width character.
- Press before finalizing a character to insert a voice or semivowel sound symbol and change its case from upper to lower case or vice versa.
- In the Alphabetic mode, the case attribute of the character entered last or converted by pressing is inherited to the next character.

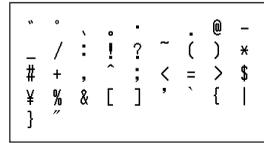
# Special Symbols

- Symbols marked with may not be displayed correctly when sending to i-mode non-compatible mobile phones or PCs.

## Full-width symbols



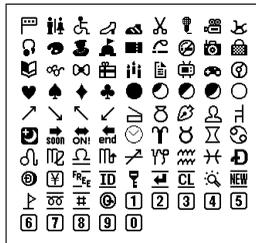
## Half-width symbols



# Pictographs

- Pictographs are not displayed correctly when sending to i-mode non-compatible mobile phones or PCs.
- "Pictographs 2" may not be displayed correctly depending on the type of recipient's i-mode compatible mobile phone.

## Pictographs 1



## Pictographs 2



# Face Marks

When you enter the following words in the kanji/hiragana mode, Kao moji (face marks) are entered.

- Some face marks listed below may look different from the actual ones.

Face marks that belong to other than the “かお” category appear only when the Prediction conversion is used.

Word	Kao moji	Word	Kao moji	Word	Kao moji	Word	Kao moji	Word	Kao moji	Word	Kao moji
あいたく	(△△)	がーん	(□□)!!	かお	(ωω)	すみません	m( )m	にここ	:>	べこり	(△△)
あくび	(^o^)/ (oθo)/		(:□: )!!		(o・v・o)	たのしい	(^o^)		:>		<m( )m>
			(●d●)		(▽▽)		(^o^)	にやり	(ーー)		(△△)
あせ	(^o^): ^o^: (^o^): (-o-): (^o^): (^o^):	かお	m( )m (^o^): (^o^): o(^o^):o (**) (^o^):		(^o^): (x_x): ^o^ (^o^o) (. ) (^o^):		(^o^): (^o^): (*)*(*) (^o^): (^o^):	なてる	(-o-)zzz	ほーい	(^o^):
								はーい	(^o^)/		(^o^):
						たら	(-o-):	ばいばい	(^o^)/^	ほし	(*o*)
						ちゅっ	(^o^):Chu♪		(^o^)/^	ほりほり	(^o^):
あら	(/--)/		(^o^):		(. )		(^o^):Chu♪		(^o^)/^		f_o^:
いっぶく	(△△)y~ (△△)y~ (△△)y~		(T,T)		(△△)		Chu!(^3^)-☆		(△△)/^	むにやむにや	(△△)
							(^o^):		(^o^)/^	めがね	(@_@)
									(^o^)/^		
ういんく	(^o^)		(●o●)	きやー	o(≥▽≤o)	どきっ	(@o@)	ばちばち	(^o^)/^	らじや	(^o^):
うーん	(#++)		(^o^)		o(≥▽≤o)	どてっ	(o_ )o	ばんざい	(^o^)/		(≥▽≤):
うひよひ	(o^v^o) (^▽^)		)o^(	きやばは	(≥▽≤)/	なが物ほし	★		(^o^)/	りようが	(^o^):
うん	(→(△)		(-o-):	くー	(o^')b	なく	(T,T)	びくっ	(*)		(≥▽≤):
えーん	(ToT)		(:△:)	くーくー	(-o-)Zzz		(:△:)		(@_@)	わーい	(^o^):
えっ	(@_@): (@d@)		(^o^)	くすん	(:△)		(T,T)		(+o+)		(^o^):
			(+o+)	くたばる	(△△)	なぜ	(??)	ひやあせ	(^o^):		(^v)
えと	(+o+)		(^o^)		(*)		(?d?)		(^o^):		(●o●)
えへへ	(o^v^o)		(-o-)		(+o+)	にげろー	e=F(▽▽)J		(^o^):		)o^(
おいおい	(^o^)		^o^:	さあ	(^o^):	にここ	(^o^)		(^o^):		(^o^)/
おお	(^o^ )/		>^<	さかな	o<<		(*)	ふあいと	p(^o^)q		d(△o△)b♪
おーい	(^o^)/ (^o^)/ (^o^)/ (^o^)/		(△△)	さざえ	8(*)8		(^o^)		p(^o^):q		(^o^)
				じーっ	(:△△)		(*)	ぶい	(^o^):v		o(△o△)o
				しくしく	(T,T)		(*)		(^o^):v		(*)
					(:△)		(o^o)		(▽▽)v		(^o^)/
おこる	(△△)		(△△)		(:o:)		(^o^)		v(^o^):v		(*)
	(-o-#)		(-o-)		(:△)		(=^o^)		v(^o^):v		(^o^)
	(-o-#)		(^o^)		(:△)		=^o^=		(^o^):v	わーん	o(TTo)o
	(^o^)		(o^o)		(^o^)		8->	ぶっ	(^o^)/	わくわく	o(^o^):o
おねがい	(△△)		(^o^)		(:△)		(#^)#	ぶんぶん	<v		o(^o^):o
おりゃ	(△△)		(△△)		(:△)		<^o^>	べこり	m( )m		o(^o^):o
	(^o^ )/		(^o^)	じと	(-o-)		:		(△)	わたしかな	σ(^o^):?

# Common Phrases

Category	Common phrase	
0] Internet	0] .co.jp	5] .go.jp
	1] .ne.jp	6] @docomo.ne.jp
	2] .com	7] http://
	3] .or.jp	8] https://
	4] .ac.jp	9] www.
1] KAO MOJI1	0] ^^;	5] (>_<)
	1] (^.^)	6] (^.^)
	2] >^<	7] (@.@)
	3] (;.~)	8] m(~~)m
	4] (+^)	9] (^-^)/^^
2] KAO MOJI2	0] o(^w^)^o	5] *~0~/
	1] (o^-')b	6] (^^^)^y-^^
	2] \ (~δ~/	7] (o`v`o)
	3] (ρ_→)o	8] (^□^)
	4] (▽▽)v	9] (▽△▽);)
3] KAO MOJI3	0] (≥ε≤)	5] (^*^)^Chu♪
	1] (≥▽≤)Δ	6] l(◎d◎)ノv
	2] (;□:);!!	7] ε = Γ(;▽▽)┘
	3] (u_u)o"	8] ♪d(〇〇)♪
	4] =^ε^=	9] へ(^-^)^x(^o^)/
4] Greetings	0] おはようございます	5] お疲れさまでした
	1] おやすみなさい	6] お世話になっております
	2] 昨日は、どうもありがとうございました	7] こんにちは
	3] 行ってきます	8] こんにちは
	4] いってらっしゃい	9] よろしく願い致します
5] Business	0] 直行します	5] 本日の会議は中止となりました
	1] 直帰します	6] 出欠をご連絡ください
	2] 休暇をとります	7] 次の指示を待ってください
	3] 半休します	8] 携帯の電源を切ります
	4] 電車遅延のため、遅れます	9] メールで連絡してください
6] Private	0] 遊びに行こう	5] 先に行きます
	1] 飲みにいきませんか?	6] 先に帰ります
	2] 遅れます	7] 時間です
	3] 変更します	8] 何してるの?
	4] 中止です	9] どこにいるの?
7] Reply	0] OKです	5] 今忙しい
	1] NGです	6] 後で連絡を入れます
	2] ありがとう	7] 保留です
	3] ごめんなさい	8] キャンセルです
	4] 待って!	9] 時間がありません
8] Original		

# Preinstalled Images

The following images are available on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

## My picture

Preinstalled

Aqua Crystal



WP + Log(アニメ)



Crimson Ruby



Resort



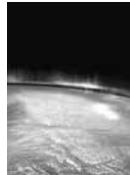
Compass



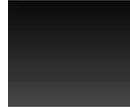
Chess



Gaia



Freeway



\*WP + Log(アニメ) changes in color and appearance according to the time of day, radio wave condition, and battery level.

## Deco-mail picture



## i-motion

### Preinstalled



©VOOZ ©BVIQ



## My document

### Preinstalled



# Deco-mail Templates

### ありがとう



©VOOZ ©BVIQ

### ごめんなさい



©VOOZ ©BVIQ

### Happy Birthday!



©VOOZ ©BVIQ

### げんき？



### 飲み会のお誘い



### あのね



### Thank You!!



### Good Night



### ブンブン カフェ



©BVIQ

### ブンブン おひるね



©BVIQ

### ブンブン フラワー



©BVIQ









# Multiaccess Combinations

The table below indicates whether another event or task is available for each task in progress.

- The FOMA terminal may not operate as indicated in the table below depending on its condition.

Current status	Another event or task														Software update	Comm. for scanning	
	Voice call		V.phone call		PushTalk		i-mode	i-mode mail		SMS		64K data comm.		Packet comm.			
	Call	Rcv	Call	Rcv	Orig	Rcv		Send	Rcv	Send	Rcv	Send	Rcv	Send			Rcv
During a voice call	1	2	x	3	x	x						x	x			x	x
During a videophone call	x	x	5	x	x	5	x	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x	x
During PushTalk communications	x		x	x	x	4	x	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x	x
During i-mode connection				7	x	4	7	8	x			x	x	x	9	x	x
During sending/receiving i-mode mail				7	x	4	7	8		x	10	10	10	x	x	4	x
During sending/receiving SMS										10	10	10	10				
During 64K data communications	x	x	4	x	x	4	x	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	4	x
During packet communications				x	x	4	x	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	4	x
Updating software	x			x	x	4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	4	x
Communications for scanning	x			x	x	4	x	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	4	x

: Available    x: Unavailable

- 1 If you subscribe to the Call Waiting Service, you can place a call to another recipient while you have a call in progress.
- 2 If you subscribe to the Voice Mail, Call Forwarding, or Call Waiting Service, you can receive a call. If you subscribe to none of these services, you cannot receive a call and it is not saved in the Received record, either.  
If you subscribe to the Call Waiting Service, you can receive another call while you have a call in progress. If you subscribe to the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, you can receive another call after you disconnect the current call (P.283).
- 3 If you subscribe to the Voice Mail, Call Forwarding, or Call Waiting Service, you can receive a call. If you subscribe to none of these services, you cannot receive a call and it is not saved in the Received record, either.  
You can select either to continue the current call or to disconnect it and answer a call you just received (P.283).
- 4 The FOMA terminal does not perform the receiving operation and the incoming call is saved in the Received record as a missed call.
- 5 If you subscribe to the Voice Mail, Call Forwarding, or Call Waiting Service, the incoming call is saved in the Received record.
- 6 In either of the following cases, the FOMA terminal notifies you of an incoming voice call and you can select either to "answer a voice call" or to "continue with PushTalk call". (The one that was not selected is terminated.)
  - When you set the P-Talk Arrival Act to [Answer]
  - When you set the P-Talk Arrival Act to [Voice Mail] or [Call Forwarding] and you do not subscribe to these services
- 7 The FOMA terminal disconnects the current communications and then places/receives a call.
- 8 The FOMA terminal performs the operation set by the i-mode Arrival Act.
  - When set to [Prefer i-mode], i-mode communications is continued.
  - When set to [Prefer PushTalk], i-mode communications is disconnected and you can receive a PushTalk call.
- 9 While you are performing i-mode communications using i-appli, you can send 64K/packet data after disconnecting the i-mode communications in progress.
- 10 A combination of the same communication direction, either sending or receiving, is not available.



- 1 For the multitask combination to the Receive option, see the following functions.  
 Recv option setting is [ON] : See "Display site" or "Dur display site".  
 Recv option setting is [OFF] : See "Mail setting".
- 2 Besides the function for displaying a site, functions for displaying the screen memo, Message R/F, and i-Channel are included.
- 3 A displaying function that needs no network communications is executable.
- 4 When an image recorded using the currently activated Camera/Movie function is not yet saved, the action for " " is applied.
- 5 If the i-mode Arrival Act is set to [Prefer i-mode], the FOMA terminal does not receive a PushTalk call.
- 6 The Receive option cannot be executed.
- 7 You cannot execute these functions while [Common setting] is being executed.
- 8 While a displaying function that uses network communications, such as displaying a site, is being executed, the setting for the i-mode Arrival Act is applied.
- 9 [Common setting] cannot be executed.
- 10 While displaying PDF data, the decision for permitting the execution does not take place and the new function cannot be executed.
- 11 [Common setting] is executed after the i-appli menu is quit.
- 12 Once you execute another function, you cannot switch to the running i-appli software.
- 13 When this software update function is executed by reservation, it is performed after a call is disconnected.
- 14 When data exchange is not performed, the action for " " is applied.

## Services Available on the FOMA Terminal

Service	Phone number
Collect Call (fees paid by the recipient of the call)	(no area code) 106
Information on ordinary telephone numbers and DoCoMo mobile phones (paid) (Phone numbers of customers who declined to disclose their number information are not available.)	(no area code) 104
Telegram service (paid: telegram fee): 8 a.m. - 10 p.m.	(no area code) 115
Time (paid)	(no area code) 117
Weather (paid)	Area code of the area you want to hear the weather forecast for + 177
Emergency call to Police	(no area code) 110
Emergency call to Fire/Ambulance	(no area code) 119
Emergency call to Maritime rescue	(no area code) 118
Disaster Message Board Service (paid)	(no area code) 171

When placing a Collect Call through 106, the recipient pays for the call charge and a handling fee of 90 yen (94.5 yen including tax) per call (as of June 2006).

When calling the Directory Assistance at 104, you are required to pay a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen including tax) besides the call charge (as of June 2006). Note that Operator Services are free to the people with impairment in the vision or upper limbs. For more details, contact 116 (NTT Sales Office) from an ordinary phone.

When you call the Police (110), Maritime rescue (118) or Fire/Ambulance (119) from the mobile phone, they cannot locate where you are calling from. Clearly indicate that you are calling from a mobile phone, then give your present location and mobile phone number, since the Police or Fire/Ambulance may have to get in contact with you. Also, make a point to call in a stationary position to prevent the call from being dropped. Do not power off the mobile phone for at least 10 minutes after the emergency call just in case the Police or Fire/Ambulance may have to get in contact with you.

Note that you may not connect to the local Fire Department or Police Station depending on where you are calling from. In this case, try to call from a public phone or an ordinary phone in the neighborhood.

If you have an ordinary phone with subscription to the Call Forwarding Service and you designate your mobile phone number to forward your calls to, the caller may hear a ringing sound even if the mobile phone is busy, outside of the service area or powered off depending on the settings of the ordinary phone/mobile phone.

Note that 116 (NTT Sales Office), Dial Q2, Message Dial, Credit calls cannot be called from the FOMA terminal (note that Automatic Credit Calls may be used when calling from ordinary phones to the FOMA terminal).

## Optional and Related Devices

A variety of commercially available optional devices allows you to expand the FOMA terminal's capabilities by supporting a wide range of applications, including personal and business uses. Some accessories are only available in some areas. For details, please contact our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.). For details on optional devices, see the user's manual of each device.

Carrying Case L 01

Flat-Plug Switched Earphone Mic P01/P02

Flat-Plug Stereo Earphone Set P01

Earphone Jack Conversion Adapter P001

Switched Earphone Mic P001/P002

Stereo Earphone Set P001

Earphone Terminal P001

The Earphone Jack Conversion Adapter is required.

Car Holder 01

In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01

FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01

FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required to connect to FOMA SO902IWP + .

Battery Pack SO01

FOMA AC Adapter 01

FOMA DC Adapter 01

FOMA AC Adapter 01 for both domestic and overseas use

Desktop Holder SO03

FOMA Battery-Powered Charger 01

Rear Cover SO03

Active Holder SO01

FOMA USB Connection Cable

External FOMA Antenna for Indoor Use

# Introduction of Data Link Software

You can use "FOMA SO Series Data Link Software" to transfer data such as the Phonebook, mail, Bookmark, and Schedule data between the FOMA terminal and a PC. Use the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) to connect the FOMA terminal with a PC or use the "Memory Stick Duo".

## Downloading the software

The data link software and dedicated driver software can be downloaded from <http://www.SonyEricsson.co.jp/so902iwpplus/SOdatalink/>.

For information on the software, such as how to download, transferable data, operating environment, how to operate the software and restrictions, see the web site described above or the data link software help.

- To download the software, you need a PC that has access to the Internet.
- A separate communications charge is required for downloading the software.

## Supported operating system

Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional or Windows XP

PC/AT compatible machine running one of above operating systems

## Notes on using the data link software

### Copyright Notice

Although this software is distributed for free as a freeware, its copyrights all belong to Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc.

### Immunity

Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc. will not assume any legal defect liabilities including non-performance or improper performance of this software or any other guarantee responsibilities. Also note that Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc. will not guarantee this software's merchantability and fitness for your particular purpose.

## For inquiries on the data link software (in Japanese only)

Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc. Customer Support Center

Check the number you call and dial it correctly.

Navidial : **0570-00-2516**

Can be called anywhere in Japan with the same call charge as for the area call.

From mobile phones and PHSS : **0466-31-2516**

Operation hours : 10:00 - 18:00 (Weekday)

10:00 - 17:00 (Saturday, Sunday, public holidays, and year-end through New Year holidays)

## Introduction of Movie Player Software

To play back a movie (MP4 format file) on a PC, you need QuickTime Player (free) ver.6.4 or later (or ver.6.3+3GPP) from Apple Computer, Inc.

You can download QuickTime from the following website.

<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>

- To download this software, you need a PC connected to the Internet. A separate communications charge is also required for downloading.
- Check the above website for details about the operating environment, downloading method, operation method, and other information.

## Playing Back i-motion (Including Music Data) Created on a PC Using the FOMA Terminal

You can convert music data on a CD you own into i-motion format and play it on the FOMA terminal.

Like a music player, you can use the built-in speaker of the FOMA terminal or the Flat-Plug Stereo Earphone Set (optional) and enjoy an i-motion saved in the "Memory Stick Duo" (P.251) using the FOMA terminal or a PC, etc.

To use the "Memory Stick Duo", you need to obtain it separately. If you do not have a "Memory Stick Duo", you can purchase one at a home electric appliances shop.

- You can use the music data saved in the "Memory Stick Duo" for private purposes. When you use such material, be sensitive concerning infringement of intellectual property rights and other rights of a third party, such as copyright ownership.
- Do not copy or transfer music data saved in the "Memory Stick Duo" to another medium, such as a PC.

### 1 Use a commercially available conversion software to convert a file into AAC format and save it in a PC.

For instructions on using the software, contact the manufacturer of the software.

### 2 Copy the converted file to the "Memory Stick Duo".

Copy the converted file using a PC provided with a "Memory Stick Duo" reader/writer.

Change the file name extension to ".3gp". From the "Memory Stick Duo", select [MOBILE] [DOCOMO] [MOVIE] folder to save the file.

- See P.252 for folder setup of the "Memory Stick Duo". If the "Memory Stick Duo" does not contain a [MOVIE] folder, create this folder on a PC.

### 3 Insert the "Memory Stick Duo" in the FOMA terminal and perform playback.

- For i-motion playback operation, see P.247.

## Troubleshooting

First, check whether the software update is necessary for the FOMA terminal. If necessary, perform the software update (P.329).

Trouble	Cause and Remedy
Cannot power on the FOMA terminal. (The FOMA terminal cannot be used.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the battery pack is attached properly (P.37).</li> <li>• Check if the battery pack is not run out (P.41).</li> <li>• Check if the Lock key is set (P.125).</li> </ul>
The warning tone sounds and does not stop even when you press the Power key, and the FOMA terminal is powered off.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The battery is running out. Charge the battery (P.40).</li> </ul>
The busy tone sounds and the call is not connected, even if you dial up.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if "Ⓜ" appears (P.31).</li> <li>• Check if you enter the area code (P.48).</li> <li>• Check if you dial up in a hurry without hearing the ringing tone (P.48).</li> </ul>
"Ⓜ" is displayed and the busy tone sounds.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if you are outside of the service area or in a location with weak radio wave condition (P.31).</li> </ul>
Cannot place a call even if you press the keypad.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Self mode is set (P.123).</li> <li>• Check if the Key dial lock is set (P.124).</li> <li>• Check if the Lock key is set (P.125).</li> </ul>
The dark display appears and cannot operate anything.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the FOMA terminal is powered on (P.43).</li> <li>• Check if the Power saver mode is set (P.112).</li> <li>• Check if the Lock key is set (P.125).</li> </ul>
"Ⓜ" appears and cannot operate anything.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Lock key is set (P.125).</li> </ul>
The set stand-by display does not appear and the dark display appears.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Power saver mode is set (P.112).</li> </ul>
"Lock all" is displayed in the display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter the Security code and cancel the Lock all (P.121).</li> </ul>
The date is displayed in English.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Language is set to [English] (P114).</li> </ul>
Cannot receive a call or the ring tone does not sound.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Public mode (Driving mode) is set (P.62).</li> <li>• Check if the Ring volume is set to [OFF] (P.102).</li> <li>• Check if the Manner mode is set (P.107).</li> <li>• Check if the Lock all is set (P.121).</li> <li>• Check if the Self mode is set (P.123).</li> <li>• Check if the Accept/Reject call is set (P.127).</li> <li>• Check if the Denied no ID is set (P.128).</li> <li>• Check if the Set ring start time is set (P.128).</li> <li>• Check if the Reject unknown is set (P.129).</li> <li>• Check if the ring time of the Voice Mail/Call Forwarding Service is set to 0 seconds (P.280).</li> <li>• Check if the Caller ID Request is set (P.282).</li> <li>• Check if Mova is enabled for the Dual Network Service (P.282).</li> </ul>
The mail and alarm tones sound but the ring tone for an incoming call does not sound.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if a longer interval (such as 99 sec) is set at [Ring time] of the Set ring start time. Set it to a shorter interval (P.128).</li> </ul>
The mail tone sounds but there is no incoming mail.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Tone/Vibrate notice of the Voice Mail Service is set to [ON]. If it is ON, you are notified of the increase in the number of record messages by the ring tone (P.280).</li> </ul>

Trouble	Cause and Remedy
An image other than that you set is displayed for an incoming call.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If multiple images are set for the incoming image for voice/videophone call, the image is displayed in the following order of priority (P.92, 96, 103).               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Call image set in the Phonebook</li> <li>2. Call image set in the Group setting</li> <li>3. Incoming image set in the Incoming set</li> </ol>               When an i-motion with video and sound tracks is set for the incoming image and ring tone, however, the order of priority may vary.             </li> </ul>
A ring tone other than that you set sounds for an incoming call.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If multiple ring tones are set for voice/videophone call, the ring tone sounds in the following order of priority (P.92, 96, 103, 283).               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ring tone set in the Number Setting (when a call is placed to an Additional No. for the Multi Number)</li> <li>2. Des phone tone set in the Phonebook</li> <li>3. Des phone tone set in the Group setting</li> <li>4. Ring tone set in the Incoming set</li> </ol>               When an i-motion with video and sound tracks is set for the ring tone and incoming image, however, the order of priority may vary.             </li> </ul>
A ring tone other than that you set sounds for an incoming mail.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If multiple ring tones are set for mail, the ring tone sounds in the following order of priority (P.93, 96, 102).               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Des mail tone set in the Phonebook</li> <li>2. Des mail tone set in the Group setting</li> <li>3. Ring tone set in the Incoming set</li> </ol>               When an i-motion with video and sound tracks is set for the ring tone and incoming image, however, the order of priority may vary.             </li> </ul>
The incoming indicator in the color other than that you set lights for an incoming call or mail.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If multiple incoming indicators are set for voice call/videophone call/mail, the incoming indicator flashes in the following order of priority (P.93, 96, 102).               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select phone/mail Illum. set in the Phonebook</li> <li>2. Select phone/mail Illum. set in the Group setting</li> <li>3. Indicator color set in the Incoming set</li> </ol> </li> </ul>
The incoming indicator flashes in certain cycle.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Missed call is set to [ON] (P.113).</li> </ul>
The charge indicator stays lit.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if [Charging] of the Display light is set to [ON] (P.112). In this setting, it may take time to complete charging, but this is not a malfunction.</li> <li>• Check if the Power saver is set to [OFF] (P.112). In this setting, it may take time to complete charging, but this is not a malfunction.</li> <li>• Check if you use a function such as the videophone, data communications, and i-appli while charging the battery. In this case, it may take time to complete charging, but this is not a malfunction.</li> </ul>
The keypad sound is not heard.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Keypad sound volume is set to [OFF] (P.104).</li> <li>• Check if the Manner mode is set (P.107).</li> </ul>
The display is slow to react on pressing a key.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This may occur when a large amount of data is stored in the FOMA terminal.</li> </ul>
The Total calls cost does not increment.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It does not increment if the counter reaches the upper limit value (about ¥16,770,000) of total calls cost of UIM. Reset the counter to ¥0 (P.273).</li> </ul>

# Error Messages

- In some cases, a 3-digit number may be displayed together with a message. This is a DoCoMo own code that DoCoMo displays on the FOMA terminal.

## A

### Another function is active. Cannot activate this at the same time

- Another function that cannot be run simultaneously by multitasking is active. Quit the function, if it is not being used, and then retry the operation (P.267).

### Authentication failed

- Failed to verify the authentication password. Set the password so that it matches the one of the other device and perform the infrared communications again (P.262).
- The authentication type (one/all) does not match the one set for the other device. Set the same authentication type (one/all) on both party to exchange data using the infrared communications (P.262).

### Authentication type is not supported (401)

- Failed to connect to the site, etc. because of the unsupported authentication type.

## B

### Bookmark is full. Cannot save

- When the number of saved bookmarks has reached 200, multiple URLs scanned from QR codes cannot be saved as bookmarks at a time. Delete unnecessary bookmarks (P.167).

## C

### Cannot data decode

- You cannot play back the melody because it contains an error.

### Cannot display because of data error

- You cannot display the image attached to or inserted in the message because it contains an error.

### Cannot execute because of memory shortage

- Failed to execute the function because of insufficient memory.

### Cannot execute because of other tasks

- Failed to execute the function because another function that cannot be run simultaneously is active. Quit the function, if it is not being used, and then retry the operation (P.267).

### Cannot move because of other tasks

- Failed to move the movie/i-motion to the FOMA terminal because a call is still in progress. Retry the operation after disconnecting the call.

### Cannot read. You need to format

- The "Memory Stick Duo" is not formatted correctly. Format it using the FOMA terminal (P.255).

### Cannot save because of other tasks

- Failed to save the movie/i-motion to the FOMA terminal because a call is still in progress. Retry the operation after disconnecting the call.

### Cannot set during transmission

- Failed to set because of PushTalk communications in progress. Disconnect the communications and then retry the operation.

### Cannot set this call record

- You cannot set the phone number because this call record is for a call received without the caller's phone number.
- You cannot set the phone number because this call record is for a PushTalk call among several persons.

### Cannot support content

- Data that is not supported by the FOMA terminal is contained in the contents.

### Certificate is rejected (tampered)

- There are some problems with the certificate.

### Charge battery

- The battery level is low. Recharge the battery (P.40).

### Channel info retrieval failed

- Failed to obtain i-Channel information. Move to a location with better radio wave condition and retry the operation.

### Check SMS Center setting

- The incorrect host is set at the SMSC. Restore the host to "DoCoMo", the default setting at the time of purchase (P.222).

### Connection failed

- The host number set for the Host selection is incorrect. Restore the host number to "iモード", the default setting at the time of purchase (P.175).
- Failed to connect because of weak radio wave condition. Retry to connect from a place with better radio wave condition.
- Failed to connect to a line due to a network problem. Retry to connect after a while.
- Failed to connect to a line for some reason when placing a videophone call.

### Connection failed (403)

- Failed to connect to i-mode for some reason. Retry to connect (P.159).

### Connection failed (503)

- Failed to connect to a line due to a network problem. Retry to connect after a while.

**Connection failed (562)**

- Failed to connect to the i-mode center. Move to a location with better radio wave condition and retry the operation.

**Connection interrupted**

- Failed to obtain the i-mode data. Retry to obtain it.

**Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion**

- Failed to retrieve the data because its volume has exceeded the maximum size.

**Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion**

- Failed to retrieve the data because its volume has exceeded the maximum size.

**Continue using XXX (i-αppli name) and transmit data?**

- The number of times of communications has increased significantly within a certain period of time during running the i-αppli software.

**Could not move**

- Failed to move data because of error occurrence.

**Could not read**

- An error occurred while reading data from the FOMA terminal memory.

**Could not save**

- Failed to save the image.
- Failed to save the i-αppli software.
- Failed to save to the "Memory Stick Duo".
- Failed to receive data during the infrared communications or data communications with a PC.
- Failed to save the image or melody scanned by the bar code reader.

**D****Data in IC-card is full. Unable to download**

- Failed to download the data because the IC card is full of data.

**Data in IC-card is full. Unable to download. Delete some software?**

- This message appears if there is not enough memory available in the IC card when downloading an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli. Select [Yes] to display the names of the currently saved Osaifu-Keitai services and their sizes (in bytes) within the IC card. Select a service to be deleted after confirming the amount of shortage and execute the i-αppli to delete the service from within it.

**Data is wrong**

- Failed to play back music or image data included in the QR code because it is invalid.

**Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?**

- The number of times of communications has increased significantly within a certain period of time during running the i-αppli software.

**Dictionary data was found error**

- Some words failed to be saved because of an error in part of the dictionary data (successfully saved words can be used as the dictionary data).

**Download failed**

- Failed to download because of error occurrence.

**E****Error in image. Does not work correctly**

- The Flash movie cannot be played back due to memory shortage, etc.

**Error in IC card data**

- Failed to operate because data in the IC card contains an error.

**F****Final number exists**

- The "Memory Stick Duo" contains a file with the maximum number (999-9999), so no more files can be saved in it. Perform the Reset file No. or delete the images from the largest file numbers (P.148, 257).

**I****Ⓜ i-αppli stand-by display terminated due to security error**

- The i-αppli stand-by display was canceled since it has attempted an unauthorized operation. Check the security error history (P.232).

**i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later (555)**

- Any trouble on communication line equipment or extreme line congestion is encountered. Retry after a while.

**i-mode mail service is busy. Please try again later (553)**

- The line is extremely congested. Wait for a while and then retry the operation.

**Input error (205)**

- Incorrect input data. Check the input contents.

**Invalid Chara-den data**

- Failed to download or save Chara-den data because it contains an error.

**Invalid data (XXX)**

- You tried to connect to the site, etc. not supporting i-mode.
- The URL you entered may be invalid.
- Failed to display because of an error in the received data.

**Invalid data. Connection cannot be established (400)**

- The host number you set for the Host selection is incorrect. Restore the host number to "i ㊦ー㊦", the default setting at the time of purchase (P.175).

- Failed to connect to i-mode for some reason. Retry to connect (P.159).

#### **Invalid data. Data size is not supported (413)**

- You tried to connect to the site, etc. not supporting i-mode.
- The URL you entered may be invalid.

#### **Invalid melody data**

- Failed to download or save melody data because it contains an error.

#### **Invalid UIM, requested software failed to start**

- Failed to start the i-appli software due to the function for restricting UIM operation. Insert the UIM that was used when you retrieved the data or file, and then retry the operation (P.35).

#### **Invalid UIM. Requested service not available**

- Failed to perform the operation due to the function for restricting UIM operation. Insert the UIM that was used when you retrieved the data or file, and then retry the operation (P.35).

#### **Invalid URL**

- When you entered a URL, you did not enter "http://" or "https://", or entered it incorrectly. Enter the correct URL and retry the operation (P.164).
- Failed to display a link because the URL contains an error.

## **K**

#### **Keydial locked**

- The Key dial lock is set. Cancel the Key dial lock and then retry the operation (P.124).

## **M**

#### **Mail folder is used. Cannot activate this software**

- Failed to start the i-appli with mail software because the corresponding mail folder is already in use.

#### **Mail folders for this software is used. Unable to delete**

- Failed to delete the i-appli with mail software because the corresponding mail folder is already in use.

#### **Main memory shortage. Cannot be saved**

- An image you edit may not be saved because of insufficient memory on the FOMA terminal. Delete unnecessary images or move some images to the "Memory Stick Duo" (P.254, 257).

#### **Max entries already registered**

- The maximum number of data entries of the Data box has been saved already. Therefore, no more data can be saved. Delete unnecessary data (P.257).

#### **Memory shortage**

- The operation is interrupted because of insufficient memory.

#### **Memory shortage. Cancel operation**

- The operation is discontinued because of insufficient memory.

#### **Memory Stick error**

- Failed to access the "Memory Stick Duo" (loading error, etc.). Remove the "Memory Stick Duo" once and insert it again (P.251). If this message appears again, the "Memory Stick Duo" may be damaged.

#### **Menu cannot be displayed**

- Failed to display the menu because a function that does not support menu display is executed.

#### **Message in folder is full. Cannot create**

- The number of saved mail has reached 50 or there is not enough memory. Delete unnecessary saved mail (P.212).

#### **Message rejected and cannot be received**

- Failed to send SMS because SMS transmission is rejected.
- Failed to send SMS because the recipient rejects receiving SMS.

## **N**

#### **No content is available (204)**

- The site you specified contains no display data.

#### **No memory space**

- The number of entries saved in the Phonebook has reached 1,000. Delete unnecessary entries in the Phonebook (P.99).
- The number of saved schedules has reached 300. Delete unnecessary schedules (P.271).
- Failed to save the data. This message appears if there is not enough memory when you attempt to exchange data using the infrared communications.
- There is not enough memory to save new data. Delete unnecessary data (P.260).

#### **No more file number. Please reset**

- The file number which is attached to an image saved in the "Memory Stick Duo" has reached the maximum number (999-9999). Perform the Reset file No. or delete the images from the largest file numbers (P.148, 257).

#### **No Requested File (492)**

- The file you specified could not be located when you tried to obtain a still image exceeding 10,000 bytes.

#### **No requested software**

- The i-appli software to be started from the site or mail, or by the infrared communications is not stored in the FOMA terminal.

#### **No response**

- Failed to recognize the other device for the infrared communications. Check if the infrared data ports are pointed at each other correctly or if the other device operates properly (P.260).

#### **No response (408)**

- The communication is interrupted because there is no response from this site. Retry the operation after a while.

**No space in group of PushTalk phonebook**

- The number of groups saved in the PushTalk phonebook has reached 20. Delete unnecessary members from the PushTalk phonebook or execute the Group reset (P.86).

**No space in main memory**

- Another image recorded by the camera cannot be saved because of no memory to save it on the FOMA terminal. Change the Shoot mode or the image size, or delete unnecessary images (P.138, 142, 257).
- The remaining memory on the FOMA terminal is insufficient. Delete unnecessary data (P.99, 167, 212, 257, 271, 275).

**No space in Memory Stick**

- Another image recorded by the camera cannot be saved because of no vacant space to save it in the "Memory Stick Duo". Change the Shoot mode or the image size, or delete unnecessary images (P.138, 142, 257).
- The remaining memory in the "Memory Stick Duo" is insufficient. Delete unnecessary data (P.99, 167, 212, 242, 257, 271, 275).

**No space to attach file**

- Failed to attach the file because the total size of the characters in the mail main body and the file to be attached exceeds the limit.

**No space to attach signature**

- Failed to attach the signature because the total number of characters in the mail main body and signature exceeds 5,000 full-width or 10,000 half-width characters. Decrease the number of characters in the mail main body or send mail with no signature attached (P.193, 215).

**O****Other function is running. Cannot set**

- Failed to set because of other functions being executed. Quit the functions other than of the Settings menu, and then retry the operation (P.267).

**Out of service area**

- The i-mode services are not available since you are outside of the service area or in a location without the radio wave. Move to a location where "☎" disappears (P.31).

**P****Page is not found (404)**

- The site, etc. cannot be located. Check if the URL you entered is correct.

**Password is not correct (401)**

- Incorrect password. Enter a correct password.

**PIM locked**

- The PIM lock is set. Cancel the PIM lock and then retry the operation (P.123).

**PIN1 code blocked**

- The PIN1 code is locked. Cancel the PIN1 code lock and then retry the operation (P.119).

**Please wait**

- Extreme line congestion is encountered. Retry after a while. However, you can still place a call to 110, 119, or 118, with some exceptions depending on the situation.

**PUK blocked**

- The PUK code is locked. Contact the nearest DoCoMo shop (P.117).

**R****Receiving data exceeds maximum size for i-motion**

- Failed to retrieve the data because its volume has exceeded the maximum size.

**Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion**

- Failed to retrieve the data because its volume has exceeded the maximum size.

**Registration is in progress (554)**

- User registration of i-mode is in progress. Retry the operation after a while.

**Remotely Controllable services denied**

- You currently do not yet subscribe to services such as the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service that can be operated by remote control. To use the remote control, subscribe to services.

**Replay period has expired**

- This movie/i-motion is provided with a expiry date or a term limitation for playback. It cannot be played back because the term permitted for playback has expired. Check the expiry date in the Detail info display (P.258).

**Replay period has not yet started**

- This movie/i-motion is provided with a term limitation for playback. It cannot be played back because the term permitted for playback has not yet started. Check the starting date of the term in the Detail info display (P.258).

**Requested software unavailable**

- Failed to start the i-appli software stored in the FOMA terminal from a site or mail, or by infrared communications.

**Root certificate has expired. Connect?**

- The certificate of the FOMA terminal is not yet valid or has expired. Select [Yes] to connect or [No] to cancel to connect.
- This message may also appear when the current date and time are set wrong. Set them correctly (P.44).

**Root certificate is not valid**

- The SSL list is set to [Invalid]. Set the SSL list to [Valid] (P.180).

### Run software and delete data on IC card. Then delete software

- Failed to delete an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software because of some data being contained in the IC card. Delete the saved data after starting the software, and then retry the operation (P.231).

## S

### Server is full (551)

- When the number of mail held for the recipient at the i-mode center reaches the maximum number, no more mail sent to the recipient is accepted by the i-mode center. Try to send mail after the recipient makes space for new mail at the i-mode center (P.200).

### Service not provided

- SMS is not provided.

### Service not registered

- You do not have a subscription for the i-mode service. To use i-mode, subscribe to i-mode.
- If you signed up for i-mode after starting to use the FOMA terminal, power off the FOMA terminal once and then power it on again.

### Set the clock to obtain data

- You cannot obtain i-motion data because the date and time are not set yet. Set the date and time (P.44).

### Setting keyguard

- The Lock key is set. Cancel the Lock key and then retry the operation (P.125).

### Setting self mode

- The Self mode is set. Cancel the Self mode and then retry the operation (P.123).

### Software already updated

- Failed to run update because there is no update for the software.

### Software failed

- Failed to start the software because it cannot be checked by the server.

### Software for this folder deleted. Refer to submenu

- The i-αppli with mail software supporting the mail folder is deleted. Check the mail as regular mail or download the supporting software (P.212, 225).

### Software terminated due to security error

- The i-αppli software was terminated since it has attempted an unauthorized operation. Check the security error history (P.232).

### SSL session cannot be established

- The SSL session failed. Connect again.

### SSL session failed

- Failed to connect to the server because of a server authentication error.

### SSL session was terminated

- The SSL communications is disconnected because there is a problem with the certificate of the site.

## T

### Text volume exceeds. Cannot send

- The number of characters in the mail main body has exceeded the limit and mail cannot be sent. Reduce the number of characters.

### This certificate has expired. Connect?

- The certificate of the site is not yet valid or has expired. Select [Yes] to connect or [No] to cancel to connect.

### This certificate is not valid for this URL. Connect?

- The CN-Name (server name) of the certificate of the site does not match the actual server name. Select [Yes] to connect or [No] to cancel to connect.

### This data can no longer be replayed

- This movie/i-motion is provided with a limitation on the number of times of playback. It cannot be played back because the number of times permitted for playback has been exceeded. Check the permitted number of times in the Detail info display (P.258).

### This data cannot played

- This movie/i-motion is disabled for playback.

### This data may not be replayed

- You may not be able to play back this i-motion data because it is invalid.

### This function is unavailable

- The function you selected cannot be used simultaneously with the currently operating function (P.267).

### This M.S. is not supported

- The "Memory Stick Duo" inserted is not supported by the FOMA terminal. Insert the "Memory Stick Duo" which is compatible with the FOMA terminal (P.251).

### This site is not certified. Connect?

- The certificate of the site is not supported by the FOMA terminal. Select [Yes] to connect or [No] to cancel to connect.

### This software is not supported by this phone

- The software you want to download or upgrade does not support the FOMA terminal.

### This software contains an error

- Failed to download or upgrade because information required for it is not set on the i-αppli software.

### This software contains an error. Unable to download

- Failed to download because of an error in the software data.

### This software is currently unavailable for use

- IP (information service providers) stopped the use of the i-αppli software. Contact IP.

### This UIM cannot be recognized

- Make sure that the correct UIM is inserted (P.35).
- The UIM contains an error. Contact our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.).

### Time out

- Failed to connect within the time set for the Connection timeout. Change the setting or retry to connect after a while (P.174).

### Too many active functions. Cannot activate

- You cannot execute the selected function because of too many functions being executed by multitasking. Quit a currently executed function and retry the operation (P.267).

### Too many active functions. Cannot execute. Quit other function and retry

- You cannot execute a selected function because of insufficient memory. Quit a currently executed function and retry the operation (P.267).

### Too much data was entered

- Failed to send because of too many characters. Reduce the number of characters and try to send again.

### Transmission failed

- An error occurred while sending mail. Make sure that "☒%" is not displayed and send it again. If the message appears again, retry to send after a while (P.200).
- The address of SMS is incorrect. Enter the correct address (phone number) and send again (P.220).

### Transmission failed (552)

- Failed to connect to a line due to a problem at the i-mode or SMS center. Retry to connect after a while.

## U

### UIM is full

- The number of SMS saved in the UIM has reached the maximum number. Delete unnecessary SMS (P.212).

### Unable to display version info

- Failed to display the version because of error occurrence.

### Unable to download data

- Failed to obtain the ToruCa(detail) card because of error occurrence.

### Unable to download ToruCa

- Failed to obtain or save ToruCa data because it contains an error.

### Unable to download. Data exceeds maximum size (452)

- Failed to receive because the data to be received, including the site data, exceeds the maximum size.

### Unable to download. Ready to cancel?

- The software update was canceled because of the download failure. Move to a location with better radio wave condition and retry the operation after a while (P.329).

### Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error

- Failed to obtain the i-motion because of an error in the playback restriction data.

### Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)

- Failed to connect to the site for some reason. Retry to connect.

### Unable to update pattern definitions

- Failed to update pattern definitions because of error occurrence.

### Unable to view file. Access to URL is limited (491)

- The number of times of access has exceeded a predetermined number when you tried to obtain a still image exceeding 10,000 bytes.

### URL address changed (301)

- The site has moved and no longer uses this URL.

### URL is too long to register

- Failed to save the site as a bookmark because the URL exceeds 256 half-width characters (P.165).

### Usage is currently restricted. Try again later

- Users of the flat-rate i-mode packet service may not be able to connect during certain hours because of sharp increase in communications traffic. In this case, wait for a while until you can use i-mode.

### Using data in IC card. Cannot overwrite

- Failed to overwrite because data in the IC card is being used.

## W

### Writing error. Read only from now

- When the "Memory Stick Duo" is worn down, the data may not be written or deleted. Use a new "Memory Stick Duo".

## Y

### Your HTTP version is not supported (505)

- You tried to connect to the site, etc. not supporting i-mode.

## Symbol

### αerror

- An error occurred while running the i-αpli software. Start to run again or check the error history (P.232).

### 同時に通話できる人数4人を超えて いません (The number of concurrent participants exceeds the limit of 4)

- Up to four persons can communicate simultaneously in a PushTalk session. Originate a PushTalk call to less than five members (P.86).

# Warranty and After Sales Services

## Warranty

Make sure that the warranty is received with the FOMA terminal upon purchase.

Check to be sure that the name of the retailer, date of purchase, and other items have been filled out on the warranty before storing it in a safe place. If any necessary information is not provided, immediately contact the retailer and request to complete the warranty. The FOMA terminal comes with a year's free warranty starting from the date of purchase.

Specifications of this product and its accessories are subject to change for improvement without prior notice.

Data saved in the Phonebook or other memory locations may be changed/lost due to the trouble/repairs or handling of the FOMA terminal. Note down the data in the Phonebook or other memory locations on a separate memo and keep it safely to prevent such problems. When the FOMA terminal is replaced due to trouble, the information downloaded using i-mode and i-appli are not transferred to the new FOMA terminal because of copyright laws, with some exceptions.

This FOMA terminal allows you to save data such as in the Phonebook to an external memory.

If you have a PC (Windows Me, Windows 2000, or Windows XP), you can use the dedicated Data Link Software and the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) (or the dedicated Data Link Cable (optional)) to transfer data such as saved in the Phonebook of the FOMA terminal for storage on the PC.

## After Sales Services

### If you have problems with the FOMA terminal...

Before requesting for repairs, refer to the "Troubleshooting" section of this manual to see if the problem can be remedied (P.319).

If the FOMA terminal still malfunctions, call the "Contact for Repair" on the backcover of this manual.

If repair is required resultingly

Bring the FOMA terminal to the DoCoMo repair handling service counter. However, it must be taken during business hours of the DoCoMo repair handling service counter. Make sure to bring a warranty card with the product when you visit the shop.

### Within the warranty period

- We repair the FOMA terminal free of charge based on the terms documented in the warranty.
- When requesting a repair, make sure to bring the warranty card with the FOMA terminal. Repair requests that are not accompanied by the warranty or that involve malfunction and damage due to incorrect handling by the owner will only be repaired at the owner's expense, even if the warranty period is still effective.
- Malfunction due to use of devices and consumable parts other than those specified by DoCoMo will only be repaired at the owner's expense, even if the warranty period is still effective.

### Note that repair may be refused in the following cases.

We may not repair the FOMA terminal if the water leak seal is reacted or if the FOMA terminal has corrosion due to water leakage, condensation, perspiration, etc. or if the internal circuit board is damaged or deformed. Even if repair is possible, it will be done at the owner's expense, as this type of corrosion or damage is not covered by the warranty.

### If the warranty period expires

We will repair the FOMA terminal at the owner's expense.

### Parts stock period

The functional parts necessary to repair the FOMA terminal will be basically available for a minimum of six years after the manufacture is discontinued. However, depending on the fault location, note that repair may not be possible because of a shortage of repair parts. Repair may be possible, depending on the malfunction, even if the stock period has expired. For more information, call the "Contact for Repair" on the backcover of this manual.

## Precautions

Never modify the FOMA terminal or accessories.

- Doing so may result in fire, injuries or malfunctions.
- The technical standards of the FOMA terminal and UIM are stipulated by law and standards to prevent radio interference and network malfunctions. FOMA terminals or UIM that do not satisfy the technical standards must not be used.
- Modified FOMA terminal may be repaired only if all the modified parts (replacement of parts, modification, paint, etc.) are restored to the original conditions (DoCoMo Standard Parts). Note that repairs of the phone may be refused depending on the modifications.
- Malfunction and damage due to modifications will be repaired at the owner's expense, even if the warranty period is still effective.

The model sticker must not be removed from the FOMA terminal.

The model sticker certifies that the FOMA terminal satisfies technical standards. It should be noted that if the sticker is removed or is replaced with a different sticker, and the original model sticker cannot be verified, it may disqualify the unit from repairs due to not being able to determine the technical standards of that particular phone.

Note that the ON/OFF settings, total call charges, and other information may be reset (cleared) as a result of malfunction, repair or other handling. In this case, make the settings again.

A part that generates a magnetic field is used for the earpiece and speaker of the FOMA terminal. Do not hold an object that is easily affected by magnetism, such as a cash card, close to the FOMA terminal. You may not be able to use the card any more.

If the phone has gotten wet or moist, immediately power off the phone and remove the battery pack from the phone, and then bring the phone to the DoCoMo repair handling service counter as soon as possible. However, note that we may not repair the phone depending on the extent of the damage.

## Precautions on Memory Dial (Phonebook Function) and Downloaded Data

It is strictly recommended to back up all the data you have saved in the mobile phone on other recording media. DoCoMo shall have no liability for any change or loss of the data.

Note that data you created or data you retrieved or downloaded from sources other than your mobile phone may be changed or lost when you change the model or have repairs done to the mobile phone. DoCoMo shall have no liability for any change or loss of any kind. Under some circumstances, DoCoMo may replace your mobile phone with its equivalent instead of repairing it. In that case, the data saved in the mobile phone, with some exceptions, cannot be transferred to the new one.

When this FOMA terminal is replaced, the images/melodies for incoming calls that you downloaded from the i-mode official site can be transferred to a new terminal. (However, depending on the contents and seriousness of the trouble, data cannot be transferred to a new terminal.)

## Updating the Software

This function allows you to check whether the software update is necessary for the FOMA terminal and if necessary, download a part of the software using packet communications to update the software.

No packet communications charge is required for updating software.

If the software update is necessary, we inform of it on DoCoMo's home page and in “お知らせ&ヘルプ” (Information & Help) accessible from i Menu.

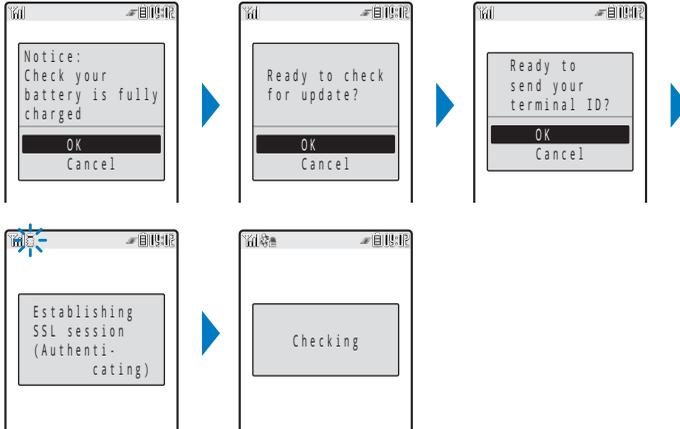
You can use one of the two update types: “Now update” or “Reserve” to update the software.

Now update	Update the software immediately at any time you want.
Reserve	Reserve a date/time you want to update the software. The software update starts automatically at the reserved date and time.

- You can update the software even if the Host selection is set to other than [i-mode(UIM)].
- Before updating the software, be sure to fully charge the battery pack of the FOMA terminal.
- You cannot update the software in the following cases:
  - When the date and time of the FOMA terminal are not set correctly
  - When “外” is displayed
  - While the Lock all is set
  - While the Key dial lock is set (Update by Reserve is available.)
  - When the battery level is low
  - When another function is being used
  - When the FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC
  - During a call
  - While the Self mode is set
  - While the PIM lock is set
  - When the UIM is not inserted
- It may take time to update (download and rewrite) the software in some cases.
- The Alarm and Schedule alarm do not operate while updating the software.
- If the SW Update is executed when the PIN1 code setting is set to [ON], the PIN1 code input screen appears at an automatic restart after rewriting software. If you do not enter a correct PIN1 code, you cannot place/receive a call or perform various communications.
- You cannot use other functions of the FOMA terminal while updating the software (you can receive a voice call while downloading the software).
- The FOMA terminal uses SSL communications with the DoCoMo server to update the software. Before starting update, set the SSL list to [Valid] (Default: [Valid]) (P.180).
- It is recommended to update the software under strong radio wave condition with 3-antenna marks displayed and not to move the FOMA terminal while updating the software.

When the weakening of the radio wave occurs while downloading the software or the download is interrupted for any reason, perform the software update again in a location of good radio wave condition.
- If no new update is available, the message “No update is needed. Please continue to use as before” appears when you check the necessity of the update.
- After updating the software, icons that notify you about mail/messages stored at the i-mode center disappears. When the Receive option setting is [ON], the screen notifying you of new mail may not be displayed after completion of the update if there is new mail while updating the software.
- When you update the software, your mobile phone-specific information (such as model and manufacturer's serial number) is automatically sent to the server (server for updating the software under DoCoMo's supervision). DoCoMo will not use the information sent from your mobile phone for any purposes other than to update the software.
- Never remove the battery pack while updating the software. The software update may fail if you do so.
- The software update can be made with data, such as Phonebook entries, images recorded by the camera and downloaded data, remaining in the mobile phone. However, note that the safety of the data may not be assured depending on the conditions of the mobile phone (e.g. malfunction, damage and exposure to water). It is recommended to make a backup copy of important data (some data such as downloaded data may be protected from backup copy).
- When the software update fails, the message “Rewrite failed” appears and no further operation is possible. In this case, please bring the FOMA terminal to the nearest DoCoMo repair handling service counter.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Management] [SW Update] and press . The Security code screen appears.
- 2 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).
  - The Security code is masked by "\*\*\*\*".
  - The Security code is set to "0000" at the time of purchase.
- 3 Confirm the messages.



The FOMA terminal starts SSL communications to check whether the software update is necessary.

- 4 If necessary, select the timing to start update and press .



**[Now update]** : Start updating the software. The software update may not be completed successfully if the server is busy.

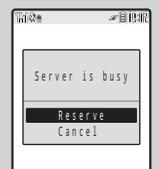
**[Reserve]** : Reserve a date/time to start the software update.

**[Cancel]** : Do not start updating the software.

**When the message informing there is no need to update the software appears**

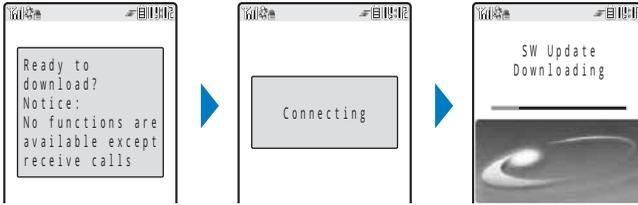
You do not need to update the software. Continue to use the FOMA terminal without updating.

When the server is busy, the screen to the right appears. To reserve, select [Reserve] and set a date/time for the update.



## Updating the Software Immediately (Now update)

- 1 From the screen for selecting the update type, select [Now update] and press , then press  (OK).



After a while, the software download starts.

- When downloading starts, step 2 and step 3 are performed automatically (no need to operate).

### To cancel the download

Press  (Cancel) while downloading.

- If you stop the download before it is completed, the data downloaded up until this point is deleted.

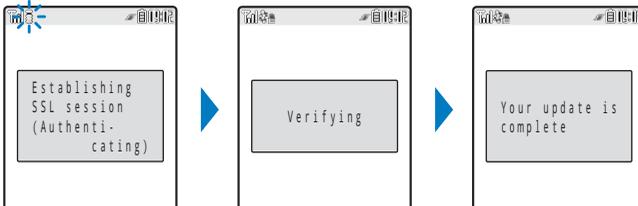
- 2 After the download is completed, press  (OK).



The software rewriting starts. After rewriting is completed, the FOMA terminal is restarted automatically.

- While the software is being rewritten, all key operations are disabled. You even cannot stop the update operation.

- 3 After completion of restart, confirm the completion of the update and press  (OK).



After restarted, the FOMA terminal automatically connects to the server. It takes some time.

When you did not confirm the update result on the screen in step 3, "🔄" (Update complete) appears in the stand-by display. If there is any information that you must confirm, "🔍" (Check for update) appears. The icon and message disappear after you check the notification information by selecting the icon.

## Reserving a Date/Time for the Software Update (Reserve)

If downloading takes too long or the server is congested, you can connect to the server and preset a date/time to start the software update.

Example: Reserving the software update on August 11 (Fri) 1:05 a.m.

- 1 From the screen for selecting the update type, select [Reserve] and press .



The FOMA terminal connects to the server and displays a list of reservation choices.

- When reserving the software update, the time set on the server is displayed.

### To select another date/time

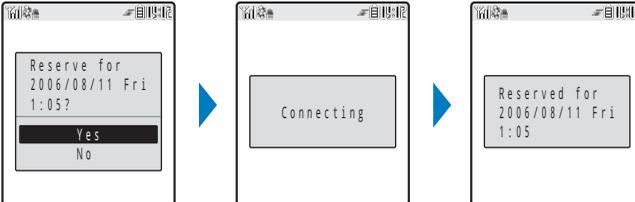
Press  (Others) and select the preferred date, time slot, and time. You can confirm vacant time slot available for reservation in the Preferred-time slot display as follows:

" " : Available", " " : Almost full", or " x " : Full".

### To cancel the reservation operation

Press  (Cancel).

- 2 Select the date/time to be reserved [Yes] and press .



The FOMA terminal connects to the server and completes the reservation.

## When the Reserved Time Comes



The FOMA terminal automatically starts the software update.

- Before the reserved time comes, turn the FOMA terminal to the stand-by display and place it in a location of good radio wave condition.

The software update may not start if another function is being used when the reserved time comes.

When the Alarm/Schedule alarm is set to start at the same time as the reserved time, the software update has priority and the alarm may not sound.

If you execute the Delete all data or leave the FOMA terminal with the battery pack removed or fully expended for a long period of time after you complete the reservation, the date and time is reset, and the software update does not start even if the reserved time comes. Perform the reservation again.

## Confirming the Reservation

1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Management] [SW Update] and press . The Security code screen appears.

2 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).



If the software update is already reserved, the reserved information appears.

### To change the reservation

Select [Change] [OK]. The FOMA terminal connects to the server and you can select another date/time.

### To cancel the reservation

Select [Cancel] [Yes] [OK]. The FOMA terminal connects to the server and cancels the reservation.

## Protecting Your Mobile Phone from Harmful Data

At first, update the pattern definitions to get the latest definitions.

You can detect information related to the data and programs loaded into the FOMA terminal from an external source, such as data downloaded from a site or i-mode mail, and delete data or end the start-up of application that can cause a trouble.

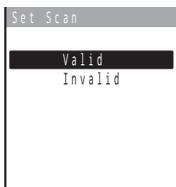
- Use the pattern definitions for checking. Since the pattern definitions are upgraded every time a new problem is discovered, be sure to update the definitions (P.334).
- The scanning function provides explicit protection against intrusive data that causes mobile phone trouble while you are viewing a website or receiving mail. Note that if the pattern definitions corresponding to each trouble are not downloaded to the mobile phone, or if there are no pattern definitions corresponding to each trouble, this function cannot prevent the trouble occurrences.
- The contents of the pattern definitions vary depending on the model of your mobile phone. Note that the distribution of pattern definitions for models released more than three years ago may be discontinued at our company's discretion.

## Setting the Scanning Function

You can set whether to automatically check data and programs when they are executed.

- The scanning function is set to [Valid] at the time of purchase.

1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Management] [Scan function] [Set Scan] and press .



[Valid] : Execute the scanning function. If data that can cause a trouble is detected, a warning is displayed in five levels.

[Invalid] : Do not execute the scanning function.

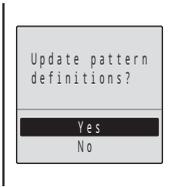
2 Select [Valid] and press .

When you change the setting

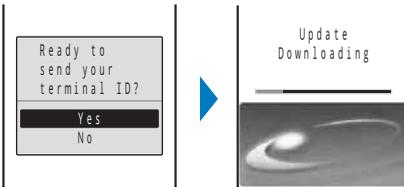
Select [Yes].

## Updating the Pattern Definitions

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Management] [Scan function] [Update] and press .



- 2 Select [Yes] [Yes] and press .



### When the pattern definitions are the latest available

There is no need to update the pattern definitions. Use them as is.

When you update the pattern definitions, your mobile phone-specific information (such as model and manufacturer's serial number) is automatically sent to the server (server for the scanning function under DoCoMo's supervision). DoCoMo will not use the information sent from your mobile phone for any purposes other than the scanning function.

You cannot update the pattern definitions in the following cases:

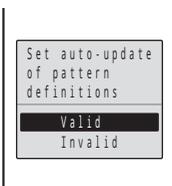
- When the date/time is not set
- When "GSM" is displayed
- During a call
- While the Self mode is set
- While the Lock all is set
- While the PIM lock is set
- While the Key dial lock is set
- When the UIM is not inserted
- When another function is being used
- When the FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC

If you cancel the downloading operation before it is completed, the data downloaded until this point is deleted.

## Setting Whether Pattern Definitions Are Automatically Updated

You can set whether to update the pattern definitions automatically.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Management] [Scan function] [Auto-update setting] and press .



[Valid] : Update the pattern definitions automatically.

[Invalid] : Do not update the pattern definitions automatically.

- 2 Select [Valid] [Yes] [Yes] and press .

The Auto-update setting is set.

If the Auto-update setting is set to [Valid], "🔄" (Update completed) appears in the stand-by display when the pattern definitions update is completed. If the pattern definitions were not updated successfully, "🔄" (Update definitions) appears. Confirm the information by selecting the icon to clear the notification.

If you leave the FOMA terminal with the battery pack removed or fully expended for a long period of time, the date and time is reset, and the Auto-update may not operate correctly.

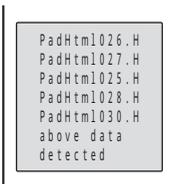
## About the Scanning Result Indication

If data that can cause a trouble is detected, the warning display appears.

### Scanning result indication

Warning level 0	Warning level 1	Warning level 2	Warning level 3	Warning level 4
				
The operation is continued.	Confirms whether you want to stop the operation.	Stops the operation.	Confirms whether you want to stop the operation and delete the target data.	Stops the operation and deletes the target data.

### Display of detected error factors



When you press  (Detail) in the warning display, the title of the error factor appears.

- If six or more error factors are detected, the titles of the sixth and later error factors are omitted.

## Displaying the Pattern Definition Version

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] [Management] [Scan function] [Definition version] and press .



## SAR Certification Information

This model phone FOMA SO902iWP + meets the MIC's\* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)\*\* averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP\*\*\*. All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.857 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO): <http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>

ICNIRP: <http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC: <http://www.soumu.go.jp/english/index.html>

TELEC: [http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/index\\_e.htm](http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/index_e.htm)

NTT DoCoMo: <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (Japanese only)

Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc.:

<http://www.SonyEricsson.co.jp/product/SAR/> (Japanese only)

\* Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

\*\* The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

\*\*\* International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

## Export Controls and Regulations

This product and its accessories are covered and controlled by Japan's export control regulations ("Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Law" and related laws and regulations). If you wish to export this product and/or its accessories, you must complete the necessary procedures at your own responsibility and cost. Detailed information on the procedure, contact the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry.

# Index/Quick Manual

Index .....	338
Quick Manual .....	349

# Index

## A

AC adapter ..... 39  
Acpt/Rjct call ..... 127  
Active holder ..... 41  
Additional service ..... 284  
    Add answer wording ..... 284  
    Register USSD ..... 284  
Adjust light ..... 111  
After sales services ..... 327  
Alarm  
    Alarm (clock) ..... 268  
    Cost limit notice ..... 273  
    Schedule alarm ..... 270  
Alarm (clock) ..... 268  
Alert time ..... 103  
Animation setting ..... 110  
Antenna ..... 31  
Any key ans ..... 59  
Application ..... 275  
Arrival Call Act ..... 283  
AT commands ..... 288  
Authentication password ..... 260  
Auto answer ..... 277  
Auto detect ..... 176  
Auto reset ..... 273  
AV Phone To function ..... 172

## B

Backlight ..... 111  
Bar code reader ..... 149  
    Add bookmark ..... 150  
    Add to phonebook ..... 150  
    Delete ..... 150  
    Protect ON/OFF ..... 150  
    Saved data ..... 150  
    Scan ..... 149  
Battery level ..... 40  
Battery pack ..... 37  
    Battery time ..... 39  
    Charge ..... 39  
BC reader ..... 149  
Bookmark  
    Add bookmark ..... 165  
    Copy ..... 165  
    Delete ..... 167  
    Display ..... 165  
    Edit folder ..... 166  
    Edit title ..... 165

Move ..... 166  
Use ..... 165

## C

Cache ..... 159  
Calculator ..... 274  
Calendar ..... 109, 269  
Calendar/Clock ..... 109  
Call display ..... 111  
Call Forwarding Service ..... 281  
Call menu ..... 53  
Call Waiting Service ..... 281  
Call with ID/Call with no ID ..... 52  
Caller ID Display Request Service  
    ..... 282  
Camera ..... 132  
    Adjust EV ..... 143  
    Adjust zoom ..... 143  
    Attach to mail ..... 136, 139, 140  
    Auto save ..... 148  
    Auto timer ..... 142  
    Bar code reader ..... 149  
    Camera mode ..... 132  
    Continuous mode ..... 137  
    Delete ..... 140  
    Display images ..... 140  
    Display light ..... 112  
    Estimated number of recordable  
    images ..... 133  
    Estimated recording time of  
    movie ..... 134  
    File name ..... 133  
    File size ..... 147  
    Guide display ..... 136  
    Icons ..... 135  
    Image quality ..... 146  
    Macro mode ..... 137  
    Photo light ..... 141  
    Photometry ..... 144  
    Pict. Effect ..... 144  
    Record a movie ..... 139  
    Record still images ..... 136  
    Reset all ..... 145  
    Reset file No. .... 148  
    Scene ..... 140  
    Select save to ..... 148  
    Select size ..... 142  
    Shoot mode ..... 146  
    Shoot with frame ..... 138

Shutter sound ..... 147  
Switch camera ..... 141  
White balance ..... 145  
Certificates ..... 159, 180, 226  
Change mail address ..... 188  
Characters assigned to keys .... 303  
Chara-den ..... 249  
    Action input mode ..... 75  
    Action list ..... 75, 249  
    Call Chara-den ..... 75, 250  
    Change action ..... 75, 250  
    Delete ..... 257  
    Detail info ..... 258  
    DTMF send mode ..... 75  
    Insufficient memory ..... 260  
    Property ..... 258  
    Set Chara-den ..... 250  
    Set sub image ..... 250  
    Sort ..... 257  
Charge ..... 39  
    Charge sound ..... 104  
    Charging time ..... 38  
    Display light ..... 112  
    Image ..... 110  
Check new messages ..... 178, 201  
    Animation setting ..... 110  
    i-mode inquiry set ..... 216  
Check new SMS ..... 221  
    Animation setting ..... 110  
Chg. to videophone ..... 50  
Color ..... 103  
Common phrases ..... 292  
    List of Common phrases ..... 306  
    Save ..... 292  
Compose message ..... 193  
Compose SMS ..... 220  
Confirm settings ..... 188  
Copy ..... 293  
Cost limit notice ..... 273  
Country code ..... 53  
Cursor ..... 30  
Cut ..... 293

## D

Data box ..... 256  
    Chara-den ..... 249  
    i-motion ..... 247  
    Melody ..... 250  
    My document ..... 263

My picture .....	244
<b>Data communications</b> .....	<b>286</b>
AT commands .....	288
Definition of terms .....	287
Preparations .....	288
<b>Data link software</b> .....	<b>317</b>
<b>Date/time</b> .....	<b>44</b>
<b>DC adapter</b> .....	<b>40</b>
<b>DCF standard</b> .....	<b>252</b>
<b>Deco-mail</b> .....	<b>191</b>
Compose message .....	195
Deco. slcted txt .....	197
Decorate mail .....	196
List of templates .....	308
Templates .....	198
<b>Delete all data</b> .....	<b>277</b>
List of reset items .....	278, 296
<b>Denied no ID</b> .....	<b>128</b>
<b>Desktop holder</b> .....	<b>40</b>
<b>Dial frequency record</b> .....	<b>51</b>
<b>Dictionary</b>	
Download .....	294
Save .....	293
<b>Differences in UIM functions</b> .....	<b>36</b>
<b>Display</b> .....	<b>30</b>
Backlight .....	111
Guide display .....	32, 110, 136
Notification display .....	32
Select theme .....	112
Soft key .....	110
<b>Display light</b> .....	<b>112</b>
<b>Display sites</b> .....	<b>159</b>
<b>Dlt max cost icon</b> .....	<b>274</b>
<b>Download</b>	
Chara-den .....	171
Dictionary .....	171
Graphics .....	170
i-melody .....	171
i-motion .....	183
i-appli .....	225
PDF data .....	171
Template .....	171
ToruCa .....	171
<b>Dual Network Service</b> .....	<b>282</b>

## E

<b>Earphone mic</b> .....	<b>276</b>
Auto answer .....	277
Earphone .....	106
Earphone SW .....	276
Place a call .....	276
Receive a call .....	276

<b>Earphone setting</b> .....	<b>106, 276, 277</b>
<b>Earphone SW</b> .....	<b>276</b>
<b>Easy search</b> .....	<b>4</b>
<b>Edit movie</b> .....	<b>248</b>
Movie clipping .....	248
Photo clipping .....	248
Select size .....	249
<b>Edit photo</b> .....	<b>245</b>
Frame .....	245
Image stamp .....	245
Rotate .....	247
Select size .....	247
Text stamp .....	246
Zoom&trim .....	246
<b>Edit prediction</b> .....	<b>294</b>
<b>Edit user</b> .....	<b>294</b>
<b>English Guidance Service</b> .....	<b>282</b>
<b>Error messages</b> .....	<b>321</b>
<b>EV-Link</b> .....	<b>275</b>
<b>Export controls and regulations</b> ...	<b>336</b>

## F

<b>Face marks</b> .....	<b>305</b>
<b>FeliCa</b> .....	<b>238</b>
IC card lock .....	242
Osaifu-Keitai .....	238
Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-appli ...	224
<b>FeliCa sign</b> .....	<b>239</b>
<b>FirstPass</b> .....	<b>180</b>
<b>Flash</b> .....	<b>162</b>
Sound effect .....	105
<b>FOMA card</b> .....	<b>35</b>
<b>FOMA card phonebook</b> .....	<b>90</b>
<b>FOMA terminal phonebook</b> .....	<b>90</b>
<b>Font size</b> .....	<b>114</b>
<b>Four-way keys</b> .....	<b>30</b>
<b>Function for restricting UIM</b>	
operation .....	36
<b>Function menu</b> .....	<b>34</b>

## G

<b>Go to location</b> .....	<b>164</b>
<b>Guide display</b> .....	<b>32, 110, 136</b>

## H

<b>Handling precautions</b> .....	<b>20</b>
<b>Hands-free</b> .....	<b>48, 57</b>
<b>Holding</b> .....	<b>61</b>
<b>Host selection</b> .....	<b>182</b>

## I

<b>i Menu</b> .....	<b>158</b>
<b>i appli history</b> .....	<b>232</b>
Auto start err hist .....	232
Security err hist .....	232
Stand-by err hist .....	232
Trace result .....	232
<b>i appli setting</b> .....	<b>226, 230, 275</b>
i appli To .....	227
<b>i-anime</b> .....	<b>156</b>
<b>IC card</b> .....	<b>238</b>
IC card lock .....	242
Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-appli ...	224
<b>IC card content</b> .....	<b>239</b>
<b>i-Channel</b> .....	<b>234</b>
i-Channel list .....	235
Receive .....	235
Sound effect .....	105
Ticker .....	109
<b>Icon</b> .....	<b>30, 135</b>
<b>Icon setting</b> .....	<b>113</b>
<b>i-melody</b> .....	<b>156, 171</b>
<b>i-mode</b> .....	<b>152</b>
Add to phonebook .....	205
Auto detect .....	176
Auto-display .....	177
Bookmark .....	165
Cache .....	161
Change i-mode password ...	163
Connection timeout .....	174
Display img .....	176
Display light .....	112
Display sites .....	153, 159
Display the previous/next page ...	161
Download .....	171
Font size .....	114
Go to location .....	164
Host selection .....	175, 182
i-mode Arrival Act .....	174
i-mode menu .....	159
My Menu .....	163
Reload .....	160
Save backgnd img .....	170
Save image .....	170
Screen memo .....	168
Sound effect .....	105
SSL list .....	180
SSL page .....	159
Terminate/Disconnect .....	162
URL .....	161
URL address .....	164
URL list .....	164

Use phone info .....	176	Save insert img .....	207	Bar code reader .....	232
Use sites .....	160	Save to M.S. ....	254	Camera function .....	232
User certificate .....	180	Secret code .....	92, 188	Certificates .....	226
Word translate .....	162	Sort .....	213	Delete .....	231
<b>i-mode bookmark .....</b>	<b>264</b>	Sort inbox .....	214	Download .....	225
Add i-mode bkmk .....	264	<b>i-mode menu .....</b>	<b>158</b>	Edit folder .....	231
Delete .....	264	<b>i-mode password .....</b>	<b>117</b>	i-appli setting .....	227
Edit title .....	264	Change .....	163	Individual set .....	227
i-mode bkmk list .....	264	<b>i-mode setting .....</b>	<b>174, 275</b>	Infrared communications .....	232
<b>i-mode FeliCa .....</b>	<b>238</b>	<b>i-motion .....</b>	<b>184, 247</b>	Insufficient memory .....	260
IC card lock .....	242	Attach to mail .....	248	Move .....	231
Osaifu-Keitai .....	238	Change display .....	258	NW setting .....	227
Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-appli .....	224	Change screen .....	248	Preinstalled software .....	228
<b>i-mode mail .....</b>	<b>187</b>	Continuous play .....	247	Run .....	226
Add attach file .....	199	Delete .....	257	Saved data .....	224
Add receiver .....	194	Detail info .....	258	Soft description .....	226
Add to phonebook .....	205	Display light .....	112	Software setting .....	225
Animation setting .....	110	Download .....	184	Stand-by display .....	230
Attached file set .....	219	Edit folder .....	257	Stand-by NW setting .....	227
Brows mail mode .....	212	Edit movie .....	248	Start automatically .....	230
Call back .....	276	Folder info .....	258	ToruCa .....	232
Check new messages .....	203	i-motion setting .....	184	Upgrade .....	231
Clear Recv ranking .....	219	Infrared communications .....	262	Use icons .....	227
Clear Send ranking .....	219	Insufficient memory .....	260	<b>i-appli DX .....</b>	<b>224</b>
Compose and send .....	193	Move .....	257	Change tone/img .....	227
Confirm melody .....	207	Play .....	247	Phonebook/Record .....	227
Deco-mail .....	195	Property .....	258	Saved data .....	224
Delete .....	212	Save attached .....	207	Use icons .....	227
Display .....	208	Save to M.S. ....	254	<b>i-appli stand-by display .....</b>	<b>230</b>
Dlt attach file .....	200, 207	Sort .....	257	<b>i-appli To function .....</b>	<b>173</b>
Dur multi task disp .....	218	Stand-by display .....	248	<b>i-appli with mail .....</b>	<b>224, 226</b>
Edit folder .....	210	<b>i-motion mail .....</b>	<b>191</b>	Brows mail mode .....	212
Edit signature/Signature .....	215	<b>In-call Arrival Act .....</b>	<b>283</b>		
Font size .....	114	<b>Incoming image .....</b>	<b>103</b>		
Forward .....	204	<b>Incoming set .....</b>	<b>102</b>		
i-mode inquiry set .....	216	<b>Information on using the manual and</b>			
i-motion mail .....	191	<b>how to look up in the manual .....</b>	<b>1</b>		
Incoming set .....	102	<b>Infrared communications ..</b>	<b>260, 262</b>		
Insert img info .....	207	Authentication password .....	260		
Mail list .....	194, 217	Available data .....	261		
Mail menu .....	193	Infrared remote control .....	263		
Melody auto play .....	218	Receive .....	262		
Memory status .....	213	Send .....	262		
Move .....	211	<b>Init. Setting .....</b>	<b>43</b>		
Protect ON/OFF .....	211	<b>Input method ....</b>	<b>274, 292, 293, 294</b>		
Quote .....	203	<b>Intellectual property right .....</b>	<b>24</b>		
Rcv opt setting .....	216	<b>International call .....</b>	<b>54</b>		
Receive .....	202	Font size .....	114		
Receive option .....	202	<b>Int'l call .....</b>	<b>53</b>		
Reply .....	203	<b>Int'l dial .....</b>	<b>55</b>		
Save .....	201	<b>i-shot mail .....</b>	<b>190</b>		
Save address .....	205	<b>i-appli .....</b>	<b>224</b>		
Save attached .....	207	Auto start .....	230		

## J

JAN code .....	149
----------------	-----

## K

Key dial lock .....	124
Keypad light .....	111
Keypad sound .....	104
Kuten codes .....	293
List of kuten codes .....	309

## L

Language .....	114
Last call cost .....	273
Last call duration .....	273
Limit mail size .....	188
Line feed .....	303
List of default settings .....	278, 296

List of menus .....	296
List of reset items .....	278, 296
Lock all .....	121
Lock key .....	29, 125
Keypad rel .....	104
Locking functions .....	120

## M

Mail address .....	187, 188
Mail menu .....	193
Mail setting .....	214, 275
Mail To function .....	172
Manner mode .....	107
Original manner .....	108
Silent .....	107
Mark .....	264
Add mark .....	264
Delete .....	264
Mark list .....	264
Melody .....	250
Attach to mail .....	250
Delete .....	257
Detail info .....	258
Edit folder .....	257
Folder info .....	258
Infrared communications .....	262
Insufficient memory .....	260
Move .....	257
Play .....	250
Play portion .....	250
Property .....	258
Save to M.S. ....	254
Sort .....	257
Memory Stick Duo .....	251
Available data .....	253
Copy/Move from FOMA terminal .....	254
Copy/Move to FOMA terminal .....	254
Delete ... 99, 167, 210, 241, 257,	271, 277
Display .....	251
Folder setup .....	252
Format .....	255
Insert/Remove .....	251
M.S.Duo info .....	255
Reset file No. ....	148
Save to M.S. ....	254
Save to main .....	254
Menu	
Menu setting .....	113
Select .....	33
Select theme .....	112
Menu mode .....	113

Menu setting .....	113
Message	
Auto-display .....	177
Check new messages .....	178
Confirm melody .....	207
Delete .....	179
Display .....	178
Dur multi task disp .....	218
i-mode inquiry set .....	216
Incoming set .....	102
Insert img info .....	207
Melody auto play .....	218
Message F .....	178
Message R .....	178
Play melody .....	207
Protect ON/OFF .....	179
Receive .....	177
Save attached .....	207
Save insert img .....	207
Save melody .....	207
Message F .....	157, 178
Message R .....	157, 178
Missed call .....	65, 113
Ring time .....	60
Movie player software .....	318
Multi Number Service .....	283
Multiaccess .....	266
Combinations .....	313
Operations .....	266
Multitask .....	267
Combinations .....	314
Execute a new function .....	267
Stop .....	267
Switch to another function .....	267
My data	
Edit .....	45
Infrared communications .....	262
Quote .....	292
My document .....	263
Capture screen .....	264
Delete .....	257
Detail info .....	258
Display .....	263
Display link .....	263
Edit folder .....	257
Folder info .....	258
i-mode bookmark .....	264
Infrared communications .....	262
Insufficient memory .....	260
Mark .....	264
Move .....	257
Move page .....	263
Page layout .....	263

Property .....	258, 263
Save .....	263
Save to M.S. ....	254
Search .....	264
Sort .....	257
My Menu .....	163
My picture .....	244
Attach to mail .....	244
Change display .....	258
Change screen .....	244
Delete .....	257
Detail info .....	258
Display setting .....	244
Edit folder .....	257
Edit photo .....	245
Folder info .....	258
Infrared communications .....	262
Insufficient memory .....	260
Move .....	257
Property .....	258
Save to M.S. ....	254
Slideshow .....	245
Sort .....	257
My Selection .....	272

## N

Name .....	111
Network security code .....	116
Network services	
Arrival Call Act .....	283
Call Forwarding Service .....	281
Call Waiting Service .....	281
Caller ID Display Request Service .....	282
Dual Network Service .....	282
English Guidance Service .....	282
Multi Number Service .....	283
Nuisance Call Blocking Service .....	281
Remote Control .....	283
Save additional service (USSD) .....	284
Service numbers .....	283
Voice Mail Service .....	280
Notification display .....	32
Notify caller ID .....	44
Nuisance Call Blocking Service .....	281

## O

On hold	
On hold during a call .....	61
On hold while receiving a call ...	62
On hold while receiving a call ....	62

Optional and related devices	316
Osaifu-Keitai	238
IC card lock	242
Use	239
Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-alpha	224
Start	239
Own number	45
Infrared communications	262
Quoted my data	292
Secret display	126

## P

Pager	49
Part names and functions	28
Paste	293
Pause (P)	49
PB setting	98, 275
PDF data	263
Capture screen	264
Display	263
Display link	263
i-mode bookmark	264
Mark	264
Move page	263
Page layout	263
Property	263
Save	263
Search	264
Phone To function	172
Phonebook	90
2-touch dial	100
Acpt/Rjct call	127
Call image	92, 96
Chara-den	93
Copy to UIM	255
Delete	99
Des phone tone	93, 96
Display style	98
Edit	99
Font size	114
Group setting	96
Infrared communications	262
Memory status	100
Originate a PushTalk call	97
Place a call	97
Place a videophone call	97
Quote	292
Reject unknown	129
Save	91, 94
Save image to M.S.	98

Save to M.S.	254
Search	98
Secret display	126
Select phone Illum.	93, 96
Send mail	97
Set image display	98
Set ring start time	128
Phonebook image	111
Pictographs	292
List of pictographs	304
PIM lock	123
PIN1/PIN2 code	117
Cancel PIN lock	119
Change PIN1 code	119
PIN1 code setting	118
Place a call	48
Animation setting	110
Chg. to videophone	50
Phonebook	97
Received record	60
Redial record	51
Play back music	318
Power	43
Power saver	112
Prediction	290
Prefix	53
Prefix setting	54
Preinstalled images	307
Preinstalled melodies	103
Priority	104
Call image	104
Incoming indicator color	104, 114
PushTalk caller ID	88
Ring tone	104
Public mode (Driving mode)	62
Public mode (Power off)	64
PushTalk	80
Any key ans	59
Auto answer setting	87
Caller ID	88
Display during communications	81
i-mode Arrival Act	174
Incoming set	102
Operations during communications	81
Originate	82
Originate from the phonebook	85
Originate from the Received record	82
P-Talk Arrival Act	88
Receive	83
Received record	60
Redial record	51
Set ring time	88
PushTalk phonebook	83

Delete	86
Group setting	84
NW connection	87
Originate	85
Save	83
PushTalkPlus	80
PushTalk setting	87, 275

## Q

QR code	149
Quality alarm	106
Quick Manual	346
Quick record message	67

## R

Receive a call	58
Incoming set	102
On hold while receiving a call	62
Receive option	202, 216
Received mail	208
Received record	60
Add to phonebook	95
Delete	61
Edit mail	275
Font size	114
Record display	126
Recnt ALM	57
Record display	126
Record message	65
Delete	68
Play	68
Quick record message	67
Redial record	51
Add to phonebook	95
Delete	52
Edit mail	275
Font size	114
Record display	126
Reduce noise	57
Reject mass i-mode mail senders	188
Reject/Receive Mail Settings	188
Reject unknown	129
Reject unsolicited ad mail	188
Remote Control	283
Remote lock	121
Reset call cost/duration	273
Reset data	294
Reset mail address	188
Reset settings	277
List of reset items	273, 296



Copy to UIM .....	255	Record message .....	65
Insert/Remove .....	35	Redial record .....	51
PIN1/PIN2 code .....	117	V.ph switch notice .....	78
UIM setting .....	118	Whisper mode .....	61
<b>UIM phonebook</b> .....	<b>90</b>	<b>Voice Mail Service</b> .....	<b>280</b>
Save .....	94	<b>Voice memo</b> .....	<b>272</b>
<b>Undo</b> .....	<b>290</b>	Delete .....	68
<b>URL</b>		Play .....	68
Display .....	161	Record .....	272
List .....	164	<b>Volume</b>	
<b>User certificate</b> .....	<b>180</b>	Caller's voice .....	105
<b>User conversion</b> .....	<b>291</b>	i-Channel .....	105

## V

<b>Vibrator</b> .....	<b>103</b>		
<b>Videophone</b> .....	<b>70</b>		
Animation setting .....	110		
Auto redial(voice) .....	77		
Chara-den .....	75		
Chg. to voice call .....	73		
Display during a call .....	70		
Display light .....	112		
Display setting .....	76		
Hands-free .....	77		
Holding .....	71		
Incoming set .....	102		
On hold .....	62		
Operations during a call .....	71		
Photo light .....	71		
Place a call .....	71		
Receive a call .....	74		
Received record .....	60		
Redial record .....	51		
Select sub image .....	71		
Set outgoing image .....	76		
Switch camera (In/Out) .....	71		
V.ph switch notice .....	78		
Videophone message .....	65		
Visual preference .....	77		
Zoom .....	71		
<b>Videophone message</b> .....	<b>65</b>		
<b>Voice call</b>			
Animation setting .....	110		
Any key ans .....	59		
Chg. to videophone .....	50		
Hands-free .....	48		
Holding .....	61		
Incoming set .....	102		
On hold while receiving a call ...	62		
Place a call .....	48		
Receive a call .....	58		
Received record .....	60		

## W

<b>Warranty and after sales services</b>	
.....	327
<b>Waterproof feature</b> .....	<b>22</b>
<b>Web To function</b> .....	<b>172</b>
<b>Whisper mode</b> .....	<b>61</b>
<b>Word translate</b> .....	<b>162</b>
<b>WORLD CALL</b> .....	<b>54</b>
<b>WORLD WING</b> .....	<b>37</b>

## Symbols and Numbers

<b>+</b> .....	<b>49</b>
<b>186/184</b> .....	<b>52</b>
<b>2-touch dial</b> .....	<b>100</b>

# MEMO

---

# MEMO

---

# MEMO

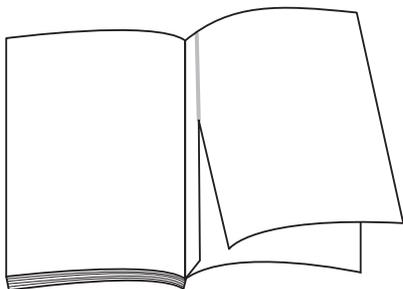
---

## Using Quick Manual

The Quick Manual on the following pages provides convenient reference. Cut and fold these pages into a booklet and take it with you.

### Cutting the pages

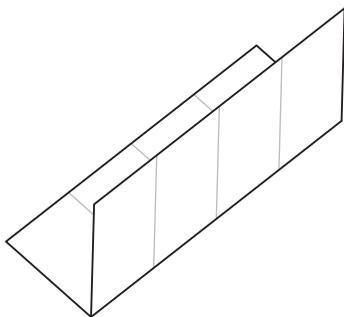
Cut the pages along the printed line ( ——— ).



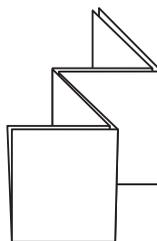
### Folding the cut pages

Fold the pages you cut off along the printed line ( ——— ) as shown in the illustrations below.

1



2



**Quick Manual**

General Contact

<Docomo Information Center>

From Docomo mobile phones or PHSS (in Japanese only)

**F** (No prefix) **151** (tol-free)

Not available from ordinary phones.

From ordinary phones

**020 0120-800-000** (tol-free) (in Japanese)  
**020 0120-005-250** (tol-free) (in English)

Also available from mobile phones and PHSS.

Contact for Repair (in Japanese only)

From Docomo mobile phones and PHSS

**F** (No prefix) **113** (tol-free)

Not available from ordinary phones.

From ordinary phones

**020 0120-800-000** (tol-free)

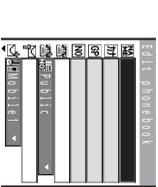
Also available from mobile phones and PHSS.

Check the number you call and dial it correctly.

**Saving an Entry in the FOMA Terminal Phonebook (P.91)**

1 Press **▶** (☐) in the stand-by display **☑** (Create).

2 [Main memory] **☑**.

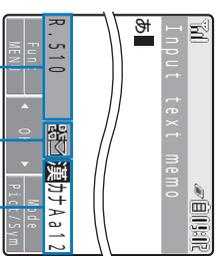


To save data in the UIM phonebook

Select (UIM).

3 Save other items **☑** (Complete).

**Entering Text (P.289)**



The screen is an image.

- ① Number of bytes that can be entered
  - A half-width character is counted as one byte and a full-width character as two bytes.
- ② While you edit Deco-mail.
- ③ Character mode or pictograph/symbol mode

**Changing the character mode**

- Character mode for half-width: Every time you press **☑** (Mode), the character mode changes in the order of [漢] [卍] [A] [1].
- Character mode for full-width: Every time you press **☑** (Mode), the character mode changes in the order of [漢] [力] [A] [1].

**Changing the pictograph/symbol mode**

- Every time you press **☑** (Pict/Sym), the character mode changes in the order of [電] [終] [ad] [17].

**Changing the character mode between full-width and half-width**

- Entering a character assigned to the same key **twice or more in succession** After entering the first character, move the cursor.

**Items you can save**

- ☑** Name (Required) Enter a name within 16 full-width/32 half-width characters.
- ☑** Reading Enter the reading within 32 half-width characters.
- ☑** Group Select from 20 different groups.
- ☑** Memory No. Enter from 000 to 999.
- ☑** Phone number Up to three entries are available. Enter each entry within 26 digits.
- ☑** Phone number type Selected from nine different icons.
- ☑** E-mail address Up to three entries are available. Enter each entry within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters.
- ☑** E-mail address type Selected from five different icons.

**Deleting a character**

- The character at the cursor is deleted by pressing **☑** for less than a second. The last character is deleted when the cursor is at the end of the text.
- All characters at and after the cursor position are deleted by pressing **☑** for over a second. All characters are deleted when the cursor is at the end of the text.

**Inserting a character**

Move the cursor to the position to insert a character.

**Changing the block of characters**

Move the cursor with **▶** **◀**

**☑** Undoing text (Func) [Undo]

**☑** Secret code

Enter the specified Secret code for the mail address in four digits.

**☑** Postal code

Enter a code within seven half-width digits.

**☑** Address

Enter an address within 64 full-width/128 half-width characters.

**☑** Birthday

Enter a date within the range from 1900/01/01 to 2050/12/31.

**☑** Call image

Select or shoot a call image to be displayed when placing/receiving a call, right after receiving mail, and when displaying the individual Phonebook entry.

**☑** Chara-den character

Select a Chara-den character to be sent when placing a videophone call.

**☑** Des phone tone

Select a ring tone that sounds for an incoming voice/videophone call.

**☑** Des mail tone

Select a ring tone that sounds immediately after receiving mail.

**☑** Select phone illum.

Select an indicator color that flashes for an incoming voice/videophone call.

**☑** Select mail illum.

Select an indicator color that flashes immediately after receiving mail.

**☑** Secret

Select whether to display the Phonebook data.

**Editing an Entry (P.99)**

1 From the Phonebook, select an entry **☑** (Edit).

2 Edit each item **☑** (Complete).

## Camera (P.131)

Recording still images

- 1 Press **[C]** in the stand-by display (for over a second).

The camera mode is activated.

- 2 Point the camera at the object **[C]**.

You hear the shutter sound, a still image is recorded, and the screen for confirming whether to save the image appears.

- 3 Press **[S]** (Save).

The still image is saved.

Recording Images in Close to the Object  
1 Rotate the macro switch to the "M" position in the Camera mode display.

The Macro mode is set.

To cancel the Macro mode

Rotate the macro switch to the "•" position.

8

- 2 Point the camera at the object **[C]**.

You hear the shutter sound, a still image is recorded, and the screen for confirming whether to save the image appears.

- 3 Press **[S]** (Save).

The still image is saved.

Recording a movie

- 1 Press **[M]** (Movie) in the Camera mode display.

The display switches to the Movie shoot display.

- 2 Point the camera at the object **[C]**.

The recording start tone is heard and the movie is recorded.

- 3 Press **[E]** to end recording.

The recording end tone is heard, the recording is stopped, and the screen for confirming whether to save the movie appears.

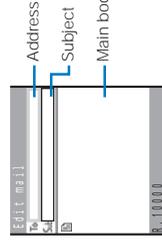
- 4 Press **[S]** (Save).

The movie is saved.

9

## Composing and Sending i-mode Mail (P.193)

- 1 Press **[M]** (Mail) in the stand-by display [Compose message]



12

## Videophone (P.69)

Placing a videophone call

- 1 Enter a phone number in the stand-by display **[V]** (V.phone).

- 2 Press **[D]** to hang up.

Receiving a videophone call

- 1 When you receive a call, press **[V]** or **[V]** (V.phone).

- 2 Press **[D]** to hang up.

Operations during a videophone call

Key operation	Operation
<b>[M]</b> (MySide/ Sub)	Switch between camera image/substitute image.
<b>[I]</b> (In/Out)	Switch between In-/Out-camera
<b>[O]</b>	Hands-free ON/OFF
<b>[Z]</b> / <b>[L]</b>	Camera zoom-in-/out

10

## PushTalk (P.79)

Originating a PushTalk call

- 1 Enter a phone number in the stand-by display **[P]**.

- 2 Press **[D]** to finish the communication.

Receiving a PushTalk call

- 1 When you receive a PushTalk call, press **[P]** or **[P]**.

- 2 Press **[D]** to finish the communication.

Operations during the communications

Key operation	Operation
<b>[S]</b>	Speak <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>You can speak while you press and hold <b>[S]</b> if you get the floor while it is open.</li></ul>
<b>[O]</b>	Hands-free ON/OFF

11

## File Attachment (P.199)

- 1 Press **[A]** (Func) in the Edit mail display [Add attach file]

[image] : Attach an image.

[i-motion] : Attach a movie/i-motion.

[Melody] : Attach a melody.

[TouCa] : Attach a TouCa card.

[Activate camera]

: Start the camera and record and attach an image/movie.

- 2 Select a file type a folder a file

The file is attached and \***[A]**, \***[M]**, \***[S]**, \***[L]**, \***[T]**, or \***[C]** appears.

- 3 Compose mail **[E]** (Send).

14

## Checking New i-mode Mail (P.203)

- 1 Press **[M]** (Mail) in the stand-by display (for over a second).

The FOMA terminal is connected to the i-mode center and an inquiry result is displayed.

## Auto Receiving i-mode Mail (P.201)

- 1 When receiving mail

\***[A]** flashes.

- 2 When receiving is completed

\***[A]** is displayed, the indicator flashes, the ring tone sounds, and the number of received mail is displayed.  
The display before receiving reappears after about 15 seconds.

15

- 2 Enter an address at [To].

Enter an address within 50 half-width characters.  
To add an address  
From the Function menu, select [Add receiver] address type (To/Cc/Bcc).  
To delete an address  
Move the cursor to an address and from the Function menu, select [Delete receiver] [Yes].

- 3 Enter a subject at [Sub].

Enter a subject within 15 full-width or 30 half-width characters.

- 4 Enter the main body at [B].

Enter the main body within 5,000 full-width or 10,000 half-width characters.

- 5 Press **[E]** (Send).

The mail is sent.

13

Selecting the menu  
 (MENU)

List of menus

	Entertainment
	My Selection
	Camera
	Movie
	Memory Stick
	Mail
	Mail box
	Compose msg
	Compose SMS
	Check new msg
	Check new SMS
	Receive option
	Mail setting

16

	Application
	Mail
	I-mode
	I applli
	Phonebook
	Call record
	PushTalk
	Record msg
	Schedule
	Input method
	Lock all
	IC card lock
	Remove lock
	PIM lock
	Secret display
	Key dial lock
	Acqri/Rjct call
	Reject unknown
	Denied no ID
	ToruCa receive

20

	I-mode
	I Menu
	Bookmark
	Screen Memo
	Go to location
	I-Channel
	Message
	Check new messages
	I-mode setting
	I applli
	I applli list
	I applli setting
	I applli history
	Phone
	Own number
	Phonebook
	Call record
	PushTalk phonebook
	Record msg

17

	Management
	Date/time
	Language
	Manner mode
	Change code
	UMI setting
	Scan function
	SW Update
	Battery level
	Set basic tone
	Storage info
	Reset
	Intl. Setting

21

	Tools
	BC reader
	Rcv if Data
	ToruCa
	IC card content
	Alarm
	Schedule
	Text memo
	Calculator
	Data box
	My picture
	Motion
	Melody
	Chara-den
	My document

18

	NW Services
	Voice Mail
	Call Waiting
	Call Forwarding
	Bar Nuisance Calls
	Notify Caller ID
	Caller ID Request
	Call Cos/Duration
	In-call Arrival Act
	Arrival Call Act
	Remote Control
	Dual Network
	English Guidance
	Service Numbers
	Additional service
	Multi Number
	Vph switch notice

22

	Settings
	Display
	Stand-by
	Backlight
	Power saver
	Menu setting
	Select theme
	Anim setting
	Font size
	Incoming set
	Call
	Missed call
	Videophone
	Call display
	Call assist
	Call setting
	Call quality
	Earphone
	Self mode

19

Services Available on the FOMA Terminal (P.2/15)

Service	Phone number
Collect Call (Fees paid by the recipient of the call)	(no area code) 106
Information on ordinary tele- phone numbers and Docodoku mobile phones (paid)	(no area code) 104
Telegram service (paid: tele- gram fee) 8 a.m. - 10 p.m.	(no area code) 115
Time (paid)	(no area code) 117
Weather (paid)	Area code + 177
Emergency call to Police	(no area code) 110
Emergency call to Fire/Ambulance	(no area code) 119
Emergency call to Maritime rescue	(no area code) 118
Disaster Message Board Service (paid)	(no area code) 171

23

### The Voice Mail Service (P.280)

- Starting the service**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Voice Mail] [Activate] [Yes]
- Stopping the service**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Mail] [Deactivate] [Yes]
- Playing back a new message**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Mail] [Play messages] [Yes]

### The Call Waiting Service (P.281)

- Starting the service**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Call Waiting] [Activate] [Yes]
- Stopping the service**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Call Waiting] [Deactivate] [Yes]

24

### The Call Forwarding Service (P.281)

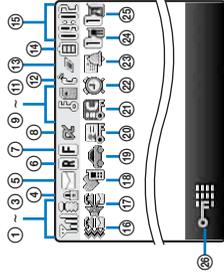
- Starting the service**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Call forwarding] [Activate] [Activate] [Yes]
- Stopping the service**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Call forwarding] [Deactivate] [Yes]
- Changing the forwarding number**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Call forwarding] [Change FWD number] Enter the phone number [Set]/[Set+Activate]

### The Caller ID Display Request Service (P.282)

- Starting the service**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Caller ID Request] [Activate] [Yes]
- Stopping the service**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] [Caller ID Request] [Deactivate] [Yes]

25

### Using the Display (P.30)



- 1 : Radio wave condition
- 2 : During i-mode
- 3 : Outside of the service area
- 4 : Self mode is set
- 5 : While using the Infrared communications function
- 6 : While performing an SSL-related function such as displaying an SSL site

28

### List of Key Operation (P.29)

- 1 : Press in the stand-by display to display the Data box.
- 2 : Press in the stand-by display to display the Phonebook.
- 3 : Press in the stand-by display to display the Received record.
- 4 : Press in the stand-by display to display the Redial record.
- 5 : Press in the stand-by display to display the Mail menu.
- 6 : Press for over a second in the stand-by display to perform the Check new messages.
- 7 : Press in the stand-by display to display the i-mode menu.
- 8 : Press for over a second in the stand-by display to display the i-apply folder list display.
- 9 : Press to display the menu.
- 10 : Press in the stand-by display to display the Channel list display.
- 11 : Press for over a second in the stand-by display to display My Selection. **26**

- 12 : The vibrator is set for incoming calls
- 13 : The vibrator is set for incoming mail calls and mail
- 14 : Incoming call ring volume OFF
- 15 : Incoming mail ring volume OFF
- 16 : Incoming call and mail ring volume OFF
- 17 : Manner mode is set (♥ is pink)
- 18 : Public mode (Driving mode) is set
- 19 : PIM lock is set
- 20 : Key dial lock is set
- 21 : PIM lock and Key dial lock are set
- 22 : IC card lock is set
- 23 : Alarm is set
- 24 : Schedule alarm is set
- 25 : Record message is set (☐ is white) (there are non-played back record messages) (□ is light blue)
- 26 : Videophone message is set (☐ is green) (there are non-played back videophone messages) (□ is light blue)
- 27 : Lock key is set

30

: Press for over a second in the stand-by display to lock/cancel the IC card function.

: Press for over a second in the stand-by display to self/cancel the Public mode (Driving mode).

: Press in the stand-by display to display the Manner mode display.

Press for over a second in the stand-by display to self/cancel the Manner mode.

Press to scroll a page to the previous display

: Press in the stand-by display to display the Record msg display.

Press for over a second in the stand-by display to self/cancel the Record message.

Press to scroll a page to the next display

: Press for over a second in the stand-by display to activate the Camera mode.

Press to record in the Camera mode display

: Slide to lock/cancel the keypad. **27**

### Quick Manual

#### General Contact

<DoCoMo Information Center>  
From DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSS (in Japanese only)

(No prefix) **151** (toll-free)  
Not available from ordinary phones.

From ordinary phones

**0120-800-000** (toll-free) (in Japanese)  
 **0120-005-250** (toll-free) (in English)  
Also available from mobile phones and PHSS.

Contact for Repair (in Japanese only)  
From DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS

(No prefix) **113** (toll-free)  
Not available from ordinary phones.

From ordinary phones  
 **0120-800-000** (toll-free)  
Also available from mobile phones and PHSS.

Check the number you call and dial it correctly.

## Don't forget your FOMA terminal or your manners!

When you use the FOMA terminal, be careful not to disturb others around you.

### Set the Public mode in the following cases

#### When you are driving

Using the FOMA terminal while driving is dangerous because it may interfere safe driving.

Use the FOMA terminal after stopping the vehicle to park in a safe place or use the Public mode (Driving mode).

#### When you are in a public place such as in a theater, movie theater or museum

Power off the FOMA terminal in a quiet public place since it may disturb others around you.

### Power off the FOMA terminal in the following cases

#### When you are in a place where the use is prohibited

In airplanes and hospitals, power off the FOMA terminal.

Power off the FOMA terminal not only inside hospital wards but also in the lobby or waiting rooms since electronic medical equipment may be used nearby.

#### When there is a possibility that the implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator is used nearby such as on rush-hour trains

The FOMA terminal may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator.

### Be careful of where you use the FOMA terminal and the volume of your voice and ring tone

Be careful of the volume of your voice when you use the FOMA terminal in a quiet place such as in a restaurant or hotel lobby.

Use the FOMA terminal in a place where you do not disturb passengers on the streets.

### Be sensitive regarding privacy

 Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

### Features to support public manners

The FOMA terminal is equipped with helpful features, such as muting sounds, not answering incoming calls, etc.

Public mode (P.62, 64)

Manner mode (P.107)/Original manner mode (P.108)

Vibrator (P.103)

Record message (P.65)

This manual was printed and produced in such a way to allow easy recycling. Please dispose it for recycling when it is no longer needed.

ドコモeサイト (DoCoMo e-site) allows you to go through procedures for various registration changes, including changes of the address and charge plan, and request for relevant documents.

**Using i-mode** i Menu ➔ 料金&お申込 (Charge & Subscription) ➔ ドコモeサイト (DoCoMo e-site) **Free packet communications charge**

**From a PC** My DoCoMo (<http://www.mydocomo.com/>) ➔ 各種手続き (ドコモeサイト) (Applications and Procedures (DoCoMo e-site))

For access using i-mode, the "network security code" is required.

For access using i-mode, no packet communications charge is required, except for from abroad.

For access from a PC, the "My DoCoMo ID/Password" are required.

If you have not yet obtained the "network security code" or "My DoCoMo ID/Password", or you forget them, call the "General Contact" below.

Access to the services may not be available depending on the subscription detail.

DoCoMo e-site may be inaccessible because of the system maintenance.

### General Contact

From DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSS  
(in Japanese only)

 (No prefix) **151** (toll-free)

Not available from ordinary phones.

From ordinary phones

 **0120-800-000** (toll-free) (in Japanese)

 **0120-005-250** (toll-free) (in English)

Also available from mobile phones and PHSSs.

Check the number you call and dial it correctly.

### Contact for Repair (in Japanese only)

From DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSSs

 (No prefix) **113** (toll-free)

Not available from ordinary phones.

From ordinary phones

 **0120-800-000** (toll-free)

Also available from mobile phones and PHSSs.

Check the number you call and dial it correctly.

For details refer to the "List of Service Stations in Japan" supplied with the FOMA terminal.



Don't forget your mobile phone  
... or your manners!

When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

## Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc.



**Li-ion**

Return all spent battery packs  
to NTT DoCoMo or a dealer,  
or a recycling shop  
to protect the environment.



Published on 100% recycled paper.



Printed with soybean oil ink.

'06.6 (Ver.1.1)  
2-685-230-11(1)

# FOMA<sup>®</sup>SO902iWP+

## Manual for Data Communication

About Data Communications .....	1
Preparations and Flow of Data Communications .....	3
Connecting the FOMA Terminal to a PC .....	4
Installing the Communication Configuration Files (Drivers) .....	4
Setting Communications Using the FOMA PC Setup Software ....	7
Setting Communications Without the FOMA PC Setup Software ....	13
AT Commands .....	18

### **Brief summary of the Manual for Data Communication**

This manual provides instructions on how to install the SO902iWP+ communication configuration files (drivers) and FOMA PC Setup Software that are both included in the supplied CD-ROM as well as information necessary for performing data communications on the FOMA SO902iWP+.

### **Operations on Windows XP**

This manual assumes that you use Windows XP Service Pack 2 as your operating system. Operating procedures and display examples may partly differ depending on your PC environment.

## About Data Communications

You can use the FOMA terminal for three types of data communications, packet communications, 64K data communications, and data transfer.

- The FOMA terminal does not support Remote Wakeup.
- The FOMA terminal does not support FAX communications.
- If you are going to connect the FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's "sigmarion" or "musea" PDA to perform data communications, you should update "sigmarion"/"musea". For details about updating, see the DoCoMo website.

### Packet Communications

A charge applies to this type of communications based on the volume of exchanged data (maximum reception speed 384K bps, maximum transmission speed 64K bps). You can perform packet communications by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC using the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) and making the necessary settings. Use a FOMA packet communications-compliant access point such as DoCoMo's Internet connection service "mopera U"/"mopera". You can also exchange data by accessing an in-house LAN connected to the FOMA network.

- Note that packet communications could be expensive if you exchange large volumes of data.

### 64K Data Communications

A charge applies to this type of communications based on the duration of a communication (communication speed 64K bps).

You can perform 64K data communications by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC using the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) and making the necessary settings. Use a FOMA 64K data communications-compliant access point such as DoCoMo's Internet connection service "mopera U"/"mopera" or ISDN synchronous 64K access points.

- Note that 64K data communications could be expensive if you exchange data over a long period of time.

### Data Transfer

This type of communications is used to exchange data using infrared rays or FOMA USB connection cable (optional) and no charge is required. Using infrared communications, you can exchange data with a device such as the FOMA terminal or a PC that is equipped with the infrared communications function.

## Precautions on Use

### Usage Fee of Internet Service Provider

When you use the Internet, a usage fee is required for your Internet service provider. This usage fee, which is separate from the FOMA service charges, must be paid directly to the Internet service provider. For details about usage fees, contact your Internet service provider.

You can use DoCoMo's Internet connection service "mopera U"/"mopera".

To use "mopera U", you need to subscribe to this service (paid service). No monthly charge is required to use "mopera" and you do not need to subscribe to it.

### Setting a Host (Such as an Internet Service Provider)

The host for packet communications is different from the host for 64K data communications. To use packet communications, use a packet communications-compliant host: to use 64K data communications, use a FOMA 64K data communications-compliant host or ISDN synchronous 64K-compliant host.

- You cannot connect to a DoPa access point.
- You cannot connect to a PHS 64K/32K data communications access point such as PIAFS.

### User Authentication for Network Access

User authentication (ID and password) may be required when connecting to some hosts. If user authentication is required, enter your ID and password on the communication software (dial-up network) for connecting to the host. The Internet service provider or the network administrator of the host assigns an ID and password. For details, contact your Internet service provider or the network administrator of the host.

## Access Authentication for the Use of a Browser

When a FirstPass-compatible site that you access through the Internet browser on your PC requires the FirstPass (user certificate) as an access authentication, install the FirstPass PC software from this CD-ROM and perform necessary settings. For details, see "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) in the [FirstPassPCSoft] folder on the CD-ROM. You need Adobe Reader (Version 6.0 or later is recommended) to read "FirstPassManual" (PDF format). If this software is not installed on your PC, download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (A separate communications charge is required for downloading the software.)

For details, see the Adobe Systems Incorporated website.

### Operating environment of the FirstPass PC software

Item	Required environment
PC main unit	PC/AT-compatible
OS	Windows 98SE, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP (All Japanese versions) (No Windows 98 support.)
Required memory	32MB or more (Windows XP: 128MB or more)
Hard drive capacity	10MB or more free space
Internet browser	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 or later (Windows XP: Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later)

The required memory and hard drive capacity may vary depending on the PC system configuration.

## Conditions of Packet and 64K Data Communications

The following conditions are necessary to perform communications using the FOMA terminal.

- The FOMA USB connection cable (optional) can be used on your PC.
- Your PDA must have FOMA packet and 64K data communications support.
- You must be inside of the FOMA's service area.
- The host for packet communications must have FOMA packet communications support.
- The host for 64K data communications must have FOMA 64K or ISDN synchronous 64K data communications support.

Note, however, that even if you comply with the above conditions, you may not be able to perform communications if the base station is congested or radio wave condition is poor.

## Definition of terms

### Administrator

An administrator is authorized access to all Windows XP and Windows 2000 Professional systems. At least one user with Administrator privilege is set for each PC. Normally, a user without Administrator privilege cannot install the communication configuration files (drivers). For more information on Administrator privilege, contact the manufacturer of your PC or a representative of Microsoft Corporation.

### APN (Access Point Name)

A character string used for identifying the Internet service provider host or in-house LAN for packet communications. For example, the APN of "mopera U" is "mopera.net".

### cid (Context Identifier)

A registration number available when you save a packet communications host (APN) in the FOMA terminal. You can save up to 10 numbers from one to 10 for the FOMA terminal.

### Default cid of the FOMA terminal

Registration number (cid)	Host (APN)
1	mopera.ne.jp (mopera)
2	Undefined
3	mopera.net (mopera U)
4-10	Undefined

### DNS (Domain Name System)

DNS is a system that converts a domain name (example: nttdocomo.co.jp) into an IP address, which is used by a PC.

### IrDA (Infrared Data Association)

IrDA is an organization that establishes infrared communications-related standards.

### IrMC (Ir Mobile Communications)

Standards established for the purpose of data transfer between mobile phones and between PDAs (personal digital assistant). You can exchange phone numbers and schedule data between mobile phones or PDAs equipped with an IrMC-compliant infrared jack.

### OBEX (Object Exchange)

OBEX is one of the global standards for data communications. You can exchange data between OBEX-compliant mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras, and printers.

### QoS (Quality of Service)

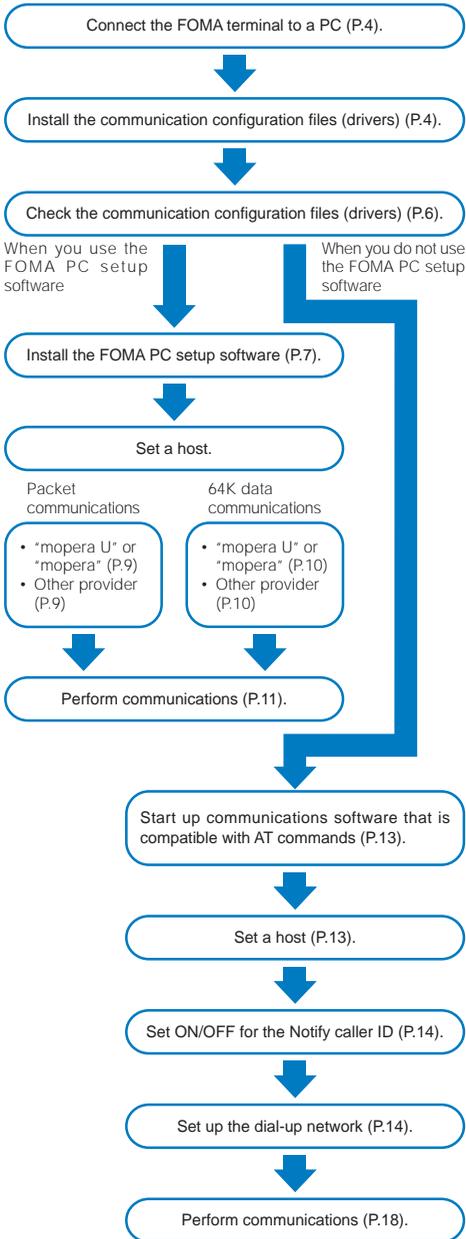
Service quality technology that enables the user to use a communications line in accordance with requirements. If you are using the FOMA terminal, you can set the communication speed for connection.

### W-TCP

TCP parameter that makes optimal use of TCP/IP transmission capabilities for packet communications on the FOMA network. To take full advantage of the communications performance of the FOMA terminal, you must perform this communication settings.

# Preparations and Flow of Data Communications

The preparations required for performing packet and 64K data communications by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC are given below.



## Operating environment of communication configuration files (drivers)/FOMA PC setup software

Item	Required environment
PC main unit 1	PC/AT-compatible
OS 2	Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP (All Japanese versions)
Required memory 3	Windows 98, Windows Me: 32MB or more Windows 2000 Professional: 64MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard drive capacity 3	5MB or more free space

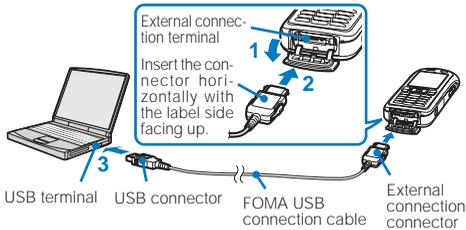
- 1 USB port (USB specification 1.1/2.0-compliant) is required.
- 2 Normal operation of the drivers after upgrading the OS is not guaranteed.
- 3 The required memory and hard drive capacity constitute the operating environment for the FOMA PC setup software. These specifications may vary depending on the PC system configuration.

## Connecting the FOMA Terminal to a PC

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC when they are powered on.

- 1 Open the external connection terminal cover.
- 2 Insert the external connection connector of the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) into the external connection terminal of the FOMA terminal until it clicks.
- 3 Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB connection cable to the USB terminal of the PC.

The FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and "📶" is displayed on the FOMA terminal.



### Disconnecting the USB connection cable

- 1 Make sure to pull out the FOMA USB connection cable horizontally while holding the release buttons pressed. When you remove the USB connection cable, "📶" which is displayed on the FOMA terminal disappears.

Release buttons  
Forcibly pulling out the FOMA USB connection cable may cause malfunction.



- 2 Pull out the FOMA USB connection cable from the USB terminal of the PC.

Do not remove the FOMA USB connection cable during data communications. Doing so may cause malfunction, etc.

It is after installing the communication configuration files that "📶" appears on the FOMA terminal.

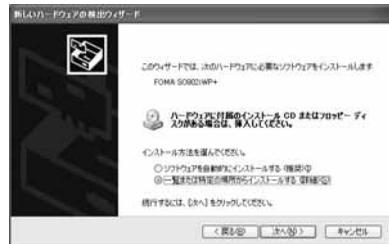
## Installing the Communication Configuration Files (Drivers)

To connect the FOMA terminal to a PC using the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) and perform data communications, install the communication configuration files (drivers) from this CD-ROM.

### When Using Windows XP

A user with Administrator privilege can install the software.

- 1 Set "FOMA SO902iWP + CD-ROM" in the CD-ROM drive of the PC.
- 2 Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC using the FOMA USB connection cable.  
The wizard start window appears.
  - The wizard start window may not appear on some PCs. In this case, go to step 4.
- 3 Select [いいえ、今回は接続しません] (No, not this time) and click [次へ].
- 4 Select [一覧または特定の場所からインストールする (詳細)] (Install from a list or specific location (Detail)) and click [次へ].



- 5 Select [次の場所で最適なドライバを検索する] (Search for the best driver in these locations), put a checkmark for [次の場所を含める] (Include this location in the search), specify a folder, and click [次へ].
  - To specify a folder, click [参照] and enter [<CD-ROM drive name>:\USB Driver\Win2k\_XP]. (The CD-ROM drive name may be different depending on the PC.)
 The installation starts. When the software is installed, the wizard complete window appears.

- 6 Click [完了].

The next driver search window appears.

- 7 Install other drivers.

Continuously install other drivers (P.6) by referring to step 1 to 6. When the communication configuration files (drivers) installation is completed, the message "新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。" (New hardware is installed and the device is working properly) is displayed for several seconds.

## When Using Windows 2000 Professional

A user with Administrator privilege can install the software.

- 1 Set "FOMA SO902IWP + CD-ROM" in the CD-ROM drive of the PC.
- 2 Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC using the FOMA USB connection cable.  
The wizard start window appears.
- 3 Click [次へ].
- 4 Select [デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する(推奨)] (Search for the best driver in these locations (Recommended)) and click [次へ].
  - [USB DEVICE] may appear on some PCs.
- 5 Select [場所を指定] (Specify a folder) and click [次へ].
- 6 Specify a folder and click [OK].



- To specify a folder, click [参照] and enter [<CD-ROM drive name>:\USB Driver\Win2k\_XP]. (The CD-ROM drive name may be different depending on the PC.)
- 7 Check the driver name and click [次へ].  
In this example, [FOMA SO902IWP + ] appears.  
The installation starts. When the software is installed, the wizard complete window appears.
  - 8 Click [完了].  
The next driver search window appears.
  - 9 Install other drivers.  
Continuously install other drivers (P.6) by referring to step 1 to 8.

## When Using Windows Me

- 1 Set "FOMA SO902IWP + CD-ROM" in the CD-ROM drive of the PC.
- 2 Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC using the FOMA USB connection cable.  
The wizard start window appears.
- 3 Select [ドライブの場所を指定する(詳しい知識のある方向け)] (Specify location of the driver (Advanced)) and click [次へ].
- 4 Select [使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する(推奨)] (Search for the best driver for this device (Recommended)), put a checkmark for [検索場所の指定] (Specify the location), specify a folder, and click [次へ].



- To specify a folder, click [参照] and enter [<CD-ROM drive name>:\USB Driver\Win98\_Me]. (The CD-ROM drive name may be different depending on the PC.)
- 5 Check the driver name and click [次へ].  
In this example, [FOMA SO902IWP + ] should appear.  
The installation starts. When the software is installed, the wizard complete window appears.
  - 6 Click [完了].  
The next driver search window appears.
  - 7 Install other drivers.  
Continuously install other drivers (P.6) by referring to step 1 to 6.

## When Using Windows 98

- 1 Set "FOMA SO902iWP + CD-ROM" in the CD-ROM drive of the PC.
- 2 Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC using the FOMA USB connection cable.  
The wizard start window appears.
- 3 Click [次へ].
- 4 Select [使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する(推奨)] (Search for the best driver for this device (Recommended)) and click [次へ].
- 5 Put a checkmark for [検索場所の指定] (Specify the location), specify a folder, and click [次へ].



- To specify a folder, click [参照] and enter [<CD-ROM drive name>.\USB Driver\Win98\_Me]. (The CD-ROM drive name may be different depending on the PC.)
- 6 Select [更新されたドライバ(推奨)] (Update driver (Recommended)) and click [次へ].
  - 7 Check the driver name and click [次へ].  
In this example, [FOMA SO902iWP + ] appears.  
The installation starts. When the software is installed, the wizard complete window appears.
  - 8 Click [完了].  
The next driver search window appears.
  - 9 Install other drivers.  
Continuously install other drivers (P.6) by referring to step 1 to 8.

## Checking the Installed Communication Configuration Files (Drivers)

Confirm that the SO902iWP + communication configuration files (drivers) are installed properly.

Example: When using Windows XP

- 1 Click [スタート] [コントロールパネル] [パフォーマンスとメンテナンス] [システム].

When using Windows 2000 Professional, Windows Me, or Windows 98

Click [スタート] [設定] [コントロールパネル] and then double-click [システム].

- 2 Click the [ハードウェア] tab and then [デバイスマネージャ].

When using Windows Me or Windows 98

Click the [デバイスマネージャ] tab.

- 3 Click each device and confirm the name of the installed driver.

Device type	Driver name
Port (COM/LPT)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• FOMA SO902iWP + Command Port</li><li>• FOMA SO902iWP + OBEX Port</li></ul>
Modem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• FOMA SO902iWP +</li></ul>
Universal serial bus controller or USB (Universal Serial Bus) controller	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• FOMA SO902iWP +</li><li>• FOMA SO902iWP + OBEX</li><li>• FOMA SO902iWP + Modem</li><li>• FOMA SO902iWP + Command</li></ul>

Windows Me/Windows 98 only.

- The COM port number may be different depending on the PC.

## Uninstalling the Communication Configuration Files (Drivers)

A user with Administrator privilege can uninstall the software on Windows XP or Windows 2000 Professional.

- Before starting uninstallation, make sure to disconnect the FOMA terminal from the PC.

Example: When using Windows XP

- 1 Click [スタート] [コントロールパネル] [プログラムの追加と削除].

When using Windows 2000 Professional, Windows Me, or Windows 98

Click [スタート] [設定] [コントロールパネル] and then double-click [アプリケーションの追加と削除].

- 2 Select [FOMA SO902iWP + USB] and click [変更と削除].

### 3 Check the name of the program to be deleted and click [はい].

The uninstallation of the communication configuration files (drivers) starts.

### 4 Click [OK].

When you failed to install the software or [FOMA SO902IWP + USB] does not appear on the window in step 2, reinstall the software after uninstalling it by clicking [スタート] [ファイル名を指定して実行] and entering [<CD-ROM drive name>:\USB Driver\Win2k\_XP\So902wun.exe].

When using Windows Me or Windows 98, enter [<CD-ROM drive name>:\USB Driver\Win98\_Me\So902wun.exe].

When using Windows Me or Windows 98, if you install the software right after uninstalling it and start data communications, you may not be able to establish the connection successfully depending on the operating environment of the PC, etc. In this case, remove the FOMA USB connection cable or the commercially available USB cable once and reconnect the cable before starting the communications.

## Setting Communications Using the FOMA PC Setup Software

### About the FOMA PC Setup Software

To connect the FOMA terminal to a PC and perform packet or 64K data communications, various communications-related settings are necessary. If you use the FOMA PC setup software, you can perform the following settings very easily. You can also set up for packet or 64K data communications without using the FOMA PC setup software (P.13).

#### かんたん設定 (Easy setup)

You can follow the guidance to create a dial-up connection for FOMA data communications. The W-TCP settings are performed at the same time.

#### W-TCPの設定 (W-TCP setting)

Before using FOMA packet communications, optimize the communication settings on the PC. Optimization of the communication settings by setting W-TCP is necessary for the possible communications performance.

#### 接続先(APN)の設定 (Host (APN) setting)

Perform the setting of a host (APN) required for packet communications.

Unlike in 64K data communications, a regular phone number is not used for a FOMA packet communications host. You must register in advance a host name called APN in the FOMA terminal for each host and specify this registration number (cid) in the host number field to connect.

If you have an older version of the FOMA PC setup software (Version 1.00, hereinafter referred to as "old FOMA PC setup software") installed, uninstall it before installing the FOMA PC setup software (Version 2.0.1).

## Installing the FOMA PC Setup Software

To use the FOMA PC setup software, install it from this CD-ROM.

A user with Administrator privilege can install the software on Windows XP or Windows 2000 Professional.

- Before starting installation, quit all programs that are running.

Example: When using Windows XP

### 1 Set "FOMA SO902IWP + CD-ROM" in the CD-ROM drive of the PC.

### 2 Click [スタート] [ファイル名を指定して実行]. Specify a file and click [OK].

- To specify a file, click [参照] and enter [<CD-ROM drive name>:\FOMA\_PCSET\setup.exe]. (The CD-ROM drive name may be different depending on the PC.)

### 3 Click [次へ].

The Terms of Use for the FOMA PC setup software appears.

### 4 Check the contents and click [はい] to accept the terms.

When you click [はい]

Installation is canceled.

### 5 Put a checkmark for [タスクトレイに常駐する] and click [次へ].



After installation, "W-TCP setting" icon is resident in the task tray.

- After installing "W-TCP setting", you can change the resident setting.

### 6 Check the installation destination and click [次へ].



To change the installation destination

Click [参照], specify the desired installation destination, and click [次へ].

**7** Check the name of the program folder and click [次へ].



To change the folder name

Enter a new folder name and click [次へ].

**8** Click [完了].

When the installation is completed, the FOMA PC setup software operation window starts.

### Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setup Software

Example: When using Windows XP

**1** Quit the program that is running.

- Quit the W-TCP setup software. Right-click [W-TCP設定ソフト] in the task tray located in the lower right corner of the desktop window and click [終了].
- Quit the FOMA PC setup software. Click [終了] at the lower right corner of the software window.

**2** Click [スタート] [コントロールパネル] [プログラムの追加と削除].

When using Windows 2000 Professional, Windows Me, or Windows 98

Click [スタート] [設定] [コントロールパネル] and then double-click [アプリケーションの追加と削除].

**3** Select [NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト] and click [変更と削除].



When using Windows 2000 Professional

Select [NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト] and click [変更/削除].

When using Windows Me or Windows 98

Select [NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト] and click [追加と削除].

**4** Check the name of the program to be deleted and click [はい].

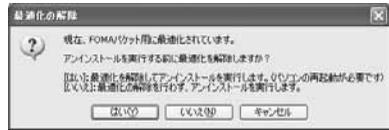
The program is uninstalled and deleted.

**5** Click [OK].

The FOMA PC setup software is uninstalled.

When W-TCP is optimized

The following window appears. Normally, click [はい] to cancel optimization.



### Preparations Before Making Various Settings

We recommend using "mopera U", which provides a broadband connection option for an Internet connection using the FOMA terminal. (You need to subscribe separately to this service.)

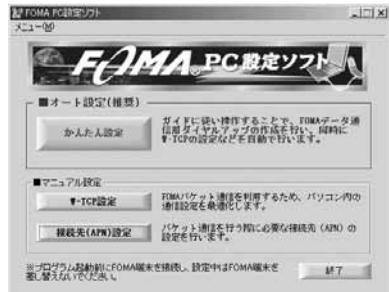
Users who want to connect to the Internet immediately may find it easy using "mopera".

To create an easy dial-up connection for FOMA, select/enter responses for the displayed questions in accordance with information of the "Connection method" and "Connection provider" you have selected.

Before making the settings, make sure the FOMA terminal is connected to a PC.

Example: When using Windows XP

**1** Click [スタート] [すべてのプログラム] [FOMA PC設定ソフト].



When using Windows 2000 Professional, Windows Me, or Windows 98

Click [スタート] [プログラム] [FOMA PC設定ソフト].

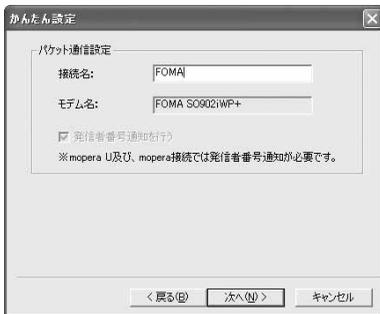
## Easy Setup (Packet Communications)

### When Using "mopera U" or "mopera"

- 1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [かんたん設定].
- 2 Select [パケット通信] and click [次へ].
- 3 Select [『mopera U』への接続] or [『mopera』への接続] and click [次へ].
- 4 Click [OK].
- 5 Enter a host name (any name) at [接続名] and click [次へ].

The host (APN) is loaded from the FOMA terminal. Wait for a few moments.

- You cannot enter half-width characters, "¥" "/" " " " \* " "?" "<" ">" "|" and "".



- 6 Click [次へ].

You can connect with [ユーザー名] and [パスワード] left blank.

  - When using Windows XP or Windows 2000 Professional, you can select any user who can perform the operation.
- 7 Put a checkmark for [最適化を行う] and click [次へ].
  - If you have performed the optimization already, the window for optimization does not appear.
- 8 Check the setting information and click [完了].
- 9 Click [OK].

To enable the changed settings, you may need to restart the PC. When the window for restarting PC appears, click [はい].

## When Using Other Providers

- 1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [かんたん設定].
- 2 Select [パケット通信] and click [次へ].
- 3 Select [その他] and click [次へ].
- 4 Click [OK].

The host (APN) is loaded from the FOMA terminal. Wait for a few moments.
- 5 Enter a host name (any name) at [接続名].
  - You cannot enter half-width characters, "¥" "/" " " " \* " "?" "<" ">" "|" and "".



- 6 Click [接続先(APN)設定].
- 7 Click [追加] and set a host (APN) and click [OK].

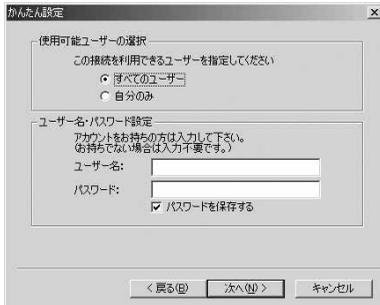
Set 2 or a number between 4 and 10 for cid.
- 8 Click [OK].
- 9 Click [次へ].



### 10 Set [ユーザー名] and [パスワード] and click [次へ].

To set [ユーザー名] and [パスワード], enter the various information supplied by your service provider accurately, in particular, uppercase and lowercase letters.

- When using Windows XP or Windows 2000 Professional, you can select any user who can perform the operation.



### 11 Put a checkmark for [最適化を行う] and click [次へ].

- If you have performed the optimization already, the window for optimization does not appear.

### 12 Check the setting information and click [完了].

### 13 Click [OK].

To enable the changed settings, you may need to restart the PC. When the window for restarting PC appears, click [はい].

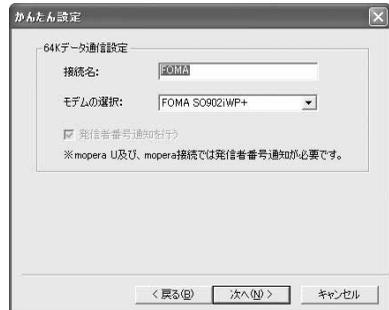
## Easy Setup (64K Data Communications)

### When Using "mopera U" or "mopera"

- 1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [かんたん設定].
- 2 Select [64Kデータ通信] and click [次へ].
- 3 Select [『mopera U』への接続] or [『mopera』への接続] and click [次へ].

### 4 Enter a host name (any name) at [接続名] and click [次へ].

- You cannot enter half-width characters, "¥" "/" ":" "\*" "?" "€" ">" "]" and "".
- If [FOMA SO902IWP+] is not set for [モデムの選択], select [FOMA SO902IWP+].



### 5 Click [次へ].

You can connect with [ユーザー名] and [パスワード] left blank.

- When using Windows XP or Windows 2000 Professional, you can select any user who can perform the operation.

### 6 Check the setting information and click [完了].

### 7 Click [OK].

## When Using Other Providers

- 1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [かんたん設定].
- 2 Select [64Kデータ通信] and click [次へ].
- 3 Select [その他] and click [次へ].
- 4 Enter dial-up information.

#### [接続名]:

Enter a host name (any name).

- You cannot enter half-width characters, "¥" "/" ":" "\*" "?" "€" ">" "]" and "".

#### [モデムの選択]:

Select [FOMA SO902IWP+].

#### [電話番号]:

Enter the line phone number of your provider.

- Enter information supplied by your service provider accurately.



## 5 Click [詳細情報の設定].

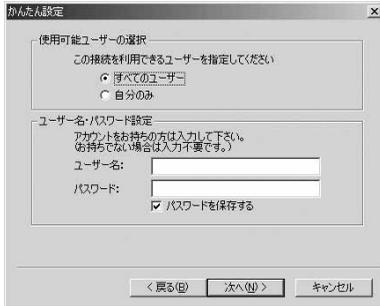
The configuration windows for [IPアドレス] and [ネームサーバー] appears.  
If dial-up information for the provider you subscribe to or in-house LAN is required, enter the appropriate address and click [OK].

## 6 Click [次へ].

## 7 Set [ユーザー名] and [パスワード] and click [次へ].

To set [ユーザー名] and [パスワード], enter the various information supplied by your service provider accurately, in particular, uppercase and lowercase letters.

- When using Windows XP or Windows 2000 Professional, you can select a user who can perform the operation.



## 8 Check the setting information and click [完了].

## 9 Click [OK].

### Starting the Communications You Just Finished Setting Up

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC before starting this operation.

Example: When using Windows XP

## 1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.

Communications start.

### To start from the Start menu

Windows XP

Click [スタート] [すべてのプログラム] [アクセサリ] [通信] [ネットワーク接続].

Windows 2000 Professional

Click [スタート] [プログラム] [アクセサリ] [通信] [ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続].

Windows Me and Windows 98

Click [スタート] [プログラム] [アクセサリ] [通信] [ダイヤルアップネットワーク].



## 2 Enter [ユーザー名] and [パスワード], and click [ダイヤル].

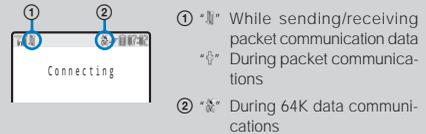
- You can connect with [ユーザー名] and [パスワード] left blank when using "mopera U" or "mopera".

The connection is established.



The communication speed displayed on a PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

An icon appears on the FOMA terminal during communications.



### Disconnecting Communications

Sometimes, closing the Internet browser does not disconnect communications. To ensure the disconnection of communications, perform the following procedure.

## 1 Click the dial-up icon in the task tray.

## 2 Click [切断].

The connection is disconnected.



Dial-up icon

## W-TCP Setting

The W-TCP setup software is a "TCP parameter setting" tool for optimizing the transmission capacity of TCP/IP when you perform packet communications using the FOMA network. If you want to make the most of the communications performance of the FOMA terminal, you must optimize the communication settings using this software.

### When Using Windows XP

You can set optimization for each dial-up connection.

Example: Optimizing the system settings

- 1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [W-TCP 設定].

To perform the operation from the task tray

Click  in the task tray.

- 2 Click [最適化を行う].

To cancel optimization

Click [システム設定] [最適化を解除する].

- 3 Select the dial-up connection to be optimized and click [実行].



The system and dial-up settings are optimized.

- 4 Restart the PC in accordance with the instructions on the display.

The system settings are optimized.

### When Using Windows 2000 Professional/Windows Me/Windows 98

Example: Optimizing the system settings

- 1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [W-TCP 設定].

To perform the operation from the task tray

Click  in the task tray.

- 2 Click [最適化を行う].

To cancel optimization

Click [最適化を解除する].

- 3 Restart the PC in accordance with the instructions on the display.

The system settings are optimized.

## Host (APN) Setting

You can set a host (APN) for packet communications. Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC before starting this operation.

- 1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [接続先 (APN) 設定].

- 2 Click [OK].

The host (APN) is loaded from the FOMA terminal. Wait for a few moments.

- 3 Set a host (APN).



To add a host (APN)

Click [追加].

To edit (change) a host (APN)

Click [編集].

To delete a host (APN)

Select a host (APN) and click [削除].

- You cannot delete a host (APN) saved as [cid1] and [cid3]. (Even if you select [cid3] and click [削除], it is not actually deleted. The operation is returned to [mopera.net].)

To save data in a file

Click the [ファイル] menu [上書き保存] (名前を付けて保存).

To read data from a file

Click the [ファイル] menu [開く] and select a saved file.

To read host (APN) data from the FOMA terminal

Click the [ファイル] menu [FOMA 端末から設定を取得].

To write host (APN) data to the FOMA terminal

Click the [ファイル] menu [FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む].

To create dial-up

Select a host (APN) and click [ダイヤルアップ作成]. Set up a dial-up connection for packet communications in accordance with the instructions on the display.

The host (APN) is information that must be saved in the FOMA terminal. When you use the PC with a different FOMA terminal connected, it is required to save it again in the new FOMA terminal.

To continue using a host (APN) saved in the PC, save the registration number (cid) of the same host (APN) in the FOMA terminal.

When you use Windows Me or Windows 98 and if the FOMA terminal is recognized as a number larger than "COM20", you may not read or write host (APN) data from/to the FOMA terminal in the host (APN) setting. In this case, use the Windows standard "Hyper Terminal" to perform the settings (P.13).

## Setting Communications Without the FOMA PC Setup Software

The procedure for setting packet or 64K data communications without using the FOMA PC setup software is given below.

To perform the settings, communication software for entering AT commands is necessary. In this section, the "Hyper Terminal" preinstalled as a standard feature in the Windows is used for explanation.

### Host (APN) Setting

Set a host (APN) for performing packet communications.

- If you are using "mopera U" or "mopera" as the packet communications host, you do not have to set a host for 64K data communications.

Example: When using Windows XP

**1** Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC.

**2** Click [スタート] [すべてのプログラム] [アクセサリ] [通信] [ハイパーターミナル].

Hyper Terminal is started up.

When using Windows 2000 Professional/Windows Me

Click [スタート] [プログラム] [アクセサリ] [通信] [ハイパーターミナル].

When using Windows 98

Click [スタート] [プログラム] [アクセサリ] [通信] [ハイパーターミナル]. Double-click [Hyperterm.exe].

**3** Enter any name at [名前] and click [OK].



**4** Enter a dummy (nonexistent) phone number (such as "0") at [電話番号], select [FOMA SO902iWP+] at [接続方法], and click [OK].

The connection window appears.



**5** Click [キャンセル].

**6** Enter a host (APN) and press .

Input format

AT+CGDCONT=<cid>,"PPP","APN"

Enter the registration number 2 or a number between 4 and 10.

Enclose the host name you enter in double quotes.

If the AT command you entered is not displayed

Enter "ATE1".

When the host (APN) is set, "OK" appears.



**7** Click the [ファイル] menu [ハイパーターミナルの終了].

Hyper Terminal ends.

- When the message "現在、接続されています。切断してもよろしいですか?" (The line is connected. Are you sure you want to disconnect?) appears, select [はい].
- When using Windows XP, the message "XXX と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか?" (Do you want to save the connection named "XXX"?) appears. You do not need to save the connection.
- When using Windows 2000 Professional, Windows Me, or Windows 98, the message "セッションXXXを保存しますか?" (Do you want to save session XXX?) appears. You do not need to save the session.

To reset a host (APN)

Input format

AT+CGDCONT= (Reset all cid)

AT+CGDCONT=<cid> (Reset a specific cid only)

To display a current host (APN)

Input format

AT+CGDCONT?

## Setting ON/OFF for the Notify Caller ID

The caller ID is important personal information. Carefully decide whether you want to notify a recipient of your caller ID.

- The caller ID must be notified when you use "mopera U" or "mopera".

- Perform step 1 to 5 in P.13.
- Set ON/OFF for the Notify caller ID during packet communications.

Input format

AT \*DGPIR=<n><#>

- Add "184" (OFF).
- Add "186" (ON).

If the AT command you entered is not displayed

Enter "ATE1<#>".

When ON/OFF for the Notify caller ID is set, "OK" appears.

### ON/OFF setting of a dial-up network

You can add 186 (ON)/184 (OFF) to a host number even for a dial-up network setting (P.14).

When this setting is performed by both \*DGPIR command and dial-up network setting, the following parameters are used.

Dial-up network setting (when <cid>=3)	*DGPIR command setting		
	No setting	OFF	ON
*99** * *3#	ON	OFF	ON
184*99** * *3#	OFF		
186*99** * *3#	ON		

## Dial-up Network Setting

### When Using Windows XP

- Click [スタート] [すべてのプログラム] [アクセサリ] [通信] [新しい接続ウィザード].

The new connection window appears.

- Click [次へ].
- Select [インターネットに接続する] and click [次へ].
- Select [接続を手動でセットアップする] and click [次へ].
- Select [ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する] and click [次へ].
- Put a checkmark in the checkbox of [モデム- FOMA SO902iWP+] and click [次へ].
  - The window for selecting the device appears only when there are several modems.

- Enter any name at [ISP名] and click [次へ].



- Enter a host number at [電話番号] and click [次へ].



### For packet communications

Enter \*99\* \* \* \* <cid>#>. Enter the registration number of a host for <cid>.

### For 64K data communications

Enter the phone number of a host.

- Enter [ユーザー名], [パスワード], and [パスワードの確認入力] and click [次へ].

- You can connect with [ユーザー名] and [パスワード] left blank when using "mopera U" or "mopera".



- Click [完了].

- Check your settings and click [キャンセル].

- Select the created host icon and then click the [ファイル] menu [プロパティ].

### 13 Check each item of the [全般] tab.

- When multiple modems are connected to a PC, put a checkmark only for [モデム - FOMA SO902IWP+ ] at [接続方法].
- Remove the checkmark from [ダイヤル情報を使う].



### 14 Click the [ネットワーク] tab, check each item, and click [設定].

- Select [PPP:Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet] for [呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類].
- Put a checkmark only for [インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)] at [この接続は次の項目を使用します]. Since you cannot change [OoS/バケットスケジューラ], leave it as it is.



### 15 Remove all checkmarks and click [OK].

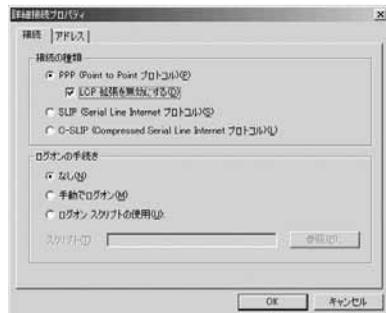


### 16 Click [OK].

The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.

## When Using Windows 2000 Professional

- 1 Click [スタート] [プログラム] [アクセサリ] [通信] [ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続].  
The network and dial-up connection window appears.
- 2 Double-click the [新しい接続の作成] icon.  
The address information display appears.
  - The network connection window appears for the second time and later. Go to step 5.
- 3 Enter an area code at [市外局番] and click [OK].  
The phone and modem option display appears.
- 4 Click [OK].  
The network connection window appears.
- 5 Click [次へ].
- 6 Select [インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する] and click [次へ].
- 7 Select [インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します] and click [次へ].
- 8 Select [電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します] and click [次へ].
- 9 Check whether [インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する] is set to [FOMA SO902IWP+ ] and click [次へ].
  - This display may not appear on some operating environments of the PC. In this case, go to step 10.
- 10 Enter a host number at [電話番号] and click [詳細設定].  
**For packet communications**  
Enter \* 99 \* \* \* <cid>#. Enter the registration number of a host for <cid>.  
**For 64k data communications**  
Enter the phone number of a host.
- 11 Set each item of the [接続] tab as shown in the display example.



- 12 Click the [アドレス] tab and set each item as shown in the display example.



- 13 Click [OK].

- 14 Click [次へ].

- 15 Enter [ユーザー名] and [パスワード], and click [次へ].
- You can connect with [ユーザー名] and [パスワード] left blank when using "moperu" or "moperu".

- 16 Enter a host name (any name) at [接続名] and click [次へ].

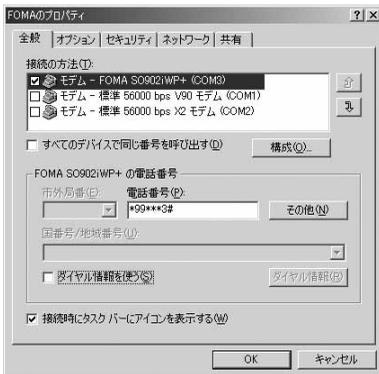
- 17 Select [いいえ] and click [次へ].

- 18 Remove the checkmark from [今すぐインターネットに接続するにはここを選んで[完了]をクリックしてください] and click [完了].

- 19 Select the created host icon and then click the [ファイル] menu [プロパティ].

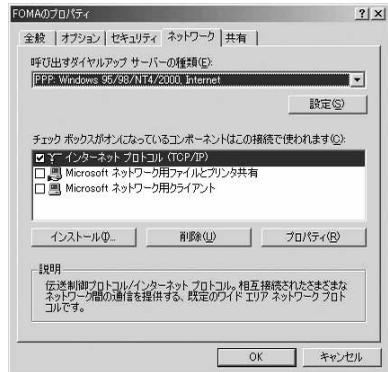
- 20 Check each item of the [全般] tab.

- When multiple modems are connected to a PC, put a checkmark only for [モデム - FOMA S0902IWP+ ] at [接続方法].
- Remove the checkmark from [ダイヤル情報を使う].



- 21 Click the [ネットワーク] tab, check each item, and click [設定].

- Select [PPP:Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet] for [呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類] (Dial-up server type).
- Put a checkmark only for [インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)] for component.



- 22 Remove all checkmarks and click [OK].



- 23 Click [OK].

The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.

## When using Windows Me/Windows 98

Example: When using Windows Me

### 1 Click [スタート] [プログラム] [アクセサリ] [通信] [ダイヤルアップネットワーク].

- When you start the dial-up network for the first time, the "ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ" window appears. Click [次へ] and go to step 3.

### 2 Double-click the [新しい接続] icon.

### 3 Enter a host name (any name) at [接続名] and click [次へ].

- If [モデムの選択] is not set to [FOMA SO902IWP +], select [FOMA SO902IWP +].



### 4 Enter a host number at [電話番号] and click [次へ].

#### For packet communications

Enter \*99\*\*\*<cid>#. Enter the registration number of a host for <cid>.

#### For 64K data communications

Enter the phone number of a host.

### 5 Check the host name (any name) and click [完了].

### 6 Select the created host icon and then click the [ファイル] menu [プロパティ].

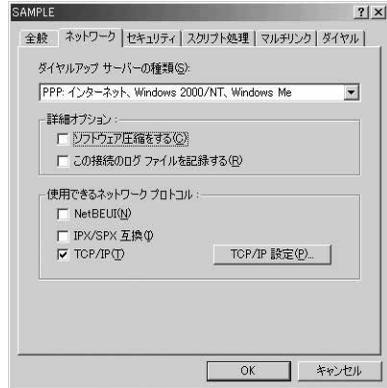
### 7 Check each item of the [全般] tab.

- Remove the checkmark from [市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う].
- If [接続方法] is not set to [FOMA SO902IWP +], select [FOMA SO902IWP +].



### 8 Click the [ネットワーク] tab and set each item as shown in the display example.

- Set [ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類], [詳細オプション], and [使用できるネットワークプロトコル] as instructed by your Internet service provider or network administrator.

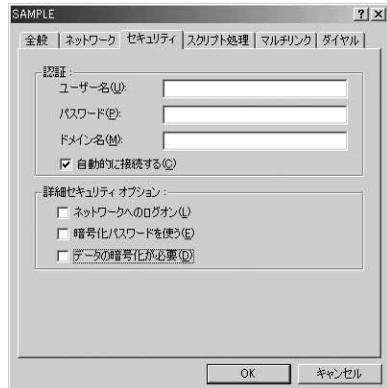


#### When using Windows 98

Click the [サーバーの種類] tab and check each item.

### 9 Click the [セキュリティ] tab, and enter [ユーザー名] and [パスワード].

- If you put a checkmark for [自動的に接続する], the window for confirming [ユーザー名] and [パスワード] does not appear during connection and you can connect immediately.
- If you change your password, re-enter the password in this display.
- You can connect with [ユーザー名] and [パスワード] left blank when using "mopera U" or "mopera".



### 10 Click [OK].

The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.

## Performing the Dial-up Connection

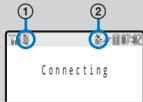
Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC before starting this operation.

Example: When using Windows XP

- 1 Click [スタート] [プログラム] [アクセサリ] [通信] [ネットワーク接続].
- 2 Double-click the host icon.
- 3 Check each item and click [ダイヤル(D)].
  - You can connect with [ユーザー名] and [パスワード] left blank when using "mopera U" or "mopera".The connection is established.

The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

An icon appears on the FOMA terminal during communications.



- ① "📶" While sending/receiving packet communication data  
During packet communications
- ② "📶" During 64K data communications

## Disconnecting the Dial-up Connection

Sometimes, closing the Internet browser does not disconnect communications. To ensure the disconnection of communications, perform the following procedure.

- 1 Click the dial-up icon in the taskbar.
- 2 Click [切断].

The connection is disconnected.



Dial-up icon

## AT Commands

AT commands are the commands (instructions) for setting and changing the functions of the FOMA terminal on a PC.

### Input format of AT commands

Always enter an AT command by adding AT at the beginning of the command. Be sure to use half-width alphanumeric characters. An input example is given below.

ATD\*99\*\*3#

Return mark: Press Enter key. It separates the commands.

Parameter: Description of the command

Command: Command name

Always enter an AT command including a parameter (number and symbol) right after the command in one line. One line means the row of characters from the first character to the character immediately before pressing .

### Input mode of AT commands

To operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands, set the PC to the terminal mode.

The terminal mode is used for operating a PC as a communications terminal. The characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device connected to the communications port or the line.

#### Offline mode

The FOMA terminal is in stand-by status. This mode is normally used when you operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands.

#### Online data mode

The FOMA terminal is in the status where communications is in progress. If you enter an AT command in this status, the characters sent are sent to the destination in their original form and the modem at the destination may develop a trouble. Do not enter AT commands during communications.

#### Online command mode

This mode allows you to operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands even if it is in the status where communications is in progress. In this case, an AT command is executed while the terminal remains connected to the destination. You can continue communications again after completion of the AT command execution.

## Switching between the Online Data Mode and Online Command Mode

You can use the following two methods to switch the FOMA terminal between the online data mode and online command mode.

- Enter the code set to "+++" command or "S2" register.
- Set the ER signal of RS-232C ( ) to OFF when "AT&D1" is set.  
Since the RS-232C signal line is emulated by a USB interface, RS-232C signal line control by the communication application is enabled.

To switch from the online command mode to the online data mode, enter "ATO .

## AT Command List

AT commands that can be used for FOMA SO902iWP + are listed below.

[&F] : Commands that have their settings initialized by the AT&F command.

[&W] : Commands that have their settings saved by the AT&W command. You can use the ATZ command to call back the setting value.

Command	Outline/Parameter	Input example
A/	Re-executes the last executed command.	A/
AT%V	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal in the "Verx.xx" format.	AT%V
AT&C<n>	Selects the operating conditions for the circuit CD signal to DTE.	AT&C1
[&F][&W]	n=0	Always sets the CD signal to ON (When the parameter is omitted).
	n=1	Changes CD signal in accordance with the other party's modem status (Default).
AT&D<n>	Selects the operation that takes place when the circuit ER signal received from DTE changes to ON/OFF.	AT&D1
[&F][&W]	n=0	Ignores the ER signal state (Always ON) (When the parameter is omitted).
	n=1	Sets the online command mode if the ER signal changes from ON to OFF.
	n=2	Sets the offline mode if the ER signal changes from ON to OFF (Default).
AT&E<n>	Selects specification of the speed indication during connection.	AT&E1
[&F][&W]	n=0	Displays the communication speed between wireless sections.
	n=1	Displays the communication speed between a PC and FOMA terminal (Default).
AT&F<n>	Sets the AT command setting values of the FOMA terminal to default. When this command is executed during communications, the operation for disconnecting the communications is performed.	AT&F0
[&F][&W]	n=0	Only n=0 can be specified (Can be omitted).
AT&S<n>	Sets the control of the DR signal to be output by the FOMA terminal.	AT&S0
[&F][&W]	n=0	Always sets the DR signal to ON (Default, when the parameter is omitted).
[&F][&W]	n=1	Sets the DR signal to ON when the line is connected.
AT&W<n>	Writes the current setting value to the FOMA terminal.	AT&W0
[&F][&W]	n=0	Only n=0 can be specified (Can be omitted).
AT * DANTE	Displays the radio wave condition of the FOMA terminal in the " * DANTE:m" format. m=0: Outside of the service area, m=1-3: Number of antennas displayed on the FOMA terminal.	AT * DANTE AT * DANTE=?
AT * DGANSM=<n>	Sets the Accept/Reject call to packet incoming call.	AT * DGANSM=0 AT * DGANSM? AT * DGANSM=?
[&F][&W]	n=0	Sets the Accept/Reject call setting to OFF (Default).
[&F][&W]	n=1	Sets the Reject call to ON.
[&F][&W]	n=2	Sets the Accept call to ON.
AT * DGAPL=<n>[,<cid>]	Sets a host (APN) that accepts a packet incoming call. The <cid> parameter defined by "+CGDCONT" is used as an APN. If <cid> is omitted, all cid are added/deleted.	AT * DGAPL=0,1 AT * DGAPL? AT * DGAPL=?
[&F][&W]	n=0	Adds an APN defined by <cid> to the Accept call list.
[&F][&W]	n=1	Deletes an APN defined by <cid> from the Accept call list.
AT * DGARL=<n>[,<cid>]	Sets a host (APN) that rejects a packet incoming call. The <cid> parameter defined by "+CGDCONT" is used as an APN. If <cid> is omitted, all cid are added/deleted.	AT * DGARL=0,1 AT * DGARL? AT * DGARL=?
[&F][&W]	n=0	Adds an APN defined by <cid> to the Reject call list.
[&F][&W]	n=1	Deletes an APN defined by <cid> from the Reject call list.
AT * DGPIR=<n>	Sets the Notify caller ID ON/OFF when sending/receiving data on packet communications.	AT * DGPIR=0 AT * DGPIR? AT * DGPIR=?
[&F][&W]	n=0	Uses an APN as it is (Default).
[&F][&W]	n=1	Adds "184" to an APN.
[&F][&W]	n=2	Adds "186" to an APN.
AT * DRPW	Displays the received power indicator of radio waves being received by the FOMA terminal in the " * DRPW:m" format (m=0-75).	AT * DRPW AT * DRPW=?
AT+CEER	Displays the reason for disconnection of the last communication (P.23).	AT+CEER AT+CEER=?

Command	Outline/Parameter	Input example
AT+CGDCONT=[<cid>[,"PPP"[,"<APN>"]]]	Sets a host (APN) during outgoing packet transmission.	AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","abc"
	cid=1-10 Used for managing hosts (APN) saved in the FOMA terminal for packet communications	AT+CGDCONT= 1 AT+CGDCONT=<cid> 2
	APN=Arbitrary Host-specific arbitrary character string that indicates a host	AT+CGDCONT? AT+CGDCONT=?
AT+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,<n>[,<m>]]]	Saves the criteria for permitting or not permitting QoS (Quality of Service) notified from the network when packet communications is established.	AT+CGEQMIN=2,,64,384 AT+CGEQMIN=2,,64 AT+CGEQMIN=2,,384 AT+CGEQMIN= 1 AT+CGEQMIN=<cid> 2
	cid=1-10 Used for managing hosts (APN) saved in the FOMA terminal for packet communications	
	n=None/64 The minimum uplink communication speed (Kbps) used between the FOMA terminal and the base station. None: Permits all speeds (Default). 64: Packet communications may not be connected in some cases.	
	m=None/384 The minimum downlink communication speed (Kbps) used between the FOMA terminal and the base station. None: Permits all speeds (Default). 64: Packet communications may not be connected in some cases.	
AT+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]	Sets the QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network when packet communications is originated.	AT+CGEQREQ= 1 AT+CGEQREQ=<cid> 2
	cid=1-10 Used for managing hosts (APN) saved in the FOMA terminal for packet communications	
AT+CGMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal in 16 digits.	AT+CGMR AT+CGMR=?
AT+CGREG=<n>	Sets whether the network registration status is notified.	AT+CGREG=1 AT+CGREG=? AT+CGREG=?
	n=0 No notification (Default).	
	n=1 Notifies the registration status inside/outside of the service area in the "+CGREG:<n>,<stat>" format. stat=0: Outside of the service area, stat=1: Inside of the service area (home), stat=4: Unknown, stat=5: Inside of the service area (visitor)	
[&F][&W]		
AT+CGSN	Displays the manufacturing number of the FOMA terminal.	AT+CGSN AT+CGSN=?
AT+CLIP=<n>	Sets whether the sender's caller ID is displayed on a PC when receiving 64K data communications. When you enter "AT+CLIP?", "+CLIP:n,m" appears. m=0: Network setting that does not notify caller ID to the other party when originating 64K data communications, m=1: Network setting that notifies caller ID to the other party when originating 64K data communications, m=2: Unknown	AT+CLIP=0 AT+CLIP? AT+CLIP=?
	n=0 Does not display the sender's caller ID (Default, when the parameter is omitted).	
[&F][&W]	n=1 Displays the sender's caller ID.	
AT+CLIR=<n>	Sets whether the recipient is notified of your caller ID when you originate 64K data communications. When you enter "AT+CLIR?", "+CLIR:n,m" appears. m=0: CLIR is not executed (always notifies), m=1: CLIR is always executed (never notifies), m=2: Unknown, m=3: CLIR temporary mode (Default: No notification), m=4: CLIR temporary mode (Default: Notification)	AT+CLIR=0 AT+CLIR? AT+CLIR=?
	n=0 The terms of the CLIR service are applied (When the parameter is omitted).	
	n=1 No notification	
	n=2 Notification (Default)	
AT+CMEE=<n>	Sets the error report format of the FOMA terminal (P.22).	AT+CMEE=0 AT+CMEE? AT+CMEE=?
	n=0 Displays "ERROR" (Default, when the parameter is omitted).	
	n=1 Displays using the "+CME ERROR:xxxx" format (xxxx are numerics).	
[&F][&W]	n=2 Displays using the "+CME ERROR:xxxx" format (xxxx are characters).	
AT+CNUM	Displays the home station number of the FOMA terminal using the "+CNUM:,"home station number",type". type=129: Does not include the international access code +, type=145: Includes the international access code +	AT+CNUM AT+CNUM? AT+CNUM=?
AT+CR=<mode>	Sets whether the communication type is displayed before displaying "CONNECT" when the line is connected.	AT+CR=0 AT+CR? AT+CR=?
	mode=0 Does not display (Default, when the parameter is omitted).	
	mode=1 Displays using the "+CR:serv" format. serv=SYNC: 64K data communications, serv=GPRS: Packet communications	
[&F][&W]		

1 Resets all cid to default settings.

2 Resets a specified cid to default settings.

Command	Outline/Parameter	Input example
AT+CRC=<n>	Sets whether the extended result code is used when receiving a call.	AT+CRC=0 AT+CRC?
[&F][&W]	n=0 Does not use (Default). n=1 Use.	AT+CRC=?
AT+CREG=<n>	Sets whether the outside/inside of the service area information is displayed. When you enter AT+CREG?, the result is displayed in the "+CREG: <n>, <stat>" format. stat=0: Outside of the service area, stat=1: Inside of the service area (home), stat=4: Unknown, stat=5: Inside of the service area (visitor)	AT+CREG=1 AT+CREG? AT+CREG=?
[&F][&W]	n=0 Does not display (Default). n=1 Displays.	
AT+GMI	Displays the name of the FOMA terminal manufacturer.	AT+GMI AT+GMI=?
AT+GMM	Displays the name of the FOMA terminal.	AT+GMM AT+GMM=?
AT+GMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	AT+GMR AT+GMR=?
AT+IFC=<n,m>	Sets the local flow control method between the PC and the FOMA terminal. n is used for setting the control of DCE by DTE while m is used for setting the control of DTE by DCE. When m is omitted, the same input value as DCE by DTE is used.	AT+IFC=2,2 AT+IFC? AT+IFC=?
[&F][&W]	n=0 Does not perform flow control. n=1 Performs XON/XOFF flow control. n=2 Performs RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (Default). m=0 Does not perform flow control. m=1 Performs XON/XOFF flow control. m=2 Performs RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (Default).	
AT+WS46=<n>	Sets the radio network used by the FOMA terminal when originating communications.	AT+WS46=22 AT+WS46? AT+WS46=?
[&F][&W]	n=22 FOMA network (fixed value)	
ATYS	Displays the command setting and S register data.	ATYS
ATYV<n>	Selects whether an extended result code is used when the connection is established.	ATYV0
[&F][&W]	n=0 Does not use an extended result code (Default, when the parameter is omitted). n=1 Uses an extended result code.	
ATA	Performs the receiving operation according to the mode received by the FOMA terminal.	
ATD	Originates packet or 64K data communications. For packet communications: Enter the command in the "ATD*99* * * cid#" format. When cid is omitted, cid=1 is set. If the command is entered in the format beginning with "ATD184*99", then 184 (without caller ID) is added to an APN of the specified cid. (This condition also applies to 186.) For 64K data communications: Enter the command in the "ATD phone number" format. For originating a call by redial: Enter the command in the "ATDL" or "ATDN" format.	ATD*99* * * 3#
ATE<n>	Sets whether characters sent from the PC are echoed back.	ATE0
[&F][&W]	n=0 Does not echo back (When the parameter is omitted). n=1 Performs an echo back (Default).	
ATH	Disconnects packet or 64K data communications.	ATH
ATI<n>	Displays an identification code.	ATI0
[&F][&W]	n=0 Displays "NTT DoCoMo" (When the parameter is omitted). n=1 Displays the name of the FOMA terminal. n=2 Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	
ATO	Switches from the online command mode to the online data mode during communications.	ATO
ATQ<n>	Sets whether the result code is displayed on the PC.	ATQ1
[&F][&W]	n=0 Displays (Default, when the parameter is omitted). n=1 Does not display.	
ATS0=<n>	Sets the number of rings sounded until the FOMA terminal automatically receives a call.	ATS0=0 ATS0?
[&F][&W]	n=0 Does not automatically receive a call (Default, when the parameter is omitted). n=1-255 Number of rings	

Command	Outline/Parameter	Input example
ATS2=<n>	Sets an escape character. 43: Default, 0: When the parameter is omitted	ATS2=0 ATS2?
[&F]	n=0-126 n=127	Disables the escape operation.
ATS3=<n>	Sets a carriage return (CR) character that can identify the end of an AT command character string. It is added to the end of the echoed back command character string and result code. Default	ATS3=13 ATS3?
ATS4=<n>	Sets a line feed (LF) character. When the result code is displayed in alphabets, it is added after the carriage return (CR) character. Default	ATS4=10 ATS4?
ATS5=<n>	Sets a backspace (BS) character that deletes the last character of input buffer during AT command input. Default	ATS5=8 ATS5?
ATS6=<n>	Sets the pause time (seconds) until dialing. Although the register is set, the operation does not take place even if this command is used. 5: Default, when the parameter is omitted	ATS6=5 ATS6?
ATS8=<n>	Sets the pause time (seconds) until a comma dial is performed. Although the register is set, the pause time is fixed to 3 seconds even if this command is used. 60: Default, 121-255: Assumes 120	ATS8=3 ATS8?
ATS10=<n>	Sets the automatic disconnection delay time (1/10 seconds). Although the register is set, the operation does not take place even if this command is used. 1: Default, when the parameter is omitted	ATS10=1 ATS10?
ATS30=<n>	Sets the waiting time (minutes) until communications is disconnected when no data is exchanged during 64K data communications. Does not disconnect (Default, when the parameter is omitted). Waiting time (minutes) until communications is disconnected	ATS30=0 ATS30?
ATS103=<n>	Sets a separator used when originating a call by adding an incoming call sub-address for 64K data communications. * (When the parameter is omitted) / (Default) ¥	ATS103=0 ATS103?
ATS104=<n>	Sets a separator used when originating a call by adding an outgoing call sub-address for 64K data communications. # (When the parameter is omitted) % (Default) &	ATS104=0 ATS104?
ATV<n>	Sets the display method for the result code. Displays the result code using a numeric value (When the parameter is omitted). Displays the result code using text (Default).	ATV1
ATX<n>	Sets the busy tone and dial tone detection, and communication speed indication. Without busy/dial tone detection, without speed indication (When the parameter is omitted) Without busy/dial tone detection, with speed indication Without busy tone detection, with dial tone detection, without speed indication With busy tone detection, without dial tone detection, with speed indication With busy/dial tone detection, with speed indication (Default)	ATX1
ATZ	Sets the FOMA terminal settings to the contents of a volatile memory recorded by AT&W. When this command is executed during communications, the operation for disconnecting the line is performed.	ATZ
+++	Switches the FOMA terminal from the online data mode to the online command mode. The escape guard section is fixed to 1 second.	+++

## List of Reasons for Disconnection

### Packet communications

Value	Reason
27	An APN is not found or is incorrect.
30	Disconnected from the network.
33	Not signed up for packet communications.
36	Normal disconnection

### 64K data communications

Value	Reason
1	A specified number is not found.
16	Normal disconnection
17	Cannot communicate because the other party is already in communication status.
18	Communications was originated but no response is returned within the specified time.
19	Cannot communicate because the recipient's terminal is ringing.
21	The recipient rejected the call.
63	Network service and option are not enabled.
65	An invalid processing speed has been specified.
88	A call was originated to or received by a terminal with different terminal attributes.

## List of Error Reports

Numeric value indication	Text indication	Reason
10	SIM not inserted	UIM is not set.
15	SIM wrong	SIM (IC card equivalent to UIM) other than a DoCoMo product is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Wrong password
100	unknown	Unknown error

## Result Codes

The result code is displayed in the text indication format (initial value) when the ATVn command is set to n=1 (P.22), while the result code is displayed in the numeric value format when it is set to n=0.

### List of result codes

Numeric value indication	Text indication	Description
0	OK	Normal execution.
1	CONNECT	Connected to the other party.
2	RING	There is an incoming call.
3	NO CARRIER	The line is disconnected.
4	ERROR	Cannot accept a command.
6	NO DIALTONE	Cannot detect a dial tone.
7	BUSY	During the detection of a busy tone.
8	NO ANSWER	Connection timeout
100	RESTRICTION	The network is restricted. The communications network is congested. Retry later.
101	DELAYED	Call origination using the redial record is restricted.

### Extended result codes

#### &E0

Displays the connection speed between the FOMA terminal and the base station.

Numeric value indication	Text indication	Connection speed
121	CONNECT 32000	32,000 bps
122	CONNECT 64000	64,000 bps
125	CONNECT 384000	384,000 bps

#### &E1

Displays the connection speed between the FOMA terminal and a PC.

Numeric value indication	Text indication	Connection speed
5	CONNECT 1200	1,200 bps
10	CONNECT 2400	2,400 bps
11	CONNECT 4800	4,800 bps
12	CONNECT 9600	9,600 bps
16	CONNECT 19200	19,200 bps
17	CONNECT 38400	38,400 bps
18	CONNECT 57600	57,600 bps
19	CONNECT 115200	115,200 bps
20	CONNECT 230400	230,400 bps
21	CONNECT 460800	460,800 bps

The displayed communication speed, which remains only for compatibility with a modem that has a conventional RS-232C interface, does not indicate the actual speed because the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) is used for connection between the FOMA terminal and a PC.

## Communications protocol result codes

Numeric value indication	Text indication	Description
1	PPPOverUD	64K data communications connection
5	PACKET	Packet communications connection

### Example of result code indication

#### When ATX0 is set

When the connection is completed, only "CONNECT" is displayed regardless of the ATYV command setting (P.21).

Text indication example	Numeric value indication example
ATD *99 * * * 3# CONNECT	ATD *99 * * * 3# 1

#### When ATX1 is set

- When ATX1 or ATYV0 is set

When the connection is completed, indicated in "CONNECT <speed between the FOMA terminal and a PC>" format.

Text indication example	Numeric value indication example
ATD *99 * * * 3# CONNECT 460800	ATD *99 * * * 3# 1 21

- When ATX1 or ATYV1 is set

When the connection is completed, indicated in "CONNECT <speed between the FOMA terminal and a PC>PACKET<Host APN> / <Highest uplink speed (FOMA terminal base station)> / <Highest downlink speed (FOMA terminal base station)>" format.

Text indication example	Numeric value indication example
ATD *99 * * * 3# CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.net/64/384	ATD *99 * * * 3# 1 21 5

(Indicates that the uplink connection is made using 64K bps maximum and the downlink connection is made using 348K bps maximum to mopera.net.)

When ATX1 and ATYV1 are set simultaneously, the dial-up connection may not be performed correctly. We recommend using ATYV0 only.